Xandros Desktop User Guide

xandros

Copyright © 2006 Xandros, Inc. All rights reserved.

Xandros Desktop 4 User Guide

INFORMATION IS PROVIDED BY XANDROS ON AN "AS IS" BASIS WITHOUT ANY OTHER WARRANTIES OR CONDITIONS, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABLE QUALITY, SATISFACTORY QUALITY, MERCHANTABILITY, OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, OR THOSE ARISING BY LAW, STATUTE, USAGE OF TRADE, COURSE OF DEALING OR OTHERWISE. THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO THE RESULTS OF THE INFORMATION RECEIVED IS ASSUMED BY YOU. WE SHALL HAVE NO LIABILITY TO YOU OR ANY OTHER PERSON OR ENTITY FOR ANY INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES WHATSOEVER, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, LOSS OF REVENUE OR PROFIT, LOST OR DAMAGED DATA OR OTHER COMMERCIAL OR ECONOMIC LOSS, EVEN IF WE HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES OR THEY ARE FORESEEABLE. WE ARE ALSO NOT RESPONSIBLE FOR CLAIMS BY A THIRD PARTY. OUR MAXIMUM AGGREGATE LIABILITY TO YOU AND THAT OF OUR DEALERS AND SUPPLIERS SHALL NOT EXCEED THE AMOUNT PAID BY YOU FOR THE PARTICULAR PRODUCT OR COPY OF THE PRODUCT OR SERVICE GIVING RISE TO THE CLAIM. SOME STATES/COUNTRIES DO NOT ALLOW THE EXCLUSION OR LIMITATION OF LIABILITY FOR CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES, SO THE ABOVE LIMITATIONS MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU.

Xandros, Xandros Desktop, Xandros Networks, Xandros Deployment Management Server, xDMS, Xandros Server, and the Xandros logo are trademarks of Xandros, Inc.

Acer is a registered trademark of Acer Technologies Corporation. Adobe is a registered trademark of Adobe Systems Incorporated. Adobe Illustrator is a registered trademark of Adobe Systems Incorporated. AIM is a service mark of America Online, Inc. AMD-K6 is a registered trademark of Advanced Micro Devices, Inc. AOL is a registered trademark of America Online, Inc. Apple is a registered trademark of Apple Computer, Inc. Battleship is a registered trademark of Hasbro, Inc. Borland is a registered trademark of Borland International, Inc. Brother is a registered trademark of Brother Industries, Ltd. Canon is a registered trademark of Canon Corporation. Celeron is a registered trademark of Intel Corporation. Citrix is a registered trademark of Citrix Systems, Inc. CLIÉ is a registered trademark of Sony Corporation. CodeWeavers is a trademark of CodeWeavers, Inc. Corel is a registered trademark of Corel Corporation. Creative is a registered trademark of Creative Technology Ltd. CrossOver Office is a trademark of CodeWeavers, Inc. dBASE is a registered trademark of Borland International, Inc. Debian is a registered trademark of Software In The Public Interest Incorporated. Dell is a registered trademark of Dell Computer Corporation. Deskjet is a registered trademark of Hewlett-Packard Company. Entrust is a registered trademark of Entrust, Inc. Epson is a registered trademark of Seiko Epson Corporation. Flash is a trademark of Macromedia, Inc. Garmin is a registered trademark of Garmin Corporation. GroupWise is a registered trademark of Novell, Inc. Handspring is a registered trademark of Handspring, Inc. HotSync is a registered trademark of Palm, Inc. HP is a trademark of Hewlett-Packard Development Company. IBM is a registered trademark of International Business Machines Corporation. ICA is a registered trademark of Citrix Systems, Inc. ICQ is a registered trademark of ICQ, Inc. Illustrator is a registered trademark of Adobe Systems Incorporated. Instant Messenger is a service mark of America Online, Inc. Intuit is a registered trademark of Intuit Inc. iPod is a registered trademark of Apple Computer, Inc. iQue is a registered trademark of Garmin Ltd. Corporation. iTunes is a registered trademark of Apple Computer, Inc. Java is a registered trademark of Sun Microsystems, Inc. JBuilder is a registered trademark of Borland Software Corporation. JDK is a registered trademark of Sun Microsystems, Inc. JetDirect is a registered trademark of Hewlett-Packard Company. KDE is a service mark of K Desktop Environment. Kodak is a registered trademark of Eastman Kodak Company. Kylix is a registered trademark of Borland Software Corporation. Linux is a registered trademark of Linus Torvalds. Lotus Notes is a registered trademark of IBM. Lucent is a registered trademark of Lucent Technologies Inc. Macintosh is a registered trademark of Apple Computer, Inc. Mac OS is a registered trademark of Apple Computer, Inc. Macromedia is a registered trademark of Macromedia, Inc. Microsoft is a registered trademark of Microsoft Corporation. Microsoft Exchange Server is a registered trademark of Microsoft Corporation. Monopoly is a registered trademark of Hasbro, Inc. MSN is a registered trademark of Microsoft Corporation. Nikon is a registered trademark of Nikon Corporation. Novell is a registered trademark of Novell, Inc. Officejet is a registered trademark of Hewlett-Packard Company. Outlook is a registered trademark of Microsoft Corporation. Palm is a trademark of Palm, Inc. PartitionMagic is a registered trademark of PowerQuest Corporation. Pentium is a registered trademark of Intel Corporation. Photoshop is a registered trademark of Adobe Systems Incorporated. Plantronics is a registered trademark of Plantronics, Inc. PostScript is a registered trademark of Adobe Systems Incorporated. PowerPoint is a registered trademark of Microsoft Corporation. Quicken is a registered trademark of Intuit Inc. QuickTime is a registered tradmark of Apple Computer, Inc. Reader is a registered trademark of Adobe Systems Incorporated. RealAudio is a registered trademark of RealNetworks, Inc. RealPlayer is a registered trademark of RealNetworks, Inc. RealVideo is a registered trademark of RealNetworks, Inc. Samsung is a registered trademark of Samsung Electronics America Inc. Shockwave is a registered trademark of Macromedia, Inc. Skype is trademark of Skype Technologies, S.A. Sony is a registered trademark of Sony Corporation. StarOffice is a registered trademark of Sun Microsystems, Inc. Sun is a registered trademark of Sun Microsystems, Inc. ThinkPad is a registered trademark of International Business Machines Corporation. TREO is a trademark of Handspring, Inc. TUNGSTEN is a trademark of Palm, Inc. UNIX is a registered trademark of The Open Group. Versora is a trademark of Versora, Inc. Virgin is a registered trademark of Virgin Enterprises Limited. Visio is a registered trademark of Microsoft Corporation. Visor is a registered trademark of Handspring, Inc. VMware is a registered trademark of VMWare, Inc. Western Digital is a registered trademark of Western Digital Corporation. Windows is a registered trademark of Microsoft Corporation. Windows NT is a registered trademark of Microsoft Corporation. WinZip is a registered trademark of Nico Mak Computing, Inc. Yahoo! is a registered trademark of Yahoo! Inc. ZEN is a trademark of Creative Technology Ltd. Zip is a registered trademark of Iomega Corporation. Zire is a trademark of Palm, Inc.

All other company names, product names, service marks, fonts, and logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective companies.

Table of contents

Introduction

Chapter 1 Welcome to Xandros Desktop 1

What is Xandros Desktop 1
What is included in Xandros Desktop 2
What is new 4
Purpose of this user guide 5
Learning how to use Xandros Desktop 6

Getting started

Chapter 2 Installing Xandros Desktop 9

System requirements 9
Understanding disk partitioning 11
Installing Xandros Desktop 12
Getting updates 23

Chapter 3 Using the desktop 25

Starting up and logging in. 25
Completing the First Run Wizard 32
Installing additional applications 33
Migrating from a Windows computer 34
Logging out and shutting down 35
Moving from a Windows desktop to a Xandros desktop 36
Working with the Panel 37
Working with applications 42
Switching user sessions 45
Using virtual desktops. 46
Working with desktop shortcuts 49
Protecting your work 51

Configuring Xandros Desktop

Chapter 4 Configuring connections. 57
Configuring Internet connections 57
Downloading updates and applications 69
Modifying IP addresses and network connections 72

Chapter 5 Customizing Xandros Desktop settings 75
Customizing desktop settings 75
Changing the Launch menu 86
Customizing window behavior 88
Customizing keyboard settings, shortcuts, and language maps 93
Adding and using spell checkers. 97
Customizing monitor settings 98
Customizing system sounds 99
Changing multimedia information retrieval 101
Launching applications automatically 101
Setting default applications 103

Using Xandros Desktop

Chapter 6 Managing your system 107
Accessing Xandros File Manager as Administrator 108
Viewing hardware and system information 109
Managing users and groups 109
Assigning access privileges to files and folders 117
Managing partitions and disks 121
Scanning and removing viruses 130
Using Xandros Security Suite 135
Managing monitor power 136
Monitoring system processes and performance 137
Monitoring system activities 140
Using Xandros Networks for updates and new applications 143

Chapter 7 Managing files 145
Moving from Windows Explorer to Xandros File Manager 146
File system explained 147
Accessing files in local, floppy, CD, and DVD folders 148
Accessing Windows and Linux file systems. 152
Working with files using Xandros File Manager 152
Finding folders and files 158
Backing up files 161

Chapter 8 Windows and Linux networking 163
Accessing Windows and Linux file systems. 164
Accessing network printers 167
Enabling file and printer sharing for a Windows network 167
Joining a Windows domain 171
Adding scripts and assigning network shares for Windows domains 179
Sharing your local system with network computers 181
Connecting to computers remotely 188
Using Xandros Server 192

Chapter 9 Using the Internet 193
Connecting to the Internet. 195
Using the firewall 197
Browsing the World Wide Web 201
Clearing caches 205
Managing cookies 206
Creating Web pages 207
Sending and receiving e-mail with Thunderbird Mail 208
Sending and receiving e-mail with KDE Mail 211
Connecting to newsgroups. 212
Using the Personal Information Manager 214
Using the News Ticker. 217
Using a Webcam 219
Making phone calls with Skype Internet Calling 220
Sending instant messages 226
Using the weather monitor 228
Using the Stock Ticker. 229
Additional Internet applications 231

Chapter 10 Working with text 233
Using the OpenOffice.org Writer 234
Using Microsoft Word 235
Using the Text Editor 236
Creating formulas 241
Reading and generating PDF files 241
Viewing DVI files 242
Viewing and sending faxes 242
Working with PostScript Viewer 243
Installing fonts 246
Using special characters and symbols 248
Using the online dictionary 248
Using spell checkers 248
Additional text applications 249

Chapter 11 Working with graphics 251
Creating images with OpenOffice.org Draw 252
Using Microsoft PowerPoint, Visio, Photoshop, and other diagrams 253
Creating images with Paint 254
Creating slide presentations 255
Viewing images in Image Viewer 256
Managing multimedia in Xandros Photo Manager 259
Viewing images in Xandros File Manager 264
Scanning images 265
Performing screen captures 266
Additional graphics applications 267

Chapter 12 Working with data 269
Using the OpenOffice.org database 270
Using the OpenOffice.org spreadsheet 271
Using Microsoft Access or Excel 272
Using the Calculator 272
Additional data applications 272

Chapter 13 Using multimedia applications 273
Using the Audio Builder 275
Using Sound Server Control 277
Using the CD Player 278
Using the DVD Writer 283
Using the Media Player 288
Using the MIDI Player 290
Selecting MIDI devices 292
Using the MP3 Player 293
Using the Music Manager 298
Using the RealPlayer 301
Using the Sound Mixer 302
Using the Sound Recorder 304
Using the Video Player 305
Additional multimedia applications 308

Chapter 14 Playing games 309
Accessing games 310
Additional games, educational applications, and toys 310

Chapter 15 Using accessories and utilities 311
Using Adobe Reader to view PDF files 313
Viewing DVI files 313
Viewing faxes 313
Viewing fonts 314
Viewing PDF and PostScript files 314
Using the Address Book 314
Using the Calculator 318
Using special characters and symbols 320
Using the Organizer / scheduler 321
Using the Personal Information Manager 325
Tracking personal time 325
Using Popup Notes 328
Sending faxes 330
Managing print jobs 330
Creating text files 331
Using the clipboard 331
Using the Desktop Pager 331
Using the Floppy Disk Formatter 332

Using the Online Dictionary 333
Converting Palm Pilot documents 334
Using a Palm Pilot or hand-held device 335
Using the Reminder Message Scheduler 340
Scheduling tasks 342
Additional accessories and utilities 343

Chapter 16 Using the command line interface 345
Using the login shell 345
Using the Run command 346
Using the Console window 347
Common commands. 348

Chapter 17 Printing 349
Setting up printers 349
Printing 352
Managing print jobs. 360
Viewing and sending faxes 361

Chapter 18 Managing software packages 365
Listing software 366
Finding packages 367
Installing, upgrading, and uninstalling packages 368
Setting package sources 373
Installing from the Applications CD 374
Options for using Windows applications 375
Restoring Xandros Desktop 376
Uninstalling Xandros Desktop 378

Technical support

Chapter 19 Getting technical support 383

Introduction

1 Welcome to Xandros Desktop

Thank you for choosing Xandros Desktop as your operating system and desktop suite. Whether for your desktop or laptop, at home, school, or in the office, Xandros Desktop is easy to install, learn, and use.

What is Xandros Desktop

Xandros Desktop is an operating system and software suite based on Linux. It uses a graphical interface with a windowed environment similar to Microsoft Windows. It was first developed using the name Corel LINUX OS.

Xandros Desktop is a complete computer solution. It includes an operating system, Web browser, e-mail, instant messaging, word processing, spreadsheet, presentation, multimedia, and graphics software, for example. Xandros Desktop includes proprietary applications and utilities such as the Xandros File Manager, third-party applications such as RealPlayer, and open-source software developed around the world. Xandros has incorporated such work and modified the Linux distribution, applications, and user interface to meet the needs of our users. Updates are contributed to the open-source software community.

Features include:

- Automatic disk partitioning — Xandros Desktop automatically partitions your disk space during installation, relieving you of this confusing task
- Multi-OS support — It can be installed as a stand-alone system or to coexist on the same computer with Microsoft Windows and other operating systems

- Microsoft Office compatibility — You can run Microsoft Office and some Windows-based applications with CodeWeavers CrossOver software. The supported applications include Microsoft Word, Excel, PowerPoint, Visio, Lotus Notes, Intuit Quicken, iTunes, and Adobe Photoshop.
- Multiple workspaces — You can easily switch among 1 to 20 desktops
- Multiple users — Multiple users can be logged in to the desktop simultaneously
- Restricted login access — User login can be restricted to specific days and times, and it can be set to expire
- Instant messaging — Send text messages using a messenger client compatible with AOL Instant Messenger (AIM), MSN Messenger, ICQ, IRC, and Yahoo! Messenger
- Phone calls — Make phone calls over the Internet
- Multimedia support — Players are included for CDs, unencrypted DVDs, videos, and recording. Several media types are supported, including MP3, MPEG, WAV, and MIDI. Use an iPod.
- Security features — Firewall included and encryption of user folders is possible
- Package compatibility — Ability to install Debian (DEB) and RPM Package Manager (RPM) packages
- Development compatibility — Compatible with Sun JDK, Borland Kylix, Borland JBuilder, KDevelop, Eclipse, and other Linux development tools

What is included in Xandros Desktop

Xandros Desktop includes terrific features developed by Xandros as well as third-party applications, such as word processing and instant messaging software. Xandros selects the best applications, integrates the applications into the operating system and suite, and does quality assurance testing.

The applications included depend on the edition purchased, which include:

- Home (formerly Standard)
- Home Edition - Premium (formerly Deluxe)
- Education
- Small Business
- Professional (formerly Business)

This user guide documents the Premium and Professional editions, and it can also be used for other editions, including the Home, Education, Small Business, and Open Circulation editions.

Xandros File Manager

Xandros File Manager provides a graphical method of navigating and managing folders and files. You can access files on the local system, on a Windows network, and on a Linux network. Xandros File Manager functions as a Web browser and provides access to file transfer protocol (FTP) sites. You can mount a network share, for example to have easy access to a folder on another Linux or Windows computer. You can write audio and data CDs, as well as data DVDs. You can also view images from a digital camera in Xandros File Manager.

Applications CD

An Applications CD is provided with several editions of Xandros Desktop. It provides additional software to install, including those outlined in the following table. Many of the applications can also be installed from Xandros Networks.

Application	Function
Adobe Reader	Displays files in the Portable Document Format (PDF)
TCL/TK Development Tools	Development tools
C/C++ Development Tools	Development tools
Drivers	Drivers for HP multifunction and NEC printers, and Voodoo and Intel video drivers
Games	Several, including Frozen Bubble
Flow Chart	Graphics program to create flow charts
GIMP	Graphics program to create and edit images and photos
OpenOffice.org	Office suite, including word processor, spreadsheet, drawing, and presentation applications
TV Time	Supports television, video game, and DVD input on your computer monitor or a projector
Spell checker dictionaries	UK English, Brazilian Portuguese, Danish, French, German, Italian, Polish, Portuguese, Russian, Spanish

Xandros Networks applications

In addition to the software provided with Xandros Desktop and the Applications CD, more software can be downloaded from Xandros Networks. Xandros Networks is an application that accesses a server over the Internet so that you can install security updates, application updates, and new software. You can also purchase commercial applications in Xandros Networks.

If your computer is being managed by Xandros Deployment Management Server (xDMS), it accesses your organization's xDMS software repository as well as a Xandros server.

What is new

Some of the features changed since version 3.x include:

- Linux kernel upgraded to version 2.6.15 or higher
- Many applications upgraded, including OpenOffice.org, CodeWeavers CrossOver, Firefox Web Browser, and Weather applet
- Music Manager (Amarok) added, which includes support for iPods
- Xandros Security Suite added, integrating anti-virus, firewall, and Xandros Networks security checking
- Xandros Storage Manager added for managing partitions and hard disks
- Xandros Photo Manager replaces the Digital Camera application (Digikam)
- Stock ticker applet added
- Integrated with Xandros Server; run Xandros Management Console and manage servers
- Network connection wizard improved to include wireless and virtual private network configuration; initiate Internet and other connections from the Panel
- Improved wireless support
- NTFS write capabilities added to some editions, which means you can read and write to hard disks formatted in the Windows NT file system (NTFS) format generally associated with Windows NT, 2000, and XP
- Easier installation using the Applications CD
- Versora Progression Desktop for Xandros CD added to migrate e-mail, calendars, address books, bookmarks, desktop, files, and other settings from a Windows computer (included with the Premium and Professional editions)
- Product registration is required in order to install updates and new applications in Xandros Networks
- Compliant with the Linux Standard Base (LSB)
- Based on the DCC Alliance standards-based Debian core

Purpose of this user guide

This *Xandros Desktop User Guide* explains the features of Xandros Desktop and provides instructions for installation, for performing common tasks, and for using applications. This user guide is intended for both new and experienced computer users. It documents the Premium and Professional editions and can also be used for other editions.

Documentation conventions

The following conventions relate to using the mouse.

When you see this...	Do this...
Click	Press the primary mouse button (usually the left mouse button)
Double-click	Quickly press the primary mouse button twice
Right-click	Press the secondary mouse button (usually the right mouse button)
Click **File** ▶ **New**	Click the File menu, and select the New option in the menu
Enable the **Network** check box	Click the check box beside Network to place an x or check mark inside the box
Right-click, and select **Paste**	Press the right mouse button, and select the Paste command in the submenu that appears

The following conventions relate to keyboard actions.

When you see this...	Do this...
Press **Enter**	Press the Enter key on your keyboard
Press **Ctrl**+**Shift**	Press the Ctrl key and the Shift key at the same time
Type `mkdir`	Type the text using the keyboard; also indicates programming code

The following conventions relate to user guide icons.

When you see this...	It means this...
	Caution — Negative consequences to software, hardware, or files can occur
	Tip — Usually presents an alternate way to perform a task
	Note — Provides additional information

In Xandros Desktop, there is usually more than one way to perform a task. For example, you can click a tool bar button, select a menu item, or right-click and select a menu item. This user guide typically describes tasks using menu items.

Learning how to use Xandros Desktop

Xandros Desktop includes hard copy and online documentation to help you learn and use the applications.

Documentation	Explanation
User Guide	Explains the features of the product and provides instructions to install, configure, and use it
Getting Started Guide	Provides minimal instructions to install, configure, and use the product
Online Help	Provides instructions for using the product; excludes installation and configuration instructions
Quick Start Guide	Provides an introduction to the product

To access online help within an application

- Click **Help** and select the appropriate option.

To access online help for all applications

- Click **Launch** ▶ **Help**.

To access the Quick Start Guide

- On the desktop, double-click the **Quick Start Guide** icon.

Getting started

2 Installing Xandros Desktop

The Xandros Installation Wizard guides you through installation and configuration of Xandros Desktop. Review the information in this chapter before installing Xandros Desktop so that you can make informed decisions about the installation.

The installation process is:

- Check that your computer meets system requirements
- Install Xandros Desktop
- Start up and log in
- Get updates
- Install software from the Applications CD

If you purchased a computer with Xandros Desktop already installed, you will complete a first-boot wizard on startup. Skip this chapter and follow the *Xandros Desktop Computer Getting Started Guide*.

System requirements

Ensure your computer meets the following requirements before installing Xandros Desktop:

- Pentium 200 MHz processor, Celeron, AMD-K6, or higher (Pentium II 450 MHz or higher recommended)
- 128 MB of RAM or higher (256 MB recommended)

- Adequate unallocated space available on your hard disk, with 1.5 GB minimum and 2 GB recommended. The amount of space required depends on the installation option and packages that you choose.
- CD-ROM drive (must be bootable)
- Video card and compatible monitor capable of 1024 x 768 resolution
- Mouse or similar pointing device
- Keyboard

Some features have additional hardware requirements, such as:

- For network access, a network card
- For Internet access, a 14.4 Kbps modem or higher and Internet service
- For sound, a sound card, speakers or headphones, and/or a microphone
- For sending faxes, a fax modem and telephone line

To check system components on a Windows computer

1 Click **Start** ▶ **Control Panel**.
2 Click **System**.

To check system components on a Xandros Desktop computer

1 Click **Launch** ▶ **Control Center**, then **Hardware Information**.
2 Click the device for which you want information. For example, click **Hardware Detection** to list the CD-ROM drives, video card, and audio adaptor of the computer.

Hardware compatibility

Ensure that your computer hardware is compatible with Xandros Desktop before installing Xandros Desktop.

To check hardware compatibility

- See **http://support.xandros.com/hcl.php**

If you try to install Xandros Desktop on a computer that includes incompatible components, it may not install or some features may not work.

Understanding disk partitioning

Xandros Desktop can be installed on a new hard disk or one in use. It can be installed on a hard disk that already contains an operating system, to either overwrite or coexist with that operating system.

Before installing an operating system, such as Xandros Desktop, space on the hard disk must be allocated for it in a partition. In Windows, partitions are called drives and are identified as letters, for example C:\

Hard disks can have multiple partitions. When you want Xandros Desktop to coexist with another operating system, a separate partition is created on the hard disk. Creating separate partitions lets you run Xandros Desktop without interfering with other operating systems.

Partitions can be created using the Xandros Desktop installation program or by you. The installation program is automated and requires little input. Otherwise you can create partitions yourself if you know how or using Xandros Storage Manager. A partition table keeps track of the partitions on your hard disk and lets you create, edit, and delete partitions.

The table outlines the options available in the Xandros Installation Wizard. Xandros recommends using the Installation Wizard to partition the disk. The wizard presents only the options applicable to your computer. A Xandros partition and a smaller swap partition are used; the swap partition is for temporary storage of files and helps the Xandros product to perform faster.

Install option	Explanation
Use free space	Searches for unallocated space on the hard disk. Unallocated space is space not defined. If there is enough space, Xandros Desktop is installed into it.
Take over disk or partition	Erases all existing information and formats the hard disk or a specified partition. Xandros Desktop is installed into the disk or partition.
Resize a Windows partition	Lets you resize FAT, FAT32, and NTFS file systems to reallocate space for use as a Linux system. It shrinks a Windows partition and installs Xandros Desktop within the resulting free space.

table continued

Install option	Explanation
Replace existing Xandros OS	Upgrades a previous version of a Xandros product on its partition, keeping some of your defaults, including the home directories, user accounts, and user folders. For example, root and home directories are saved and named with an **_old** extension. To keep any desktop wallpapers added by you, ensure that they are in your home folder.
Manage disks and partitions	Lets you assign and delete existing partitions. On a computer without an operating system or a disk with free space, it also lets you add a partition. The wizard lets you use an existing partition but does not let you change its size. When partitions already exist, if you want to create a new partition, do so before installing Xandros Desktop using third-party or open source applications.

Xandros Desktop supports logical volume management (LVM), which allows you to add new hard drives or replace them and have them detected automatically. With LVM, you can pool space of multiple disks. Without LVM, you can pool space on a single disk. By default Xandros Desktop is installed into the root partition / and a swap partition, as required for LVM.

Installing Xandros Desktop

There are two main installation options:

- **Express Install** — Quickly installs Xandros Desktop on the computer with the default settings and commonly used applications. Using smart technology, you are assisted in determining the best installation location and partitioning. This is the easiest and recommended installation option.
- **Custom Install** — Installs Xandros Desktop on the computer with user-defined settings. This option allows you to select the applications you want to install, set the installation location by configuring your disk or partitions, configure system settings, and add multiple user accounts. You can select from four packages, as well as view and select the applications to be included for each:
  - **Minimal** — Basic installation that includes Print a Fax, Text Editor, Firefox Web Browser, Thunderbird Mail, CD Player, Floppy Disk Formatter, Reminder Message Scheduler, and other applications; use when disk space is low (1.5 GB)
  - **Standard** — Includes commonly used applications; this method is the default and recommended Custom Install option (2 GB). The applications are the same as an Express Install.
  - **Complete** — Install all the software (up to 2.5 GB)

- **Custom** — Select the applications required

Xandros Desktop cannot be installed on an Apple Macintosh computer.

The license allows you to install Xandros Desktop on an unlimited number of home computers for your non-commercial use and one commercial-use computer. For details, read the license.

Installation takes about 15 minutes for an experienced user on a 2.4 GHz computer; additional configuration may take a half hour or so.

Installing Xandros Desktop using Express Install

The Express Install option installs Xandros Desktop with the default settings and commonly used software. For a new installation, it creates a single user account, and you can add more later. The smart technology automatically handles all installation scenarios, such as installation on a computer without an operating system or installation on a computer with an operating system, including Microsoft Windows or Linux. It is the easiest and recommended installation option.

Use the Custom Install option instead for any of the following scenarios:

- You do not need CodeWeavers CrossOver Office software for applications that run on a Microsoft Windows platform
- You do not need the Palm Pilot utilities to connect a Palm Pilot or similar Palm-compatible hand-held device
- You do not want to install the games included
- You want to define your own hard disk partitioning scheme
- You want to choose the software that is installed with Xandros Desktop
- You want to install multiple user accounts and set privacy such that each user's home folder cannot be browsed by others

If you use a non-North-American keyboard and language, there is an International Setup installation option. See "To use the troubleshooting menu for installation" on page 22.

To install Xandros Desktop using Express Install

1. Remove all media from drives, such as floppy disks, CDs, and tapes, and disconnect USB hard disks and memory sticks.
2. Insert the Xandros Desktop Installation CD into the drive.
3. Restart the computer, and wait for the Xandros Installation Wizard Welcome screen.

   If your computer restarts without displaying the wizard, see "Troubleshooting installation" on page 22 and try again.
4. In the Xandros Installation Wizard Welcome window, click the **Next** button.
5. Read the Xandros Desktop License Agreement. To continue, enable the **I accept this agreement** option, then click **Next**.
6. With the **Express install** option enabled, click **Next**.
7. When you have an operating system other than Xandros OS installed, you are given the option to keep it or overwrite it. When you have a version of Xandros OS installed, you have the option of keeping your folders and user accounts (**Yes** option) or overwriting the installation (**No** option). Select an option, then click **Next**.
8. If an Administration Configuration window appears, type and confirm a password for an Administrator (root) account. The Administrator can set passwords, set file access, add user accounts, and so on. In the **Computer name** field, type a name for the computer or leave the randomly generated name shown. Then click **Next**.
9. If a User Account Configuration window appears, type a **User name** for login to the Xandros desktop. Spaces cannot be used. Type the user's **Full name** and password for the account. Creation of a user account and the use of a password are optional, but recommended. Click **Next**.
10. You can change settings that you specified in the wizard by clicking **Back**. Otherwise click **Finish** to perform the installation. Xandros Desktop is installed.
11. For some editions, you also need to install an office suite (StarOffice or OpenOffice.org) using the Applications CD. After login, simply insert the CD and follow the prompts.

If you chose to overwrite files, your files will be erased.

Installing Xandros Desktop using Custom Install

The Custom Install option allows you to select applications for installation, set the installation location by configuring your disk or partitions, configure system settings, and add multiple user accounts.

Use one of the following installation procedures:

- Xandros Desktop is installed on a computer without an operating system, upgrades a previous version of Xandros Desktop, or replaces another Linux operating system
- Xandros Desktop replaces your current Microsoft Windows operating system
- Xandros Desktop coexists with other operating systems on the same computer

If you use a non-North-American keyboard and language, there is an International Setup installation option. See "To use the troubleshooting menu for installation" on page 22.

If you plan to use the **Manage disks and partitions** option and you are using a Xandros OS, the section "To determine the partition number" on page 376 provides help on identifying partitions. You can easily identify them in the installation wizard by enabling the **Replace existing Xandros OS** option, then going back in the wizard to select the **Manage disks and partitions** option.

To install Xandros Desktop on a computer without an operating system, upgrade Xandros Desktop, or replace another Linux operating system

1. If you are replacing another Linux operating system, back up any data or folders that you want to keep.
2. Remove all media from drives, such as floppy disks, CDs, and tapes, and disconnect USB hard disks and memory sticks.
3. Insert the Xandros Desktop Installation CD into the drive.
4. Restart the computer, and wait for the Xandros Installation Wizard Welcome window.

   If your computer restarts without displaying the wizard, see "Troubleshooting installation" on page 22 and try again.
5. In the Xandros Installation Wizard Welcome window, click the **Next** button.
6. Read the Xandros Desktop License Agreement. To continue, enable the **I accept this agreement** option, then click **Next**.
7. Enable the **Custom install** option, and click **Next**.
8. Select the package you want to install (**Minimal**, **Standard**, **Complete**, or **Custom**), select or deselect software from the list as required, and click **Next**.

9 Enable one of the following options. Only the options applicable to your computer are available for selection.

- **Use free space** — Uses the largest unallocated space on the hard disk
- **Take over disk or partition** — Takes over an entire hard disk or specified partition; all data is erased. You can use this option to completely erase an old version of Xandros Desktop and all your folders and data.
- **Resize a Windows partition** — Shrinks a Windows partition and installs within the resulting free space
- **Replace existing Xandros OS** — Upgrades a previous version of a Xandros product, keeping user accounts and folders, which are renamed in the format _old, and some defaults
- **Manage disks and partitions** — You reassign a partition and install onto it. When installing on a computer without an operating system, you can add a partition and install onto it. This option is for advanced users.

Click **Next**.

10 The next screen varies based on selection. A Disk Configuration window can appear from which you select the disk or partition to use. Select it.

If the **Add** button is displayed and you want to add a partition, click it, set **File system** and **Size**, and click **OK**. Disregard any message about a swap file.

If the **Assign** button is displayed, click it and in the **Assign Mount Point** window select a **File system**:

- **ReiserFS** — Default file system; generally better performance than Ext2 or Ext3 in terms of disk space use, access, and crash recovery
- **Ext2** or **Ext3** — Alternative file systems; choose this option if you use PartitionMagic to partition your disks (PartitionMagic does not support ReiserFS)

For ReiserFS, enable one of the following options:

- **Replace existing file system** — Formats the disk or partition and erases all data on that disk or partition
- **Rename folders** — Keeps your /root and /home folders and their contents, and renames them with _old
- **Leave existing file system unchanged**

Click **Next**.

11 In the second Disk Configuration window, to use the default Xandros boot manager (recommended), click **Next**.

A boot manager determines the contents of the black screen shown on startup, for example to select one operating system to launch instead of another. If you want to use something other than the default boot manager

at startup, select it from the **Install boot manager on master boot record** list box (must already be mapped to the Xandros partition for a second option to appear). Or, when you have a boot manager that can be configured after installation, you can deselect the check box.

12 The wizard automatically detects your network setup. If the Network Connection Configuration window appears, you can accept the default values, or select each network connection, click **Configure**, and enable one of the following options:

- **Dynamic address (DHCP)** — When your Internet protocol (IP) address changes each time you connect to the network, for example to your Internet service provider
- **Static address** — When you use a static IP address, enter it in the **IP address** box and enter the **Subnet mask**. You can obtain these values from your system administrator, Internet service provider, by entering `/sbin/ifconfig` in a Linux console window, or by entering `ipconfig /all` in a Windows command window.
- **Disable network connection** — To disconnect from the network and never use the Internet, for example

Click **OK** to exit from the window.

If you are using a static IP address and know the **Default gateway** IP address, enter it. A gateway is a computer that connects networks to each other, for example within a corporation or at the Internet service provider for a home user. Firewall servers and proxy servers are examples of gateways. A router is a gateway; if yours has an IP address, enter it here.

If you have a Domain Name System (DNS) server, enable the **Use the following DNS server addresses** check box and enter the IP address(es). A DNS server translates Internet domain names into IP addresses so that computers recognize them. For example, it allows a user to enter www.xandros.com instead of an IP address.

Click **Next**.

13 If the Administration Configuration window appears:

- Type a password for the Administrator (root) account in the **Administrator password** box. The password must be a minimum of six characters.
- Retype the password in the **Confirm password** box.
- Change the randomly generated **Computer name** (optional), and make it 15 characters or less when your computer is on a Windows network. This computer name is that viewable by others when on a network.
- To make it more difficult for a password to be compromised, enable the **Enforce strong passwords** check box. The wizard checks if your password is acceptable to this higher standard. For example, it disallows the use of common words.

- To disable sharing of home folders, enable the **Make user home folders private** check box. If you have multiple user accounts and thereby multiple home folders, users will be able to access and browse each other's folders unless you enable this option.
- Click **Next** to continue in the wizard.

14 If the User Account Configuration window appears, click **Add** to add a user account (optional and recommended), then in the Add/Edit User Account window:

- Type the user ID of the user in the **User name** box. This is the name for logging in to Xandros Desktop. Spaces cannot be used.
- Type the full name of the user in the **Full name** box. Spaces are allowed.
- Type a **Password** for the user.
- Retype the password in the **Confirm password** box.
- Click **OK** to exit from the window.
- Click **Next** to continue in the wizard.

15 In the Installation Summary window, check the information. If you need to change any settings, click **Back**. Otherwise, click **Finish** to perform the installation. Xandros Desktop is installed.

16 For some editions, you also need to install an office suite (StarOffice or OpenOffice.org) using the Applications CD. After login, simply insert the CD and follow the prompts.

If you chose to take over a disk or partition, that disk or partition will be erased.

To replace a Microsoft Windows operating system with Xandros Desktop (Windows XP example)

1 Back up any data or folders that you want to keep.

2 Remove all media from drives, such as floppy disks, CDs, and tapes, and disconnect USB hard disks and memory sticks.

3 Insert the Xandros Desktop Installation CD into the drive.

4 Restart the computer, and wait for the Xandros Installation Wizard Welcome window.

If your computer restarts without displaying the wizard, see "Troubleshooting installation" on page 22 and try again.

5 In the Xandros Installation Wizard Welcome window, click the **Next** button.

6 Read the Xandros Desktop License Agreement. To continue, enable the **I accept this agreement** option, then click **Next**.

7 Enable the **Custom install** option, and click **Next**.

8 Select the package that you want to install (**Minimal**, **Standard**, **Complete**, or **Custom**), select or deselect software from the list as required, and click **Next**.

9 Enable the **Take over disk or partition** option, and click **Next**.

10 Complete the rest of the installation wizard. See the previous procedure, starting at step 10 for assistance.

All data and files on the disk or partition used will be erased before installation.

To install Xandros Desktop to coexist with another operating system (Windows XP example)

1 If Windows is not already installed, install it first.

2 Remove all media from drives, such as floppy disks, CDs, and tapes, and disconnect USB hard disks and memory sticks.

3 In the Windows **My Computer** window, check if you have an NTFS-formatted hard disk by right-clicking the disk and selecting **Properties**. Check if the **File system** setting reads **NTFS**.

If you have an NTFS disk, to ensure that the partitions are resized properly, defragment the disk by clicking **Start** ▶ **Control Panel** ▶ **Administrative Tools** ▶ **Computer Management** ▶ **Disk Defragmenter**, then defragment the appropriate disk.

4 Insert the Xandros Desktop Installation CD into the drive.

5 Restart the computer, and wait for the Xandros Installation Wizard Welcome window.

If your computer restarts without displaying the wizard, see "Troubleshooting installation" on page 22 and try again.

6 In the Xandros Installation Wizard Welcome window, click **Next**.

7 Read the Xandros Desktop License Agreement. To continue, enable the **I accept this agreement** option, then click **Next**.

8 Enable the **Custom install** option, and click **Next**.

9 Select the package that you want to install (**Minimal**, **Standard**, **Complete**, or **Custom**), select or deselect software from the list as required, and click **Next**.

10 In the Disk Configuration window, enable one of the following options:

- **Use free space** — Uses the largest unallocated space on the hard disk
- **Resize a Windows partition** — Shrinks a Windows partition and installs within the resulting free space

Click **Next**.

11 In the second Disk Configuration window, to use the default Xandros boot manager (recommended), click **Next**.

A boot manager determines the contents of the black screen shown on startup, for example to select one operating system to launch instead of another. If you want to use something other than the default boot manager at startup, select it from the **Install boot manager on master boot record** list box (must already be mapped to the Xandros partition for a second option to appear). Or, when you have a boot manager that can be configured after installation, you can deselect the check box.

12 The wizard automatically detects your network setup. If the Network Connection Configuration window appears, you can accept the default values, or select a network connection, click **Configure**, and enable one of the following options:

- **Dynamic address (DHCP)** — When your Internet protocol (IP) address changes each time you connect to the network, for example to your Internet service provider
- **Static address** — When you use a static IP address, enter it in the **IP address** box and enter the **Subnet mask**. You can obtain these values from your system administrator, Internet service provider, by entering `/sbin/ifconfig` in a Linux console window, or by entering `ipconfig /all` in a Windows command window.
- **Disable network connection** — To disconnect from the network and never use the Internet, for example

Click **OK** to exit from the window.

If you are using a static IP address and know the **Default gateway** IP address, enter it. A gateway is a computer that connects networks to each other, for example within a corporation or at the Internet service provider for a home user. Firewall servers and proxy servers are examples of gateways. A router is a gateway; if yours has an IP address, enter it here.

If you have a Domain Name System (DNS) server, enable the **Use the following DNS server addresses** check box and enter the address(es). A DNS server translates Internet domain names into IP addresses so that computers recognize them. For example, it allows a user to enter www.xandros.com instead of an IP address.

Click **Next**.

13 If the Administration Configuration window appears:

- Type a password for the Administrator (root) account in the **Administrator password** box. The password must be a minimum of six characters.
- Retype the password in the **Confirm password** box.

- Change the randomly generated **Computer name** (optional), and make it 15 characters or less when your computer is on a Windows network. This computer name is that viewable by others when on a network.
- To make it more difficult for a password to be compromised, enable the **Enforce strong passwords** check box. The wizard checks if your password is acceptable to this higher standard. For example, it disallows the use of common words.
- To disable sharing of home folders, enable the **Make user home folders private** check box. If you have multiple user accounts and thereby multiple home folders, users will be able to access and browse each other's folders unless you enable this option.
- Click **Next** to continue in the wizard.

14 If the User Account Configuration window appears, click **Add** to add a user account (optional and recommended), then in the Add/Edit User Account window:

- Type the user ID of the user in the **User name** box. This is the name for logging in to Xandros Desktop. Spaces cannot be used.
- Type the full name of the user in the **Full name** box. Spaces are allowed.
- Type a **Password** for the user.
- Retype the password in the **Confirm password** box.
- Click **OK** to exit from the window.
- Click **Next** to continue in the wizard.

15 In the Installation Summary window, check the information. If you need to change any settings, click **Back**. Otherwise, click **Finish** to perform the installation. Xandros Desktop is installed.

16 For some editions, you also need to install an office suite (StarOffice or OpenOffice.org) using the Applications CD. After login, simply insert the CD and follow the prompts.

If you install Xandros Desktop to coexist with one or more other operating systems, install the other operating system first. If you install Xandros Desktop first, then want to install Microsoft Windows, insert the Windows CD into the computer and wait for the installation wizard. If the installation wizard does not automatically launch, back up your files, clear the hard disk, install Windows, then install Xandros Desktop.

Troubleshooting installation

If you get error 2000 and you downloaded the product, try another installation CD, for example create it using a speed of 4x or less.

If you get error 5005, try the following:

- Check the hardware requirements
- Check the MD5 check sum if you downloaded the Xandros product
- If the check sum is correction, create the installation CD again using a slow speed, such as 4x or less
- Use the troubleshooting menu outlined in this section

If you get error 4000 and have a serial advanced technology attachment (SATA) RAID device, install with another type of RAID or without RAID.

If you get error 4000 and have an integrated drive electronics (IDE) device and a SATA controller, update your system BIOS and set it to non-enhanced mode.

If you are unable to use the mouse, use a USB or PS2 mouse.

Xandros Desktop includes a troubleshooting menu, outlined here, that can be used to install the product when it does not immediately recognize hardware. You can also use the troubleshooting menu when your installation is successful but have a hardware issue, such as no sound, to reinstall using another option.

To use the troubleshooting menu for installation

1. With the Xandros Desktop Installation CD in the drive, restart the computer.
2. During startup, when a "Press <Space> for Troubleshooting Menu" message appears, press the space bar immediately. Access is successful when the selection screen includes the following options:

Option	Description
Default Setup	Default installation; acpi=on
Restore Xandros	Restore the startup screen and installation
Rescue Console	Diagnostic tools; vga=normal
International Setup	Non-North-American keyboard and language
256-Colors Setup	Old monitor or video card
VESA Mode Setup	Generic video support
Intel i810 Setup	For Intel i810 onboard video
Text mode boot Setup	To start without showing the splash screen
ACPI 1 Setup	Default installation; acpi=on
ACPI 2 Setup	acpi=on noapic
ACPI 3 Setup	acpi=on pci=biosirq
ACPI 4 Setup	acpi=on pci=noacpi

APM 1 Setup	acpi=off
APM 2 Setup	acpi=off noapic
APM 3 Setup	acpi=off pci=biosirq

where

ACPI = Advanced configuration and power interface that allows a computer to hibernate and be re-activated by pressing any key; newer than APM
APM = Advanced power management

3 Using the down arrow, ↓, select **APM 1 Setup**, then press **Enter**.

If Xandros Desktop does not install, repeat steps 1 to 2, then select **ACPI 2 Setup**. If it does not install, try **ACPI 3 Setup**, then try the other ACPI, APM, VESA, 256-Colors, and Intel options until one of the options works.

If you use a non-North-American keyboard and language, select **International Setup** to install Xandros Desktop.

If Xandros Desktop still does not install, repeat steps 1 to 2, select **Rescue Console**, press **Enter**, and type `startx` at the bash prompt.

If you install Xandros Desktop with **256-Colors Setup** and the colors displayed on your monitor after login require correction, change from 256-color mode to another color mode by clicking **Launch** ▶ **Control Center**, then **Display**, then **Settings**, changing the color mode in the **Color** drop-down list, for example to **True Color (24 bit)** or **High Color Plus (16 bit)**, and clicking **Apply**. Restart the computer.

You can also check that the computer BIOS is set to boot from the CD instead of a hard drive if you are having trouble installing.

If you have a laptop computer and the entire screen is not used after installation, contact technical support for the changes required to configuration files for your computer.

Getting updates

After installing Xandros Desktop, Xandros recommends that you download updates, such as security updates. If you are connected to a network and depending on its configuration, you can do so in the First Run Wizard that appears the first time you log in. For instruction on downloading updates, see “Downloading updates and applications” on page 69.

Using the desktop 3

This chapter introduces the Xandros desktop environment, including how to:

- Start up
- Log in and out
- Install additional applications
- Migrate content from a Windows computer
- Work with the Panel and use applets
- Start applications
- Switch user sessions
- Use virtual desktops
- Create shortcuts
- Lock the desktop
- Change your password
- Set the default operating system

Starting up and logging in

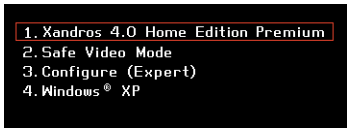
After installing Xandros Desktop, you log in to the computer and start using your new environment. By logging in, you identify yourself to Xandros Desktop. Based on your user account, the system grants you options and privileges to the computer, remembers your personal settings, and protects your information and data.

Xandros Desktop can be used as a multi-user operating system. You can set personalized settings for each user who logs in to the computer. For example, a parent can use a set of configuration settings different from those set for a child's account. The child can have a different desktop background and be restricted from accessing certain files.

Advanced users have the option of manually loading a driver at startup and to use custom kernel arguments. This increases hardware compatibility.

Starting Xandros Desktop and other operating systems

When you start the computer, a menu displays startup options.



Xandros startup screen

When you have more than one operating system installed, the menu lets you select the operating system you want to start. In the example shown, an edition of Xandros Desktop and Windows XP are installed. The Safe Video Mode and Configure (Expert) options are for troubleshooting.

To start Xandros Desktop

1. Start your computer.
2. When the black startup menu is displayed, with the Xandros entry selected, press **Enter**. By default, if 30 seconds elapses without a selection being made, the option at the top of the menu is selected automatically and startup continues.

You can change this timing and the default operating system. See "Setting the default operating system" on page 54.

To start another operating system

1. Start your computer.
2. When the black startup menu is displayed, press the down arrow, ↓, to select the operating system you want to use, and press **Enter**.

Logging in

You can log in as a regular user or as Administrator (root).

In Linux, the account used for system administration is called root. By logging in to your computer as the Administrator (root), you have unlimited privileges: you can add and delete user accounts, change user privileges, access all unencrypted files, and configure Xandros Desktop. Only one Administrator account is allowed. Avoid working in this account unless you need Administrator access.

To log in as a regular user

1. In the login window, select your user account from the **User name** drop-down list.
2. Type the password for the user account in the **Password** box.
3. Click **Log in**. A desktop with a blue background loads by default.

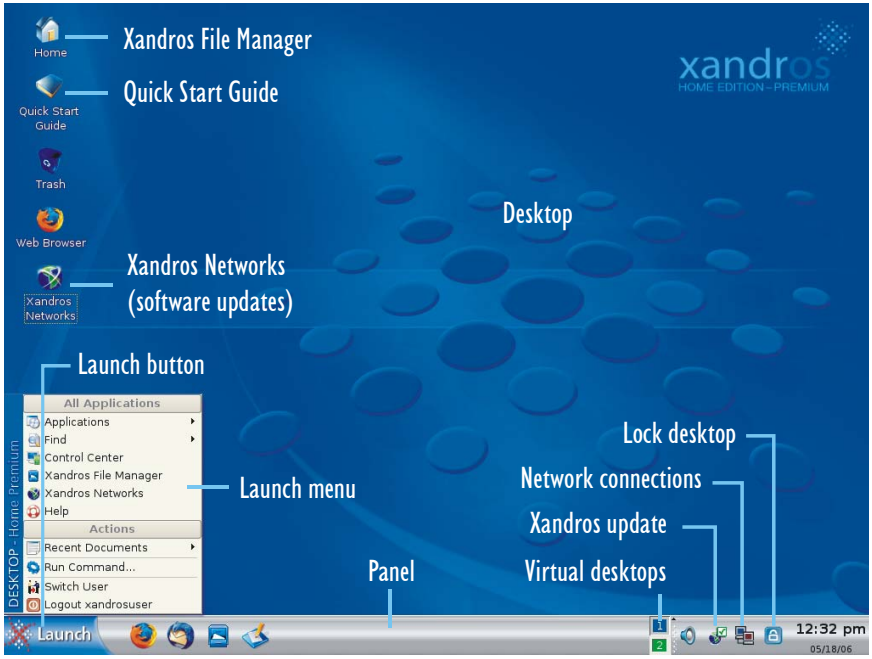
If you have problems logging in or if a feature is not functional, such as the startup sound, see "Troubleshooting login" on page 28.

To log in as the Administrator (root)

1. In the login window, select **Administrator (root)** from the **User name** drop-down list.
2. Type the password for the account in the **Password** box.
3. Click **Log in**. A desktop with a red background loads by default.

If you have problems logging in or if a feature is not functional, such as the startup sound, see "Troubleshooting login" on page 28.

You can set login options, such as logging in without a password; see "Enabling automatic login" on page 53 and "Logging out and shutting down" on page 35. You can also launch applications automatically at startup; see "Launching applications automatically" on page 101.



Xandros desktop

Troubleshooting login

In addition to allowing you to log in directly to Xandros Desktop or another operating system, the startup menu provides other options. Typically, these options are for troubleshooting the Linux operating system or configuration. If these options do not work, the troubleshooting menu can be used with the installation CD. Also use the troubleshooting menu if an operating system is no longer selectable from the startup screen.

You can use the troubleshooting menu when your installation is successful but have a hardware issue, such as no sound, to reinstall using another option. See “Troubleshooting installation” on page 22.

To start Xandros Desktop or Linux using specialized settings

1 Start your computer.

2 When the black Xandros startup menu is displayed, press the down arrow, ↓, to select the setting you want to use, and press **Enter**. The following options are available:

- **Safe Video Mode** — If you are unable to boot or log in to Xandros Desktop, use this mode.
- **Configure (Expert)** — If you are unable to boot or log in to Xandros Desktop using Safe Video Mode, use this mode. This option is for

advanced users who are familiar with the UNIX command line interface and who are interfacing with technical support personnel. For example, you can press **Ctrl+D** at the prompt to load the login window.

3 If you are still unable to log in, follow the instructions in the next procedure.

To start Xandros Desktop using the troubleshooting menu

1 You need to know which partition to restore; see "To determine the partition number" on page 376.

2 Insert the Xandros Desktop Installation CD into the drive.

3 Restart the computer.

4 During startup, when a "Press <Space> for Troubleshooting Menu" message appears, press the space bar immediately. Access is successful when a selection screen appears with the following options:

Default Setup
Restore Xandros
Rescue Console
International Setup
256-Colors Setup
VESA Mode Setup
Text mode boot Setup
ACPI 1 Setup
ACPI 2 Setup
ACPI 3 Setup
ACPI 4 Setup
APM 1 Setup
APM 2 Setup
APM 3 Setup

5 Press the down arrow, ↓, to select **Restore Xandros** from the menu, and press **Enter**. You are prompted for the partition to restore and to verify that you want to restore it. When asked if you want to change the current command line, enter `no`. When asked if you want to change the current boot device, enter `no`. Xandros Desktop is restored and your files and some settings are saved.

6 If that option does not work, repeat the procedure to select **Rescue Console** from the menu. The Rescue Console provides diagnostic tools for configuring Xandros Desktop. It is for advanced users.

Manually loading a driver at startup

You can manually load a driver at startup. This procedure is for advanced users.

Some hardware that is not supported or not automatically detected can require manual loading of the kernel driver. For example, an ISA-bus network card is not automatically detected, but usually works if the driver is loaded for it. For example, a certain ISA-bus Western Digital network card uses the "wd" kernel driver. You add a line containing the text "wd" to the /etc/modules file. This action loads the driver at startup.

To load a driver

1. Log in as Administrator.
2. Click **Launch** ▶ **Applications** ▶ **Accessories** ▶ **Text Editor**.
3. Open the **/etc/modules** file by clicking **File** ▶ **Open** and typing `/etc/modules` in the **File name** box.
4. Add a line to this file in the following format:

Module name	Options
sb	io=0x220 irq=5 dma=1 dma16=-1

   In this example, an ISA sound card driver is to be loaded.
5. Save the file and close the Text Editor.
6. Restart the computer. The driver will be loaded automatically at startup.

Using custom kernel arguments

You can use custom kernel arguments at startup. An example is **acpi=off noapic**. This procedure is for advanced users.

Certain hardware requires that kernel options be input in order to be detected or to work correctly. As an example, some old IBM ThinkPad laptops have non-standard floppy disk drives. For these systems you need to use the kernel argument "floppy=thinkpad".

To use custom kernel arguments

1. You need to know which partition to use; see "To determine the partition number" on page 376.
2. Place the Xandros Desktop Installation CD into the drive.
3. Restart the computer.
4. During startup, when a "Press <Space> for Troubleshooting Menu" message appears, press the space bar immediately. Access is successful when a selection screen appears with the following options:

Default Setup
Restore Xandros
Rescue Console
International Setup
256-Colors Setup
VESA Mode Setup
Intel i810 Setup
Text mode boot Setup
ACPI 1 Setup
ACPI 2 Setup
ACPI 3 Setup
ACPI 4 Setup
APM 1 Setup
APM 2 Setup
APM 3 Setup

5 Select the **Restore Xandros** option and press **Enter**.

6 Type the number of the partition or disk to change, for example `1`, and press **Enter**.

7 Type `yes` to verify that you want to restore, and press **Enter**.

8 Type `yes` to verify that you want to change the current command line, and press **Enter**.

9 Type the custom kernel argument, for example `rw acpi=on noapic`, and press **Enter**.

10 When prompted again if you want to change the current command line, type `no` and press **Enter**.

11 When asked if you want to change the current boot device, enter `no` and press **Enter**.

12 After computer restart, the black Xandros startup screen appears.

Completing the First Run Wizard

The First Run Wizard automatically launches the first time each user logs in to Xandros Desktop.

First Run Wizard
Welcome to First Run Wizard
The First Run Wizard helps you to easily customize your desktop environment. You can set the way numbers, dates, currencies and time are displayed, desktop appearance and behaviors and more.
All of these settings can be changed later using the Control Center.
Which hand do you use to operate your mouse?
Right hand
Left hand
xandros
Next>
Cancel

First Run Wizard to set basic default values

The wizard guides you through basic setup tasks, such as:

- Configuring your mouse
- Choosing your regional settings, such as location and keyboard language; setting the locale automatically sets fields such as the character set, date format, and currency
- Setting the date and time
- Adding printers
- Choosing default window styles and system behavior, such as Xandros Desktop, UNIX, Microsoft Windows, or Mac OS behavior
- Registering Xandros Desktop over the Internet (required in order to install updates)
- Installing updates to Xandros Desktop over the Internet using Xandros Networks

Complete the wizard. If you do not want to add a printer now or download updates from Xandros Networks, for example, you can do so later. All of the settings you select in the First Run Wizard can be changed later in the Control Center. You can also access the First Run Wizard again by clicking the **Launch ▶ Applications ▶ System ▶ First Run Wizard**.

Installing additional applications

With the Applications CD, you can install the OpenOffice or StarOffice office suite and additional software, such as Adobe Reader. With CodeWeavers CrossOver, you can install compatible Windows-based applications, such as Microsoft Word. Information on how to install more software using Xandros Networks is provided near the end of this user guide.

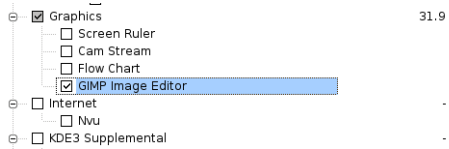
Installing applications from the Applications CD

You can install additional software with the Applications CD.

To install applications from the Applications CD

1 Insert the Applications CD into a drive. The Xandros CD Software Installer launches. If it does not, follow "Installing from the Applications CD" on page 374.

2 Enable the check boxes of the applications to install.



Installing GIMP from the Applications CD

3 Click **Install**. Xandros Networks launches.

4 Follow the prompts.

Installing Windows-based applications

Xandros Desktop includes software, called CodeWeavers CrossOver, that allows selected applications and plug-ins written for Microsoft Windows to run without Microsoft Windows installed. You can install and run applications, such as Microsoft Word, Excel, PowerPoint, Visio, Lotus Notes, Intuit Quicken, iTunes, Adobe Photoshop, and WinZip. And you can install and run plug-ins, such as Shockwave Player.

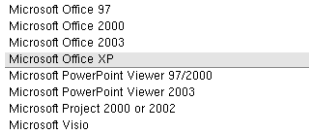
Not all software or versions are compatible. If you have software that you want to install on Xandros Desktop, check compatibility.

To check software compatibility

- See **http://www.codeweavers.com/site/products/cxoffice/supported_apps/**

To install Windows-based applications

1. Insert the installation CD in a drive, for example a Microsoft Word installation CD. Normally, the CrossOver installer runs automatically when you insert the CD and you follow the wizard. If it does not, use the following steps.
2. Click **Launch ▶ Applications ▶ CrossOver ▶ Install Windows Software**.
3. In the Install Software window, select the application to install and click **Next**.



Installing Office XP with CodeWeavers CrossOver

4. Complete the rest of the installation wizard, which varies with the application being installed. Do not cancel the installation once you start the process. The restart/reboot is simulated, not an actual computer restart.
5. After installation, applications are normally launched with **Launch ▶ Windows Applications ▶ Programs**.

Migrating from a Windows computer

With Versora Progression Desktop for Xandros, you can migrate e-mail, calendars, address books, bookmarks, desktop, files, and other settings from a Windows computer. It is included with the Premium and Professional editions and can be purchased on Xandros Networks. The following systems are supported: Windows 98, Windows NT, Windows 2000, and Windows XP with IE 5.01 or later. Migration includes the following elements:

- Wallpaper
- Screen saver
- Keyboard
- Mouse
- Sounds
- E-mail — Microsoft Outlook and Outlook Express, Mozilla Mail, and Thunderbird migrate to Evolution, KDE Mail/KMail, Mozilla Mail, and/or Thunderbird Mail
- Web browser — Microsoft Internet Explorer, Firefox, and Mozilla migrate to Firefox, Mozilla, and/or Konqueror
- Word processing — Microsoft Word, OpenOffice.org Writer migrate to OpenOffice.org Writer
- Instant messaging — AOL Instant Messenger and GAIM migrate to GAIM and Instant Messaging/Kopete

You select the applications that you want to migrate to, for example Thunderbird Mail or KDE Mail for e-mail.

To migrate content from a Windows computer

1. When migrating from Windows to Linux on the same computer, Versora recommends backing up the Windows configuration.
2. Run the Versora Progression Desktop for Xandros CD at the Windows computer. A platform neutral package (PNP) file is generated for use on the Xandros computer.
3. Transfer the PNP file to your Xandros computer.
4. Insert the Versora Progression Desktop for Xandros CD into a drive on the Xandros computer. If CrossOver Office launches, cancel it. A Versora autorun program guides you through the migration process.

Logging out and shutting down

During a session of Xandros Desktop, you can log in and out as a different user. For example, you can log in as Administrator to configure a setting, log out, and then log back in to a user account. It is quicker than restarting your computer and logging in.

When you have completed your task or work, you can shut down Xandros Desktop. When you exit, you can save your desktop view and restore it the next time you log in. For example, you can leave the Control Center open, then have it launch automatically the next time you log in. Not all applications can be re-launched automatically.

Logout window

To log out

1. Click **Launch ▶ Logout**.
2. To save your desktop view, enable the **Save session for future logins** check box.
3. Click the **Log out** icon. The system logs out and the login window appears. When you are logged into several accounts using the switch user feature, you need to log out from each account for the login window to appear.

To shut down

1. Click **Launch** ▶ **Logout**.
2. To save your desktop view, enable the **Save session for future logins** check box.
3. Click the **Shut down** icon. The system shuts down.
4. If you know that your computer has power management functions that allow it to power off but the computer does not do so, contact Xandros Technical Support to determine if a workaround is possible.

You can specify a time for the computer to shut down. For example, open a console window as Administrator, enter `at 1830`, enter `halt`, and press **Ctrl+D**. These commands shut down the computer at 6:30 PM.

To restart

1. Click **Launch** ▶ **Logout**.
2. To save your desktop view, enable the **Save session for future logins** check box.
3. Click the **Restart** icon. The computer restarts and the black Xandros startup screen appears.

Moving from a Windows desktop to a Xandros desktop

Xandros Desktop has a desktop and functions that look similar to Microsoft Windows. The table lists features that perform analogous tasks in Windows and Xandros Desktop.

Microsoft Windows uses...	Xandros Desktop uses...
Control Panel	Control Center
Taskbar	Panel with taskbar
Start button	**Launch** button
Windows Explorer	Xandros File Manager
My Computer	Home
A: and E: drives	Floppy and CD-RW drives
Recycle Bin	Trash

Working with the Panel

The Panel lets you start applications and manage multiple desktops. It includes application buttons, the taskbar, the virtual desktop buttons, and a clock/calendar. It is located by default at the bottom of the desktop, and it can be moved and resized. Hiding the Panel increases the desktop workspace available for application windows.

The Panel contains application buttons to start applications, such as Xandros File Manager. You can customize application buttons by moving or removing them and by changing the icon and description associated with each button.

You can launch applications called applets from the Panel.

In addition to setting options from the Panel as outlined here, you can also set the same options in the **Panel** and **Taskbar** panels in the Control Center.

Panel

Moving and sizing the Panel

You can move the Panel to the top, left, bottom, or right border of the desktop. The Panel can be resized to increase or decrease its dimensions.

To move the Panel

1. Right-click a blank area of the Panel, and select **Configure Panel**.
2. In the **Position** diagram, enable the button of the preferred location.
3. Click **OK**.

You can also drag the Panel to a desktop border in order to move it.

To size the Panel

1. Right-click a blank area of the Panel, and select **Configure Panel**.
2. From the **Size** drop-down list, select one of the following options:
   - **Tiny**
   - **Small**
   - **Normal** — Default
   - **Large**
   - **Custom**

Hiding or displaying the Panel

Hiding the Panel maximizes the amount of desktop workspace. The auto-hide feature lets you hide the Panel automatically when you are not using it. The Panel then displays when you move the pointer to the edge of the desktop where the Panel is normally located. You can animate the Panel so that it slides as it disappears or reappears.

To automatically hide the Panel when not in use

1. Right-click the Panel, and select **Configure Panel**.
2. Click the **Hiding** tab.
3. Enable the **Hide automatically** check box.
4. Set the time delay to hide the Panel when not in use. The default is 3 seconds and the maximum is 10 seconds.
5. Click **OK**.
6. When the Panel is hidden, move the mouse to its normal location to activate it.

To animate the Panel

1. Right-click the Panel, and select **Configure Panel**.
2. Click the **Hiding** tab.
3. Enable the **Animate panel hiding** check box (enabled by default).
4. Move the slider to set the speed at which to display or hide the Panel.
5. Click **OK**.

Customizing application buttons

Each application button on the Panel can be moved on the Panel and removed from the Panel. You can add new application buttons. You can change the icon and description for application buttons. The description is the text that appears when you move your mouse pointer over an icon or area of the Panel.

To move an application button

1. Right-click the application button, and select **Move**.
2. Drag the application button to the new location on the Panel, and click the Panel.

To add an application button

- Right-click the Panel, and select **Add to Panel ▶ Application** and the application that you want to add to the Panel.

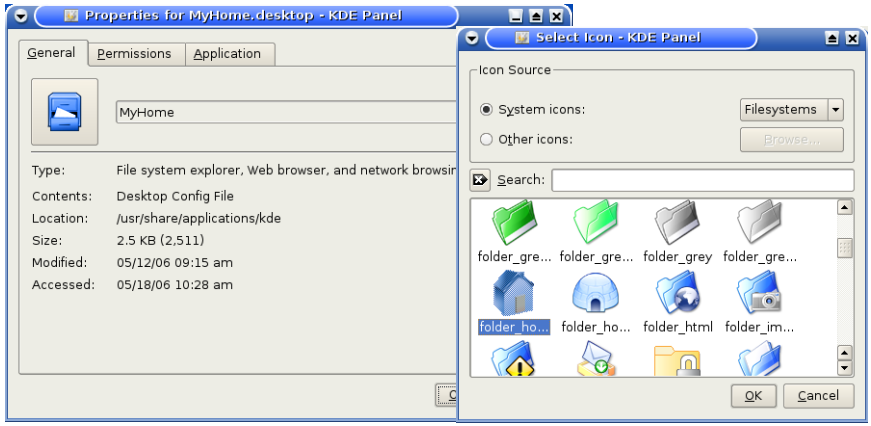
To remove an application button

- Right-click the application button and select **Remove**.

To change an application button icon

1 Right-click the application button, and select **Properties**. Not all application buttons can be changed.

2 Click the icon on the left side of the window.



Changing icons for an application

3 Select a new icon. Note that different collections are available with the drop-down menus. Then click **OK** to exit from the window.

4 Click **OK**.

To change the description for an application button

1 Right-click the application button, and select **Properties**. Not all application buttons can be changed.

2 Click the **Application** tab.

3 In the **Name** box, type the name of the application button. This is the first part of the description.

4 In the **Comment** box, type a description for the application button (optional). This is the second part of the description.

5 Click **OK** to exit from the window.

Using applets

You can launch applications called applets from the Panel. These applets then usually reside on the Panel. The table lists the applets available.

Applet	Function
Character Selector	Places a character selector panel on the Panel. Right-click its arrow to configure it by copying characters from the main Character Selector.
Clock	Places a configurable clock and calendar on the Panel. Click to modify.
Cut and Paste Utility	Places the clipboard application on the Panel and lets you set defaults for information copied to the clipboard. Right-click to select copied information.
Desktop Previewer & Pager	Places virtual desktop buttons on the Panel. Right-click to configure.
Dictionary	Places a text box on the Panel and launches the Online Dictionary when a word is entered
Lock/Logout	Places the Lock The Desktop icon on the Panel. Click to log out.
Network Connections	Places icons on the Panel indicating network and Internet connections and activity. Right-click icon to create a new network connection.
News Ticker	Places a news ticker on the Panel. This application can also be launched on the desktop; see “Using the News Ticker” on page 217.
Performance Monitor	Places a performance monitor on the Panel. This application can also be launched on the desktop; see “Monitoring system performance” on page 139.
Quick Launcher	Places additional application buttons on the Panel that you can configure

table continued

Applet	Function
Run Command	Places a window on the Panel in which you can type commands and launch applications. For example, type `firefox` to launch the Web browser.
Runaway Process Catcher	Launches an application that monitors for runaway processes, which you can remove. Click to use.
Sound Mixer	Places a mixer on the Panel and lets you control volume, speakers, line, CD, microphone, video, and video connections
Stock Ticker	Places a scrolling stock ticker on the Panel. See "Using the Stock Ticker" on page 229.
Storage Media	Places icon on Panel, for example to quickly eject a CD from the drive
System Tray	Adds a section on the Panel to show icons of the underlying systems running, such as volume and Instant Messaging; launched by default
Taskbar	Places a taskbar on the Panel
Trash	Places a trash can on the Panel. You can drag-and-drop files onto it.
Weather Report	Places a weather readout with temperature, wind speed, and air pressure on the Panel; see "Using the weather monitor" on page 228
Xandros Update	Places the Xandros Update icon on the Panel to indicate if updates are available on Xandros Networks; launched by default. See "To download updates from the Panel" on page 71.

To launch an applet

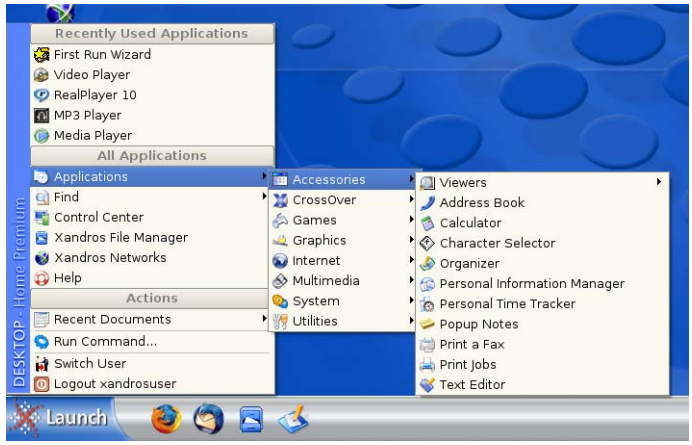
- Right-click the Panel, select **Add to Panel ▶ Applet** and the applet that you want to use. You can also right-click the **Launch** button and select **Panel Menu** to get to this option.

To remove an applet from the Panel

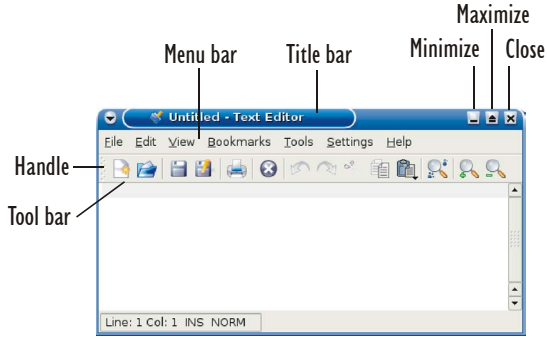
- Right-click the Panel, select **Remove From Panel ▶ Applet** and the applet that you want to remove. You can also right-click the **Launch** button and select **Panel Menu** to get to this option.

Working with applications

When you start an application, Xandros Desktop displays it in a window on the desktop. You can display multiple windows on the desktop simultaneously. Moving, sizing, and arranging windows on the desktop helps you organize your work.



Launch menu for starting applications



Window elements

Starting applications

From the Launch menu, you can select an application to start based on function. You can also select an application based on how frequently you use it or how recently it has been run.

To start an application

- Click **Launch ▶ Applications**, and select an application.

You can start some applications from the Quick Start section at the top of the Launch menu. Frequently used applications are shown by default. See “Changing the Launch menu” on page 86.

You can also start some applications by clicking the application button on the Panel. For information about adding an application to the Panel, see “Customizing application buttons” on page 38.

Applications can also be started from the desktop using shortcuts. For information about creating shortcuts, see “Working with desktop shortcuts” on page 49.

Applications can be launched automatically at startup. See “Launching applications automatically” on page 101.

Exiting from applications

When you finish using an application, exit from the application window to maximize the available workspace.

To exit from an application window

- Click **File** ▶ **Exit** or **File** ▶ **Quit**. You may also have to close an application on the Panel by right-clicking its icon on the Panel.

You can also exit by clicking the **Close** button on the title bar of an application window. This button is usually an ✕ at the top right of the application window. **Alt+F4** works too.

If an application is non-responsive, you can terminate it by pressing **Ctrl+Alt+Esc**, then clicking the application window.

Moving, sizing, and arranging windows

You can organize windows on the desktop by moving and sizing them. You can arrange windows on the desktop by separating them or by ordering the application windows progressively starting with the active window. Minimizing windows you are not using increases the workspace available on the desktop.

To move a window

- Drag the window title bar to a new location.

To size a window

1. With the pointer placed at the edge of a window and a double arrow showing, click and drag the window border to the required size.
2. To enlarge a window to its maximum size, click **Maximize**. This button is usually an up-arrow box at the top right of the window.

You can switch between windows on the desktop by pressing **Alt+Tab**.

To arrange windows on the desktop

- Right-click the desktop, and select one of the following options:
  - **Cascade Windows** — Arranges the application windows on top of each other
  - **Unclutter Windows** — Separates windows to maximize the space available for each application

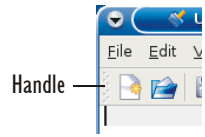
To minimize a window

- Click the **Minimize** button on the title bar of the application window. This button usually has a line at the bottom of the button and is located at the top right of the application window. The minimized window is accessible from the Panel.

Using tool bars

A tool bar is a row of icons and/or text displayed just below menu items in a window. A tool bar can be moved within a window, can be set to show text or icons, and can be sized. Not all applications can be customized this way.

To move a tool bar



1. Right-click the tool bar handle, which is usually faint lines on the end of the tool bar.
2. Select **Orientation**, and select one of the following options:
   - **Top** — Places the tool bar at the top of the window (default)
   - **Left** — Places the tool bar at the left side of the window
   - **Right** — Places the tool bar at the right side of the window
   - **Bottom** — Places the tool bar at the bottom of the window
   - **Floating** — Places a tool bar window on top of the window; allows you to move it to the desktop, away from the application
   - **Flat** — Minimizes the tool bar (click the handle to view the tool bar again)

To change tool bar display

1 Right-click the tool bar handle, which is usually faint lines on the end of the tool bar.

2 Select **Text Position**, and select one of the following options:

- **Icons Only** — Shows only pictures on the tool bar (default)
- **Text Only** — Shows only names of applications on the tool bar
- **Text Alongside Icons** — Shows icons and names of applications beside each icon
- **Text Under Icons** — Shows icons and names of applications below each icon

Text under icons on tool bar

To set icon size on tool bar

1 Right-click the tool bar handle, which is usually faint lines on the end of the tool bar.

2 Select **Icon Size**, and select one of the following options:

- **Default** — Same as medium
- **Small** — 16 x 16
- **Medium** — Default, 22 x 22
- **Large** — 32 x 32
- **Huge** — 48 x 48

Switching user sessions

Xandros Desktop allows you to create and switch among multiple user sessions. Applications running in one user account continue to run when you switch to another user account. By default, you can switch among three accounts and four sessions.

To switch to a new user session

1 Click **Launch** ▶ **Switch User**.

2 If you want to require password re-entry upon switching back, enable the **Lock current screen when switching** check box.

3 Click **OK**.

4 Log in to the next user account. You can log into three accounts and four sessions; the login fails for the fourth user account.

You can also switch between sessions using **Ctrl+Alt+F7**, **Ctrl+Alt+F8**, **Ctrl+Alt+F9**, or **Ctrl+Alt+F10**.

Due to the limitations of some video card drivers, the switch-user feature is not supported on all systems and may not appear in the Launch menu.

Using virtual desktops

Virtual desktops help you to organize your work and to multi-task by using different desktops for different tasks. For example, you can use one virtual desktop for programming, another virtual desktop for e-mail, and another virtual desktop for reading help files.

By default, two virtual desktops are shown on the Panel. Each virtual desktop also has a default name when you move the pointer over its button on the Panel. You can have up to 20 virtual desktops and name each desktop.

You can switch among virtual desktops and move applications among them. When you make changes to virtual desktop settings, you can refresh the desktop to display the changes.

Viewing and switching among virtual desktops

The Panel shows the virtual desktops available and lets you switch among them.

In addition, the Desktop Pager can be used to display a snapshot of all virtual desktops so that you have a visual display of what is open on each. You can then easily switch among desktops and move applications by dragging and dropping.

To switch virtual desktops using the Panel

- On the Panel, click the **Desktop** button to switch to.

Virtual desktop buttons on Panel

You can also move forward to the next virtual desktop by pressing **Ctrl+Tab** or **Ctrl+Shift+Tab** to back up to the previous desktop.

You can also switch among desktops using the Desktop Pager.

You can also switch among virtual desktops by moving the mouse cursor to the edge of the screen. In the Control Center, under **General Settings**, and **Desktop Behavior**, click **Window Behavior**. Click the **Advanced** tab, and enable an **Active Desktop Borders** option. You have the choice of switching to another desktop by dragging a window to the edge of the desktop or by using the mouse pointer.

You can also switch among virtual desktops using the mouse wheel. See “To change the number and names of virtual desktops” on page 48.

To switch virtual desktops using Desktop Pager

1 Click **Launch** ▶ **Applications** ▶ **Utilities** ▶ **Desktop Pager**.

2 Click on any virtual desktop image to switch to that desktop.

Desktop Pager for switching between virtual desktops

To configure the Desktop Pager

- Right-click in a pager window and select **Configure KPager**.

Moving applications among virtual desktops

You can move open applications among virtual desktops.

You can make an application available to all virtual desktops if, for example, you frequently need to access a specific application.

To move an application to another desktop

1 Right-click the title bar of the application that you want to move.

2 Select **To Desktop**, and select the virtual desktop to which you want to move the application. You can move it to a particular desktop or all desktops.

You can also move an application in Desktop Pager by dragging and dropping the application window within Desktop Pager.

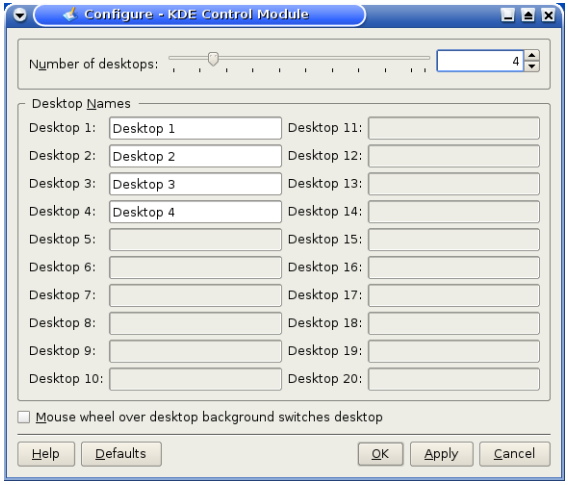
Changing the number and names of virtual desktops

Xandros Desktop lets you use up to 20 virtual desktops. Each virtual desktop has a default name that you can customize.

To change the number and names of virtual desktops

1 On the Panel, right-click a **Desktop** button and select **Configure Desktops**.

2 Move the slider to increase or decrease the number of virtual desktops.



Setting default virtual desktops

3 Type the name of the virtual desktop in the corresponding numbered box.

4 If you want to be able to switch from one desktop to another by moving the wheel on the mouse, enable the **Mouse wheel over desktop background switches desktop** check box. Then, when the mouse pointer is anywhere on the desktop, you can move the wheel to switch.

5 Click **OK** to exit from the window.

You can also set the number and names of virtual desktops in the Control Center (**General Settings** then **Desktop Behavior** and **Multiple Desktops**).

Refreshing the desktop

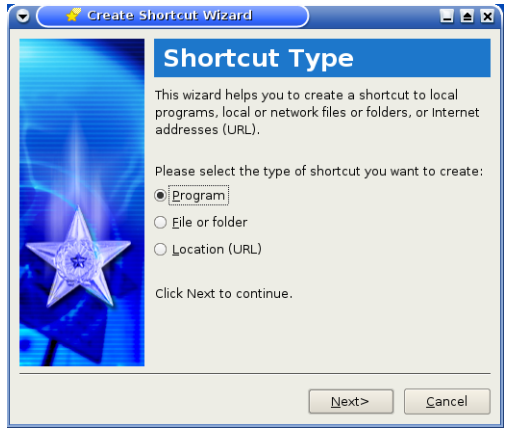
You can refresh the desktop to immediately view changes made to desktop settings.

To refresh the desktop

- Right-click the desktop, and select **Refresh Screen**.

Working with desktop shortcuts

Desktop shortcuts let you open folders, files, applications, Web, file transfer protocol (FTP), and other sites from the desktop. Some are loaded by default, such as the Trash icon on the desktop. A shortcut can be customized by changing its name or icon on the desktop. Other than the Trash bin, you can delete shortcuts no longer required.


Create Shortcut Wizard
Shortcut Type
This wizard helps you to create a shortcut to local programs, local or network files or folders, or Internet addresses (URL).
Please select the type of shortcut you want to create:
Program
File or folder
Location (URL)
Click Next to continue.
Next>
Cancel

Shortcut wizard

To create a desktop shortcut from the desktop

1. Right-click the desktop, and select **Create New ▶ Shortcut**.
2. In the shortcut wizard, select the type of shortcut you want to create, and click **Next**.
3. Select or type the name of the program, file, folder, or address for the shortcut, and click **Next**.
4. Type a name for the shortcut, and click **Finish**. The shortcut appears on the desktop.

To change a shortcut icon image

1. On the desktop, right-click the shortcut icon and select **Properties**.
2. Click the icon shown on the left side of the window.
3. Select an icon. Note that the icons available for selection change with the drop-down list. Click **OK** to exit from the window.
4. Click **OK**.

To arrange desktop shortcuts

- Right-click the desktop, select **Arrange Icons**, and select one of the following arrangement options. The default is to arrange icons alphabetically, except for the Trash icon.
  - **By Name (Case Sensitive)**
  - **By Name (Case Insensitive)**
  - **By Size** — Arranges the icons from smallest to largest (except Trash)
  - **By Type** — Arranges the icons based on type, such a file or application
  - **By Date** — Arranges the icons from oldest to newest (except Trash)
  - **Line Up Horizontally** — Arranges the icons alphabetically (except Trash) at the top of the screen
  - **Line Up Vertically** — Arranges the icons alphabetically (except Trash) on the left side of the screen (default)
  - **Align to Grid** — Spaces the icons in a boxed grid
  - **Folders First**

To delete a shortcut

- Drag the shortcut to the **Trash**, and confirm the move.

While deleting a desktop shortcut does not delete the application or file from the computer, because shortcuts and source files can be indistinguishable be careful that you do not delete the only copy of a file from the desktop.

You can also delete a shortcut icon by right-clicking the icon and selecting **Move to Trash**.

To change the size of desktop icons

1. Right-click on the desktop and select **Properties**.
2. Click **Icons**.
3. Click the **Advanced** tab.
4. Change the **Size**. This affects the desktop icons and their text.
5. Change any others by selecting from the list and changing the size.
6. Click **OK** to exit from the window.

Protecting your work

In a multi-user environment, you can lock the screen to ensure that no one accesses the computer when you leave it.

You can also protect your work by changing your login password on a regular basis.

You can also set permissions for folders and files on your computer to ensure that they are not accidentally changed or destroyed. For information about setting permissions, see “Assigning access privileges to files and folders” on page 117.

To encrypt user files, see “Adding, editing, and deleting user accounts” on page 110.

You can control outside access to the computer with the firewall. See “Using the firewall” on page 197.

You can minimize risk from viruses. See “Scanning and removing viruses” on page 130.

If security is not a concern, you can specify a user account to load automatically at startup without a password, bypassing the login window.

Locking the screen

When you lock the screen, Xandros Desktop blocks access to the desktop. You enter the appropriate password to unlock the screen and regain access to the desktop.

To lock the screen

- On the Panel, click the **Lock The Desktop** icon.

To unlock the screen

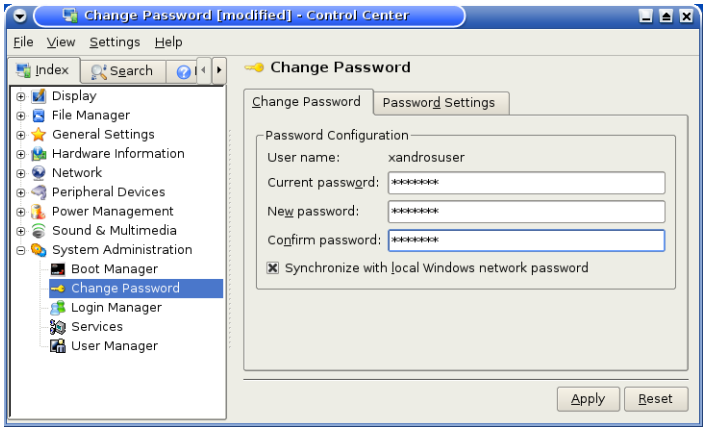
- In the unlock computer window, type the login password, and click **OK**.

If the screen is blank, press a key or move the mouse to display the login window.

You can also lock the screen after a specified period of inactivity with a screen saver. See “Setting a screen saver” on page 80.

Changing your user password

You can change the password that you use to log in to your Xandros Desktop system. If you are logged in as the Administrator, you can change the password for that account and user accounts. If you are logged in as a user, you are changing the password for that user account only.



Change Password panel to change a user account password

To change your password

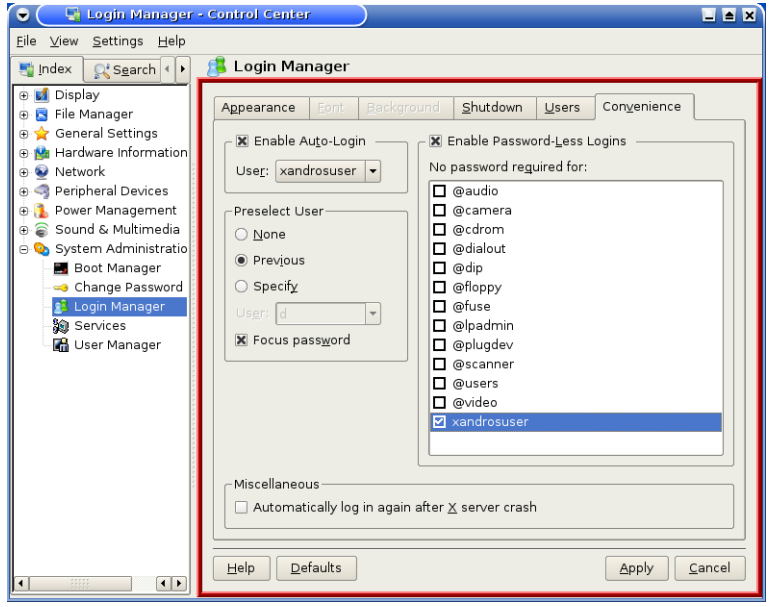
1. Click **Launch** ▶ **Control Center**.
2. Click **System Administration**, and click **Change Password**.
3. Type your current password in the **Current password** box.
4. Type a new password in the **New password** box.
5. Type the new password again in the **Confirm password** box.
6. If you joined or will join a Windows domain, you can use the new password on the domain by leaving the **Synchronize with local Windows network password** check box enabled.
7. Click **Apply**.

The Administrator can change the passwords for user accounts in the **User Manager** panel.

Under the **Password Settings** tab, with the **Timeout** specified, you will not be asked for a password for the length of time specified after you have given your password once.

Enabling automatic login

While Xandros recommends using a password to log in to your computer, it is possible to enable password-less login to a specific user account and to enable automatic login so that Xandros Desktop loads without stopping at the login window. It is not possible to apply these features to an Administrator account, and only the Administrator can set these options.



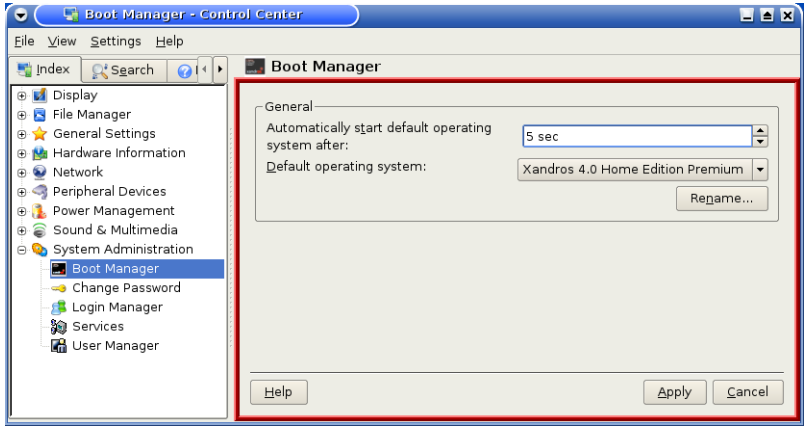
Login Manager panel to set login without password

To enable automatic login

1. Click **Launch** ▶ **Control Center**.
2. Click **System Administration**, then **Login Manager**.
3. Click **Administrator**, and enter the Administrator password.
4. Click the **Convenience** tab.
5. Enable the **Enable Auto-Login** check box, and select the **User** account to be loaded at startup.
6. Enable the **Enable Password-Less Logins** check box, and enable the check box for the user account that does not require a password at startup. Ignore the other options.
7. Click **Apply**.

Setting the default operating system

If you have more than one operating system installed on your computer, for example Windows and Xandros Desktop, you can specify the operating system to be launched at startup as well as the delay period to make a selection. This feature is called a Linux loader (LILO) or boot manager.



Boot Manager panel to set default operating system and reduce startup time

To set the default operating system

1. Click **Launch** ▶ **Control Center**.
2. Click **System Administration**, then **Boot Manager**.
3. Click **Administrator**, and enter the Administrator password.
4. If you want to change the interval during which you can manually select the operating system at startup, specify the time in the box. The default is 30 seconds; reduce this time to reduce startup time.
5. Select the **Default operating system** from the drop-down list.
6. To change the name that appears on startup, click **Rename**.
7. Click **Apply**.

Configuring Xandros Desktop

Configuring connections 4

You can connect to the Internet, set up e-mail accounts, and download updates and applications. You can manually change network settings, such as the IP addresses and Domain Name System (DNS) servers to use.

Configuring Internet connections

You can access the Internet several ways:

- Ethernet network connection
- Connection to a network server of an Internet service provider (ISP) by:
  - Telephone modem
  - Cable modem
  - Digital Subscriber Line (DSL) modem

If your computer is connected through Ethernet to a network with a Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) server, your computer is automatically configured by Xandros Desktop to access the network and the Internet.

Setting up a connection account

You can set up the following connections: cable, dial-up, DSL, local area network (LAN), wireless, and virtual private network (VPN).

If your computer is connected to a network without a DHCP server, you manually set your Internet protocol (IP) address and set up a connection account. You can set this connection to be initiated automatically at login.

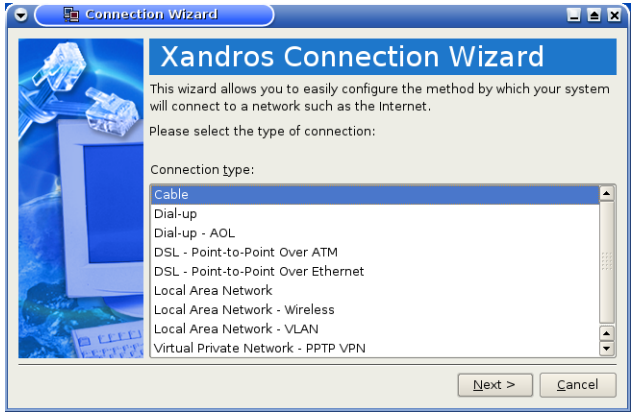
For a cable modem, you may or may not need to create a connection account. An Ethernet cable modem can be connected automatically at login, or you can create a connection account so that you manually initiate the connection.

If you use a telephone modem, DSL modem, or other connection method that you initiate manually, you need to set up a connection account.

The simplest way to determine if you need to set up a connection account is to launch a Web browser and try to access a Web site.

A connection account stores the information needed to initiate the connection. The stored information includes the name of your ISP, the method of connection (network, telephone, cable, or DSL), whether you use a static or dynamic IP address, and the IP addresses of the Domain Name System (DNS) and gateway server to use. The Connection Wizard helps you configure this information the first time, then the information is saved. Once you have configured a connection account, you are ready to connect to the Internet.

You create as many connection accounts as you need. When you have more than one ISP, you create a separate account for each one. When you use more than one method for connection, such as a telephone modem as well as a cable modem, you create an account for each type of connection.


Connection Wizard
Xandros Connection Wizard
This wizard allows you to easily configure the method by which your system will connect to a network such as the Internet.
Please select the type of connection:
Connection type:
Cable
Dial-up
Dial-up - AOL
DSL - Point-to-Point Over ATM
DSL - Point-to-Point Over Ethernet
Local Area Network
Local Area Network - Wireless
Local Area Network - VLAN
Virtual Private Network - PPTP VPN
Next >
Cancel

Connection Wizard to create connection account for Internet access

To set up a cable, LAN, or wireless connection account

1. Click **Launch** ▶ **Applications** ▶ **Internet** ▶ **Connection Wizard**. The Connection Wizard launches. You can also access the wizard from the **Network Connections** panel of the Control Center.
2. From the list, select the connection method:
   - **Cable** — To use a cable modem and a cable television line to connect to the Internet, for example with speeds from 64 Kbps to 6 Mbps
   - **Local Area Network** — To use a local area network (LAN) to connect to the Internet, for example using an Ethernet card

- **Local Area Network - Wireless** — To use a wireless card or wireless network adapter to connect to the Internet
- **Local Area Network - VLAN** — A virtual connection is a connection using a virtual network interface. It is a feature of Linux that allows a single network device to respond to multiple network settings, such as multiple IP addresses. Usually you have a device such as eth0 that is configured with a specific IP address. You can create a virtual interface eth0:1 on the same network card that has a different IP address.

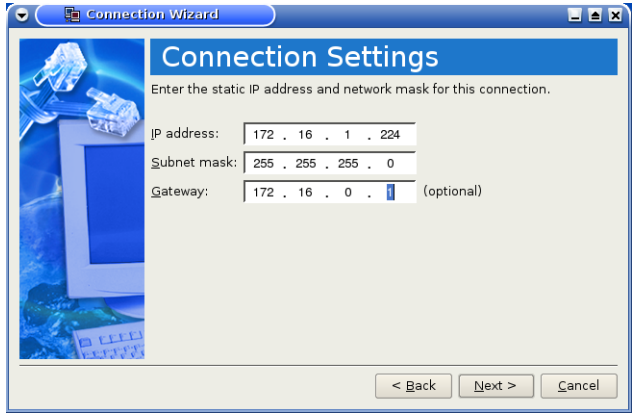
Click **Next**.

3 In the Select Hardware window, the equipment detected for your connection method is displayed. Select the hardware that you want to use to connect, then click **Next**.

4 In the Select Address Type window, specify if a **Static IP address** is to be used for the connection or if the IP address can change (**Dynamic IP address**). Normally, a dynamic IP address is fine for Internet connections.

Click **Next**.

5 If the Connection Settings window appears, provide the static IP address and related network addresses:


Connection Wizard
Connection Settings
Enter the static IP address and network mask for this connection.
IP address: 172 . 16 . 1 . 224
Subnet mask: 255 . 255 . 255 . 0
Gateway: 172 . 16 . 0 . 1 (optional)
< Back
Next >
Cancel

Setting a static IP address for an Internet connection

- **IP address** — The static IP address to use for the computer when it connects to the Internet
- **Subnet mask** — The subnetwork address of the computer, usually 255.255.255.0 or 255.255.0.0
- **Default gateway** — A gateway is a computer that connects networks to each other, for example within a corporation or at the ISP for a home user. Firewall servers and proxy servers are examples of gateways. A router is a gateway; if yours has an IP address, enter it here.

You can look up the addresses in the **Network Connections** panel of the Control Center.

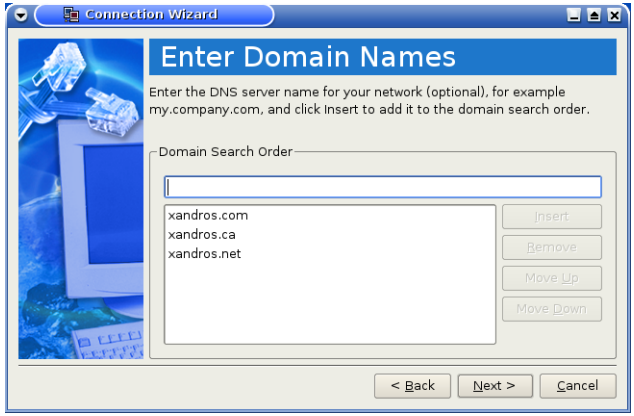
Click **Next**.

6 If the DNS Servers window appears and if your company has its own Domain Name System (DNS) server(s), provide the IP addresses of these servers. A DNS server translates character-based domain names, such as xandros.com, into numeric IP addresses so that computers can recognize them. When done, click **Next**.

7 If the Enter Domain Names window appears, type the computer name of the DNS server, then click **Add**. An example is newyork.xandros.com. You add multiple entries so that they appear in order of priority, for example, xandros.com, followed by newyork.xandros.com and xandros.ca

When you specify a host name, for example “myhost”, the networking software adds the domain “xandros.com” to it to create a fully qualified domain name, for example “myhost.xandros.com”. Using domain search order you can specify domains and the order that the networking software will try when looking up a host. For example, you specify in the **Domain Search Order** box the domains “xandros.com”, “xandros.ca”, and “xandros.net”. Typing “myhost” then causes the networking software to try automatically (without configuration or definition elsewhere) using the fully qualified names “myhost.xandros.com”, “myhost.xandros.ca”, and then “myhost.xandros.net” until it finds a match. This domain search will be done anywhere you type a host name, for example, if you enter http://myhost in a Web browser, run a shell command like “ping myhost”, or enter the host name in a mail program as the mail server name. This feature is provided because it is common in large corporate networks to use multiple domains.

When done, click **Next**.



Specifying domain names

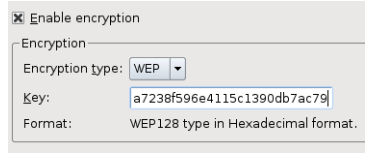
8 For a wireless connection, in the Wireless Network Settings window specify:

- **Network name (SSID)** — Unique name shared among a group of connected wireless adaptors and access points in a wireless network. It must be identical for all points in the network. It is case-sensitive and 32 characters or less. Obtain the name from the person or company that set up the access points, or click the **Browse Wireless Networks** button to view a list of wireless networks detected, which fills in all fields except encryption. An example of a network name is netgear100.
- **Mode**
  - **Auto** — Automatically detects the architecture of an existing wireless network. Default option.
  - **Ad-Hoc** — Used for a peer-to-peer network and allows the sharing of local resources only between wireless PCI cards without needing a wireless access point
  - **Infrastructure** — All communication is done through the access point, which relays packets (data) to other wireless clients as well as allowing the wireless network to be integrated into an existing, wired network through an access point. Managed networks permit roaming between access points while maintaining a connection to all network resources.
- **Transfer rate** — Leave it at **Auto** or select a specific rate for your device

Click **Next**.

9 For a wireless connection, in the Encryption Settings window enable the **Enable encryption** check box and set the defaults:

- **Encryption type**
  - **WEP**— Wired equivalent privacy (WEP) is an encryption standard
  - **WPA** — Highest level of encryption. Wireless protected access (WPA) is an authentication standard. It provides a higher level of security than WEP, which can be hacked. Your hardware and the access points must be WPA-compliant in order to use it, and you may be able to get an update from your card vendor. Higher encryption means higher levels of security, but it can decrease network performance.



Configuring a wireless connection

- **Key** — Values entered into these fields must be identical to the encryption key values used on the other wireless devices in the network. Obtain keys from the person or company that set up the access points. If your wireless network is in your home only, you can create the values and use them with the router and all wireless cards. An example of a key is Cjet101am50.

When you enter the key, the format is displayed. Examples include:

WEP 40/64 bit — Lower level of encryption. This option uses a 40-bit (5 ASCII or 10 hex characters) secret key (set by the user) and a 24-bit initialization vector (not set by the user).

WEP 128 bit — Higher level of encryption using a 104-bit (13 ASCII or 26 hex characters) secret key (set by the user), and a 24-bit initialization vector (not set by the user).

WPA 256 bit — Highest level of encryption. It provides a higher level of security than WEP. Similarly, 256-bit encryption provides better security than 128-bit.

A **Hexadecimal** format refers to numbers 0 to 9 and the letters a to f. An **ASCII** format refers to alpha-numeric characters.

Click **Next**.

10 In the Connection Name window, type a name for the connection, such as Office LAN or Cable Internet.

11 In the Finish window, to initiate the connection each time the computer starts up, enable the **Connect automatically at system startup** check box. To connect after you finish the wizard, enabled the **Start this connection when finished** check box.

Click **Finish** to create the connection account.

12 Create a connection account for each type of connection that you will use, for example, one account for a dial-up connection and another account for a cable modem.

To set up a DSL connection account

1 Click **Launch ▶ Applications ▶ Internet ▶ Connection Wizard**. The Connection Wizard launches.

2 From the list, select the connection method:

- **DSL - Point-to-Point Over ATM** — To use a Digital Subscriber Line (DSL) modem and a telephone line to connect to the Internet, for example with speeds from 128 Kbps to 4 Mbps. Used by Sympatico and many European providers. Protocol for Alcatel SpeedTouch modem.
- **DSL - Point-to-Point Over Ethernet** — To use a DSL modem and a telephone line to connect to the Internet. When there are multiple users, they share the one connection.

Click **Next**.

3 If the Select Hardware window appears, the equipment detected for your connection method is displayed. Select the hardware that you want to use to connect.

If the Enter VCI and VPI Information window appears, enter these values. VCI is Virtual channel identifier. VPI is Virtual path identifier. When using DSL over ATM you need set these to the values given to you by your ISP.

Click **Next**.

4 In the Login Settings window, provide the user name and password used to connect by DSL.

Click **Next**.

5 In the Connection Name window, type a name for the connection.

Click **Next**.

6 In the Finish window, to initiate the connection each time the computer starts up, enable the **Connect automatically at system startup** check box. To connect after you finish the wizard, enable the **Start this connection when finished** check box.

Click **Finish** to create the connection account.

7 Create a connection account for each type of connection that you will use, for example, one account for a dial-up connection and another account for a cable modem.

To set up a dial-up connection account

1 Click **Launch** ▶ **Applications** ▶ **Internet** ▶ **Connection Wizard**. The Connection Wizard launches.

2 From the list, select the connection method:

- **Dial-up** — To use a telephone line and modem to connect to the Internet, typically with speeds up to 56 Kbps
- **Dial-up - AOL** — To use a telephone line and modem to connect to the Internet when your ISP is America Online (AOL)

Click **Next**.

3 In the Select Hardware window, the equipment detected for your connection method is displayed. Select the hardware that you want to use to connect, then click **Next**.

4 In the Dialing Settings window, type the **Phone number** of the ISP server. If you need to dial another number to access an outside line, such as dialing 9, type it in the **Dialing prefix** box. If you need to add an extension after the ISP phone number, type it in the **Dialing suffix** box. When a pause is required when dialing, add one or more commas, for example specify 9,,723-1577. Click **Next**.

5 In the Login Settings window, provide the account name and password of the user who will use the dial-up access. Then click **Next**.

6 In the Connection Name window, type a name for the connection account, for example Dial-up Sympatico or AOL Dial-up. Click **Next**.

7 In the Finish window, to initiate the connection each time the computer starts up, enable the **Connect automatically at system startup** check box. To connect after you finish the wizard, enable the **Start this connection when finished** check box.

Click **Finish** to create the connection account.

To set up a VPN connection account

1 Click **Launch ▶ Applications ▶ Internet ▶ Connection Wizard**. The Connection Wizard launches.

2 From the list, select the connection method:

- **Virtual Private Network - PPTP VPN** — To connect to the network remotely, for example from a home computer to the office network. PPTP refers to the Point-to-Point Tunnelling Protocol. This option is not available for all editions.

Click **Next**.

3 In the Select Connection window, specify the connection to use for VPN. For example, you may have one connection account for DSL in order to access the office computer and another connection account for personal dial-up access. Click **Next**.

4 In the Server Settings window, type the name of the VPN server to connect to in the **Host name** box, for example newyork.yourcompany.com, which is the VPN server at the office. Or type the **IP address** of the VPN server. Click **Next**.

5 In the Enter WINS Settings window, if you have a Windows Internet Name Service (WINS) server, type its IP address, then click **Next**. A WINS server maps computer names to IP addresses so that computers can recognize them. If your computer is set to act as a WINS server, you do not need to specify the WINS server IP address because Xandros automatically detects it. For VPN purposes, if you want to use names when doing Windows networking so as to avoid using IP addresses only, you can enter the WINS server address here.

6 In the Login Settings window, provide the account name and password of the user who will use the VPN access. Then click **Next**.

7 In the Connection Name window, type a name for the connection account, for example Work VPN. Click **Next**.

8 In the Finish window, to initiate the connection each time the computer starts up, enable the **Connect automatically at system startup** check box. To connect after you finish the wizard, enable the **Start this connection when finished** check box.

Click **Finish** to create the connection account.

Setting up an e-mail account

Electronic mail (e-mail) applications provided with Xandros Desktop can include Thunderbird Mail and KDE Mail. An e-mail account needs to be configured before you can send or receive e-mail. Configure and/or use KDE Mail instead if you will use the Personal Information Manager or the Organizer to send e-mail notification of a meeting to attendees, for example.

You need to know the following information, which can be obtained from your ISP or Administrator:

- Your user name, for example jane or b1jr2q, and your password
- Your e-mail address, for example jane@xandros.com
- The types of incoming and outgoing mail servers, such as POP or IMAP for incoming mail
- The names of the incoming and outgoing mail servers, for example pop3.company.com, smtp.company.com, or mail.example.net

If the computer is on a network with a Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) server, you can also enable Thunderbird Mail to use the LDAP service whereby address entries are automatically filled in when you start typing in the **To** field of an e-mail message.

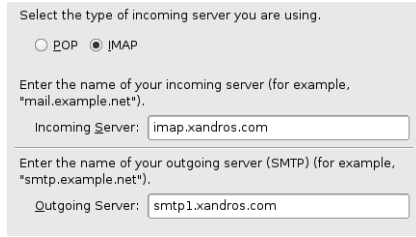
To set up an e-mail account for Thunderbird Mail

1. Click **Launch** ▶ **Applications** ▶ **Internet** ▶ **Thunderbird Mail**.
2. You are prompted if you want to import settings and mail from other applications. Enable an option, for example **Don't import anything**, and click **Next**. An Account Wizard is launched to allow you to set up a new e-mail account. You can also add an account in Thunderbird Mail by clicking **Edit** ▶ **Account Settings**, then **Add Account**.
3. In the Account Wizard, with the **Email account** option enabled, click **Next**.
4. In the Identity window, complete the boxes:
   - **Your Name** — Type the name that you want to appear when you send an e-mail
   - **Email Address** — Type your e-mail address, for example, jane@xandros.com. This address is provided by your ISP.

   Click **Next**.
5. For incoming e-mail, select the server type: **POP** or **IMAP**. Type the address of the incoming mail server, for example pop3.company.com or imap.company.com. This information is provided by your ISP.

   Type the address of the outgoing mail server, for example smtp2.company.com.

   Click **Next**.


Select the type of incoming server you are using.
POP
IMAP
Enter the name of your incoming server (for example, "mail.example.net").
Incoming Server:
imap.xandros.com
Enter the name of your outgoing server (SMTP) (for example, "smtp.example.net").
Outgoing Server:
smtp1.xandros.com

Configuring mail servers in Thunderbird Mail

6 In the User Names window, type your user name in both boxes, for example jane when your e-mail address is jane@xandros.com. This user name is provided by your ISP. Click **Next**.

7 In the Account Name window, type a name for the e-mail account as it will appear in Thunderbird Mail, for example your name, then click **Next**.

8 Click **Finish**. You are prompted if you want to set Thunderbird Mail as the default e-mail application. You may then be prompted to enter your password to access the incoming and outgoing mail servers.

You can download and install Thunderbird Mail in more than 25 languages from www.mozilla.com.

To set LDAP services in Thunderbird Mail

1 In Thunderbird Mail, select **Edit ▶ Account Settings**. The Account Settings window opens.

2 Click **Composition & Addressing**.

3 Enable the **Use a different LDAP server** option, and click **Edit Directories**. The LDAP Directory Servers window opens.

4 Click **Add**. The Directory Server Properties window opens.

5 Set the following (example provided):

Name: Xandros LDAP
Hostname: smtp1
Base DN: ou=People, o=xandros

Another entry for the base distinguished name (DN) can be c=JP, for example, to include entries for Japan only.

6 Click **OK**. The Directory Server Properties window closes. Click **OK** again to exit from the window.

7 Select your LDAP server from the drop-down list and click **OK**. The LDAP Directory Servers window closes.

8 Click **OK**. The Account Settings window closes.

To set up an e-mail account for KDE Mail

1 Click **Launch** ▶ **Applications** ▶ **Internet** ▶ **KDE Mail**.

2 Click **Settings** ▶ **Configure KMail**.

3 Select the Default mail account and click **Modify** or click **Add**.

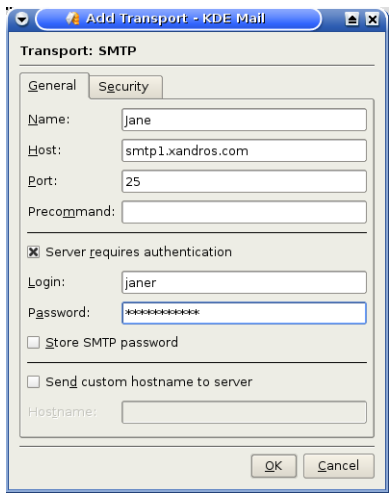
4 In the **Edit Identity** window, complete the boxes:

- **Your name** — Type the name that you want to appear when you send an e-mail
- **Organization** — Type the name of your company (optional)
- **Email address** — Type your e-mail address, for example, jane@xandros.com. This address is provided by your ISP.

Click **OK** to exit from the window.

5 Click the **Accounts** icon and add the send and receive server information:

- In the **Receiving** tab, click **Add**, select the account type, such as POP3 or IMAP, then click **OK** to exit from the window, then enter the **Account name**, **Login** name, **Password**, and **Host** address. The name is what appears as the mail account in the KDE Mail window, for example Jane. The host address is also provided by your ISP, an example of which is imap.yourcompany.com. Click **OK** to exit from the window.
- In the **Sending** tab, click **Add**, select the type of server, click **OK**. For SMTP, enter the login name and server address in the **Name** and **Host** boxes. The server address is provided by your ISP. An example is smtp2.xandros.com. For SMTP, if a password is required to send e-mail, enable the **Server requires authentication** check box and provide the information. Click **OK** to exit from the window.



Setting SMTP server defaults

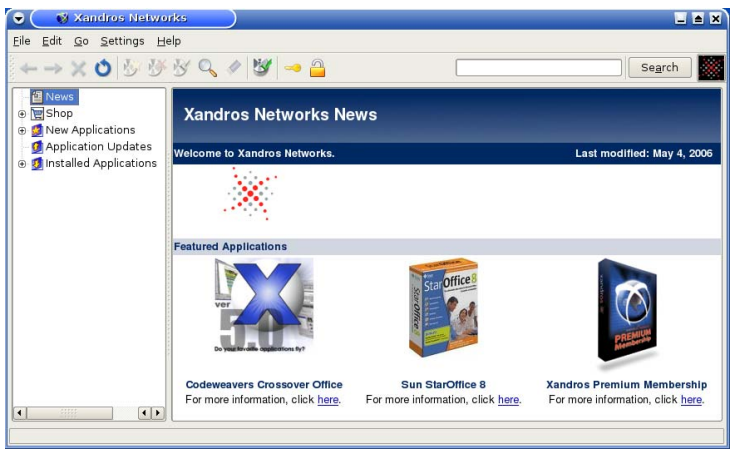
6 After setting up the send and receive server information, click **OK** to exit from KDE Mail configuration.

7 Expand your mailbox entry on the left side of the window, and click **inbox** to view your mail. If the connection does not work, check the port numbers entered for the send and receive servers. When sending mail and you get an error message about the SMTP authentication, it means you need to configure the **Security** tab, for example change it to **SSL** and **PLAIN** in order to log in to the SMTP server when sending mail. Also, you can see an error message even though the first e-mail was sent successfully, so try sending a second e-mail to test if the application works.

KDE Mail

Downloading updates and applications

In addition to the software provided during installation, updates and applications for use with Xandros Desktop can be downloaded from Xandros Networks. Xandros Networks is an application that accesses a server so that you can install updates and applications and delete applications. Normally, Xandros Networks accesses a Xandros server over the Internet. If your computer is being managed by Xandros Deployment Management Server (xDMS), Xandros Networks accesses your xDMS computer and for the Shop section accesses a Xandros server.



Xandros Networks for installing, updating, removing, and listing applications

As a minimum, Xandros recommends installing the updates because they include critical patches and security updates.

An applet resides on the Panel that indicates when updates are available in Xandros Networks. Depending on your setup, it checks automatically at login then hourly, daily, or weekly. A green check mark indicates that the computer is up-to-date. A red exclamation mark indicates that updates are available. For computers managed by xDMS, it can also indicate that your system administrator is performing updates. Use is outlined here.

Xandros update indicator

When using a proxy server, configuration can be required for use with Xandros Networks, as outlined here.

To install updates and applications

1. While connected to the Internet, click **Launch** ▶ **Xandros Networks**, or double-click the **Xandros Networks** icon on the desktop. Wait for the database to load.
2. Click **Application Updates**, clicking on + to expand the list, to select the updates. Or click **File** ▶ **Install All Latest Updates from Xandros** to get all updates.
3. Install the updates that you require, entering the Administrator password when prompted.
4. Click **New Applications**, clicking on + to expand the list.
5. Install the applications that you want, entering the Administrator password if prompted. When the product is not already registered, you are prompted to do so.
6. Now that Xandros Desktop and the updates and applications have been installed, take a few minutes to browse through the **Installed Applications** folder, which provides descriptions of the software installed.
7. Click **File** ▶ **Quit** to exit Xandros Networks.
8. Normally new applications are automatically available from the **Applications** menu immediately after downloading, however, log out then in to ensure that the changes take effect.
9. If you downloaded any applications that need to be configured, do so now.
10. If you need to add any applications to the Applications menu, see “To add a Launch menu item” on page 86.

To download updates from the Panel

1. When connected to the Internet, click the Xandros update icon on the Panel. The system checks if updates are available for the computer and indicates when there are. Click **Yes** to launch Xandros Networks and install the updates.
2. The computer checks for updates at login by default. To change the frequency, for example to hourly or weekly, right-click the icon on the Panel and select **Configure Xandros Update**.

Configuring proxy server settings for Xandros Networks and Internet

If you use a proxy server that requires a password when connecting to external networks, such as to the Internet or Xandros Networks, and you are required to log in each time you access the Internet, you may need to configure the proxy settings so that files download properly and to avoid logging in each time. After installing Xandros Desktop and configuring your Internet connection, follow the procedure outlined here.

To configure proxy settings

1. Click **Launch** ▶ **Control Center**.
2. Click **File Manager**, then **Web Browser**, then **Proxy**.
3. Enable the **Manually specify the proxy settings** check box.
4. Click the associated **Setup** button.
5. In the **HTTP** box, type `http://` followed by your user name, a colon, your password, the @ symbol, and the IP address or host name of the proxy server. An example of the format is http://username:password@172.27.6.3
6. Click **OK** to exit from the window.
7. Click **Apply**.

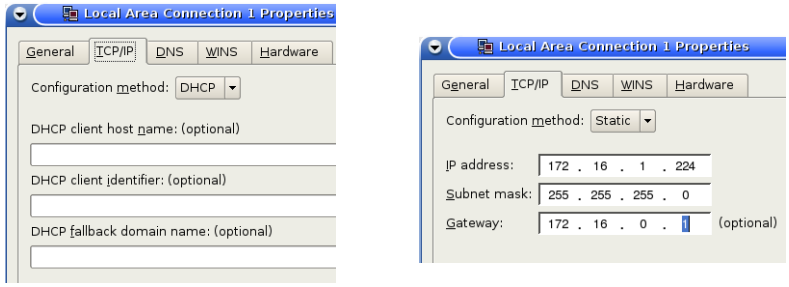
Modifying IP addresses and network connections

During installation, a static IP address or DHCP was specified. You can manually change these settings in the Control Center.

You can also specify a Domain Name System (DNS) server to use. A DNS server translates Internet domain names into IP addresses so that computers recognize them. For example, it allows a user to enter www.xandros.com instead of an IP address. When you are using a computer at home, you normally use the DNS servers of your ISP and do not need to specify them.

To determine if DHCP is being used

1. Click **Launch** ▶ **Control Center**.
2. Click **Network**, and click **Network Connections**.
3. Click **Administrator** and enter the Administrator password.
4. Select the network connection from the list.
5. Click **Properties**.
6. Click the **TCP/IP** tab. When DHCP is being used, it is selected in the drop-down list. When DHCP is not being used, you can manually input your network IP settings using the following procedure.



Network Connections panel for viewing and setting network addresses

To specify IP addresses

1. Click **Launch** ▶ **Control Center**.
2. Click **Network**, and click **Network Connections**.
3. Click **Administrator** and enter the Administrator password.
4. Select the network connection from the list.
5. Click **Properties**.
6. Click the **TCP/IP** tab.
7. Select **Static** from the drop-down list and provide the following IP addresses. You can obtain these values from your system administrator, ISP, by entering `/sbin/ifconfig` in a Linux console window, or by entering `ipconfig /all` in a Windows command window.

- **IP address —** The static IP address to use for the computer when it connects to the Internet
- **Subnet mask** — The subnetwork address of the computer, usually 255.255.255.0 or 255.255.0.0
- **Gateway** — A gateway is a computer that connects networks to each other, for example within a corporation or at the ISP for a home user. Firewall servers and proxy servers are examples of gateways. A router is a gateway; if yours has an IP address, enter it here.

8 Click **OK** to exit from the panel. You are prompted to restart the connection.

To set a DNS server

1 Click **Launch ▶ Control Center**.

2 Click **Network**, and click **Network Connections**.

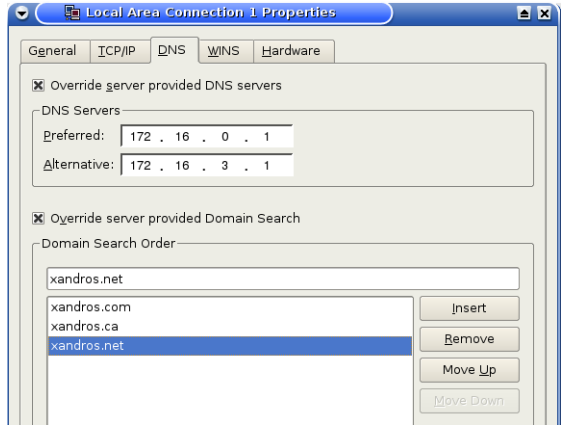
3 Click **Administrator** and enter the Administrator password.

4 Select the network connection from the list.

5 Click **Properties**.

6 Click the **DNS** tab.

7 To specify the address of a DNS server, either enable the **Override server provided DNS servers** check box (viewable when DHCP used) and enter the IP addresses. Obtain them from your network administrator. When using DHCP, the addresses are usually supplied by the DHCP server and you do not need to specify them here.



DNS tab in Network Connection panel to set domain search order

8 You have the option to specify domains. The DNS servers and domain settings are independent of each other. You can fill in any or all of them. The domains may or may not be needed.

To specify domains, click the **Override server provided Domain Search** box, type the name, and click **Insert**. You can add, remove, and prioritize servers for domain searching purposes in the **Domain Search Order** area.

When you specify a domain (not the same as the Windows domain), the first one listed is the primary domain.

You can add other domains. For example, the domain can be "xandros.com". When you specify a host name, for example "myhost", the networking software adds the domain "xandros.com" to it to create a fully qualified domain name, for example "myhost.xandros.com". Using domain search order you can specify domains and the order that the networking software will try when looking up a host. For example, you specify the domains "xandros.com", "xandros.ca", and "xandros.net". Typing "myhost" then causes the networking software to try automatically (without configuration or definition elsewhere) using the fully qualified names "myhost.xandros.com", "myhost.xandros.ca", and then "myhost.xandros.net" until it finds a match. This domain search will be done anywhere you type a host name, for example, if you enter http://myhost in a Web browser, run a shell command like "ping myhost", or enter the host name in a mail program as the mail server name. This feature is provided because it is common in large corporate networks to use multiple domains.

9 Click **OK** to exit from the panel. You are prompted to restart the connection.

Customizing Xandros Desktop settings 5

Xandros Desktop offers options to personalize your desktop environment. The “Using the desktop” chapter introduced you to the desktop. This chapter explores options you can use to customize various elements, including the desktop, Launch menu, windows, mouse settings, keyboard shortcuts and language, spell checkers, video and sound settings, multimedia input, and applications launched at startup and by default.

Customizing desktop settings

Xandros Desktop lets you customize the display and behavior of the desktop, including:

- Change the background wallpaper
- Change window color schemes and themes
- Display items in styles similar to Windows or Macintosh OS
- Change fonts and font sizes displayed, as well as icons
- Modify the screen saver
- Increase accessibility
- Set the date and time of the clock, and change the time zone setting
- Set desktop mouse button action

Applying a desktop background

You can apply background colors and images to each virtual desktop, and also apply effects to these colors and images.

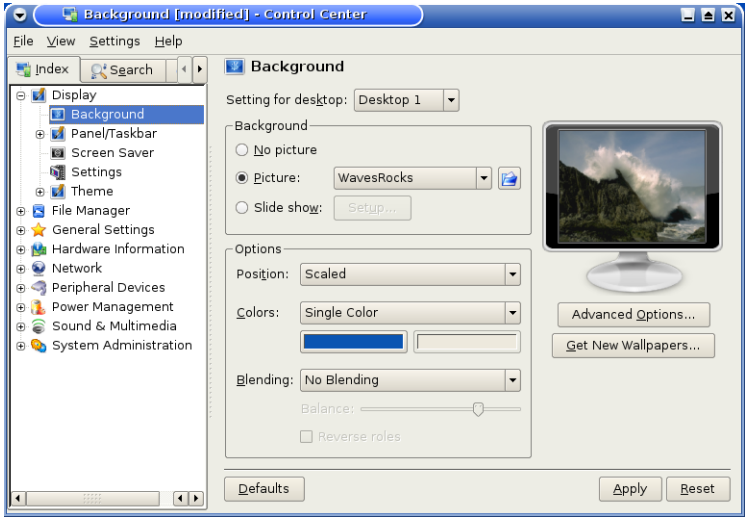
You can change the login splash window in the **Splash Screen** panel of the **Control Center**.

To change the desktop background

1 To use your own wallpaper, you have the option of adding it to the default folder of **/usr/share/wallpapers** as Administrator. (This step is not required; you can access your file from another location.)

2 Click **Launch** ▶ **Control Center**.

3 Click **Display**, then **Background**.



Background panel for changing the desktop wallpaper

4 From the **Setting for desktop** drop-down list, select the desktop for which you want the new background. You can apply the same background to all virtual desktops by selecting the **All Desktops** option.

5 To use a color only, enable the **No picture** option and select the **Colors**, from both the drop-down list and the colored button. You can select colors from a palette, create a custom color, or create a custom color by sampling an existing color.

To change the picture, such as to your own wallpaper, select it from the **Picture** drop-down list or click the **Open file dialog** (file folder) icon and navigate to the file. You can set further effects by changing the **Position**, for example, **Center Maxpect** so that the image is duplicated to fill the desktop.

To have the background change at a timed interval, enable the **Slide show** option, click **Setup**, and set the interval and pictures to use.

To combine color use with an image, use the **Picture** or **Slide show** option, the **Colors** option, and **Blending**. See the online help for descriptions of the Blending options.

6 Click **Apply**.

To restore the default values, click **Defaults**, then **Apply**.

To change font colors on the desktop, click **Launch** ▶ **Control Center**, then **Display**, then **Background**, and **Advanced Options**.

You can download more wallpapers from Xandros Networks. Look under the **KDE3 Supplemental** category.

You can change the login splash window in the **Splash Screen** panel of the **Control Center**.

Applying window color schemes

Applying a window color scheme customizes the color of window items, such as the title bar, menu text, text in the title bar of an active window, or the window background. You can apply a preset color scheme or create a new one from an existing one by changing the colors of individual elements. You can also adjust the color contrast for a scheme.

The default scheme is Xandros.

There are two options to create a new scheme. The easiest way is to modify an existing scheme in the Control Center, then click **Save Scheme** and rename it (outlined here). Or you can modify an existing scheme by modifying its .kcsrc file as Administrator in Text Editor and saving with another name.

To apply a color scheme

1 Click **Launch** ▶ **Control Center**.

2 Click **Display**, then **Theme**, then **Colors**.

3 Select a color scheme from the **Color Scheme** list box. The scheme is previewed at the top of the window.

4 To change the color of an individual element, select it from the **Widget Color** drop-down list, click the colored box, and change the color.

5 If you want to save your changes as a new color scheme, click **Save Scheme**.

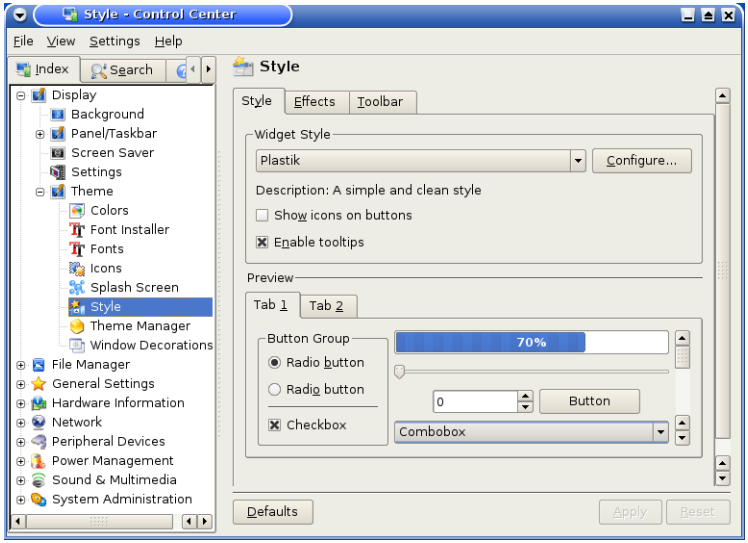
6 Click **Apply**.

You can also import a color scheme from another source by clicking **Import Scheme**. These files are .kcsrc files.

Applying a window theme

Applying a window decoration theme customizes the appearance of multiple parts of a window, such as buttons, progress windows, and window borders. Several preset themes are included from which you can choose and customize.

There are two panels in the Control Center to set a window theme: Style and Window Decorations. The default for the former is Plastik and Keramik for the latter.



Style panel for setting window display

To apply a window theme using the Style panel

1. Click **Launch** ▶ **Control Center**.
2. Click **Display**, then **Theme**, then **Style**.
3. Select a style from the **Widget Style** drop-down list. The scheme is previewed at the bottom of the window.
4. Click **Apply**.

To apply a window theme using the Window Decorations panel

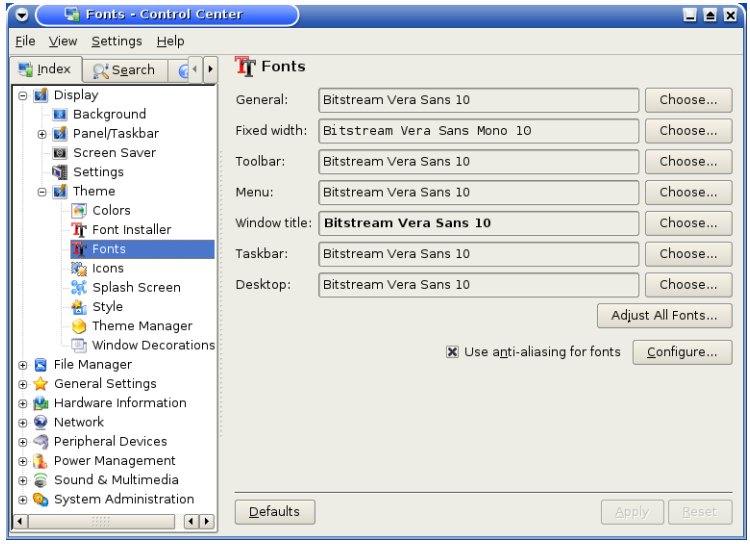
1. Click **Launch** ▶ **Control Center**.
2. Click **Display**, then **Theme**, then **Window Decorations**.
3. Select a style from the **Window Decoration** drop-down list. The scheme is previewed and options may be available for selection.
4. Click **Apply**.

Setting desktop style to Windows or Macintosh

When you are migrating from a Windows or Macintosh OS environment to Xandros Desktop (without using the Versora product), you can display window items in that style. Color settings can also be applied to the windows of third-party applications. The quickest way to apply such settings is to run through the First Run Wizard. Click **Applications ▶ System ▶ First Run Wizard**, then change the System Behavior window. You can change the login splash window in the **Splash Screen** panel of the **Control Center**.

Setting fonts and sizes

You can change the fonts displayed by Xandros Desktop and the sizes. Changes can be specific to elements, such as the desktop, or global, such as tool bar and desktop text. Anti-aliasing is applied by default to fonts, which smooths out the fonts; you may want to experiment with this feature, as it may work better on larger fonts.



Fonts panel for configuring font type and size

To change fonts and sizes

1. Click **Launch ▶ Control Center**.
2. Click **Display**, then **Theme**, then **Fonts**.
3. Click **Choose** to change a specific element or **Adjust All Fonts** to make global changes, then select the font, style, and size for the elements that you want changed. Sans serif fonts, such as Helvetica, are recommended for on-screen viewing. The fonts that can be changed are:
   - **General** — Text within Control Center window, for example

- **Fixed width** — Not used by many applications; an example is KHexEdit, which also requires configuration to use the system font
- **Toolbar** — Text with icons on tool bar, when set to display tool bar text
- **Menu** — Text of menu bar items and Launch menu items
- **Window title** — Text at top of open window
- **Taskbar** — Text in Panel taskbar
- **Desktop** — Desktop icon text

Click **OK** to exit from the window.

4 Click **Apply**.

To change font colors on the desktop, click **Launch** ▶ **Control Center**, then **Display**, then **Background**, and **Advanced Options**.

Setting icon properties

Icon properties can be changed. For example, the color and size of an active icon can be set.

To change an icon display

1 Click **Launch** ▶ **Control Center**.

2 Click **Display**, then **Theme**, then **Icons**.

3 Click the **Advanced** tab.

4 Select the icon in the **Use of Icon** list.

5 Change the **Size**, **Animate icons**, and so on. See the online help for information on the various effects.

6 Click **Apply**.

To change font colors on the desktop, click **Launch** ▶ **Control Center**, then **Display**, then **Background**, and **Advanced Options**.

To download more icon themes

- In Xandros Networks, look in the **KDE3 Supplemental** category.

Setting a screen saver

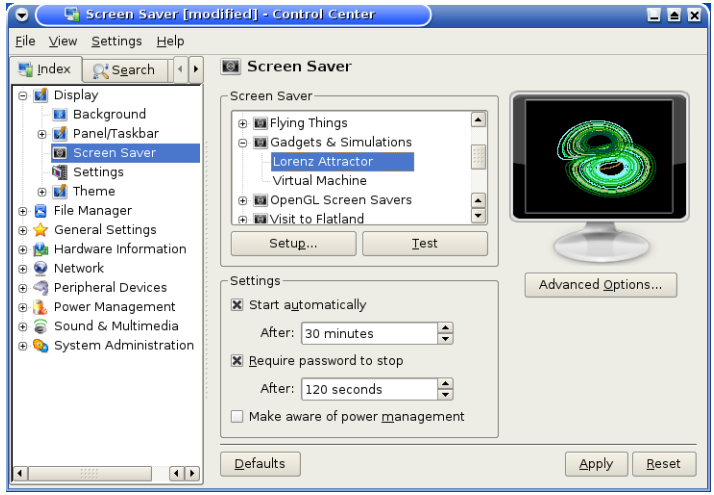
A screen saver covers the desktop when you are not using the computer. By default, a Xandros screen saver appears after five minutes of inactivity. Each screen saver has different setup options, for example some let you customize the colors that appear in the screen saver, while others let you change the speed at which an image moves on the desktop.

Several options are available. You can set the time required before the screen saver is invoked, require password reentry, use your own screen saver, or

disable use. You can also set the priority of the screen saver in relation to other processes running on the system. For example, setting a high priority for the screen saver causes the screen saver to become active instead of a lower priority process when there is only enough memory to run one process.

To set a screen saver

1. To add your own screen saver file, log in as Administrator and place it in **/usr/share/xscreensaver/config** as a .xml file, then add a .desktop file for the screen saver in **/usr/share/applnk/System/ScreenSavers**.
2. Click **Launch** ▶ **Control Center**.
3. Click **Display**, then **Screen Saver**.
4. Select a screen saver from the **Screen Saver** list.



Screen Saver panel for disabling, changing, and timing screen saver

5. Click **Setup** to change the settings (if applicable), then click **OK** to exit from that window.
6. Change the **Start automatically** time after which the screen saver starts.
7. To require a password for access to the desktop, enable the **Require password to stop** check box. The time specified in the box is the delay before the password is required after the screen saver is activated.
8. Enable the **Make aware of power management** check box if you do not want the screen saver to start while you watch television or movies on your monitor.
9. Click **Apply**.

To set the screen saver priority level

1. Follow steps 1 and 3 of the previous procedure.
2. Click **Advanced Options**.

3 Select an option from the **Screensaver Priority** drop-down list. If your screen saver is unstable, increase its priority so that more resources are used for it.

4 Click **OK** to exit from the window.

5 Click **Apply**.

To return to the desktop when a screen saver is active

- Move your mouse or pointing device.

Setting accessibility

Lowering screen resolution is the easiest way to increase the size of all desktop elements, such as icons, Panel, and fonts.

Bell, keyboard, mouse, window, Panel, Launch menu, and desktop icon defaults can be changed to increase accessibility. For example, visual and/or audible bells can be used, and the screen can be set to flash on and off.

To change keyboard repeat speed, shortcut keys, and keyboard language maps, see "Customizing keyboard settings, shortcuts, and language maps" on page 93.

To increase the size of tool bar icons in an application, see "To set icon size on tool bar" on page 45.

To increase the size of fonts in windows, on the Panel, on the desktop, and in the Launch menu, see "To change fonts and sizes" on page 79.

To increase the size of the Panel, see "To size the Panel" on page 37.

To increase the size of desktop icons, see "To change the size of desktop icons" on page 50.

To increase size of elements

1 Click **Launch** ▶ **Control Center**.

2 Click **Display**, then **Settings**.

3 Drag the **Screen Size** slider to the left, for example half way.

4 Click **Apply**, and restart the computer when prompted.

To set accessibility options

1 Click **Launch** ▶ **Control Center**.

2 Click **General Settings**, then **Desktop Behavior**, then **Accessibility**.

3 Change the bell settings.

4 Click the **Keyboard** tab.

5 Enable the required settings:

- **Sticky Keys** — When enabled, key combinations can be typed in succession, not simultaneously. For example, **Ctrl+Alt+Del** is typed as the **Ctrl** then **Alt** then **Del** keys. When the **Lock sticky keys** option is enabled, an individual key remains selected until the user deselects it.
- **Slow Keys** — When enabled, you must hold down a key for a specified period of time before the key is accepted
- **Bounce Keys** — When enabled, you must wait a specified period of time before the next key stroke is accepted

6 Click **Apply**.

You can also use the numeric pad to move the mouse cursor. Set it in the **Mouse Navigation** tab in the **Mouse** panel.

Setting the date and time

You can set the date, time, and time zone for the computer. You can synchronize the time with a server.

To set the date

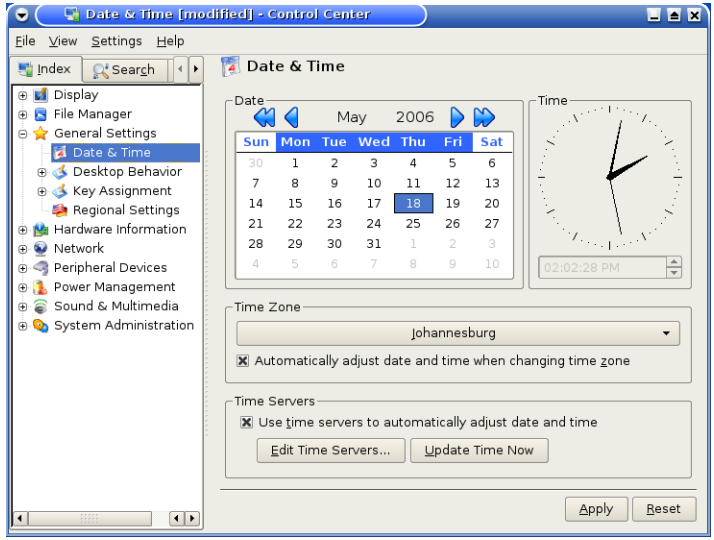
1 Click **Launch** ▶ **Control Center**.

2 Click **General Settings**, then **Date & Time**.

3 Click the arrows to scroll to the correct month. The single arrow is for month. The double arrow is for year.

4 Click the appropriate day in the calendar.

5 Click **Apply**.



Date & Time panel for setting time zone and synchronizing the clock with a server

To set the time

1. Click **Launch** ▶ **Control Center**.
2. Click **General Settings**, then **Date & Time**.
3. Position the cursor in the time box below the dial clock to change the hour, minutes, seconds, or AM or PM, then change the time. The box is accessible when the time server option is disabled.

   Or, to synchronize the system clock with a server and keep it up to date, enable the **Use time servers to automatically adjust date and time** check box.
4. Click **Apply**.

You can also set the time by clicking the clock on the Panel.

To set the time zone

1. Click **Launch** ▶ **Control Center**.
2. Click **General Settings**, and click **Date & Time**.
3. From the **Time Zone** drop-down list, select your time zone.
4. Enable the **Automatically adjust date and time when changing time zone** check box if you want to adjust the time and calendar displays to reflect your region and time zone.
5. Click **Apply**.

You can also set the time zone by clicking the clock on the Panel.

To set the time server

1. With the **Use time servers to automatically adjust date and time** check box enabled, click **Edit Time Servers**.
2. In the empty box, type the address of the server to use, and click **Add**. You can view a list of public time servers at **http://ntp.isc.org/bin/view/Servers/NTPPoolServers**, where you will note that the default pool.ntp.org time server is a pool of over 100 time servers world-wide. You can use a server in your country or region from this list.

   The IP address of 127.127.1.0 is so that the local computer is used as a backup when it cannot reach a time server.
3. To delete a time server from the list, select it and click **Delete**.
4. Click **OK** to exit from the window.
5. To update the time with the modified server list, click **Update Time Now**. It can take several minutes for the time to be updated.
6. Click **Apply**.

Setting desktop and taskbar mouse button action

You can set the action taken when left, middle, and right mouse buttons are pressed on the desktop and taskbar. For example, clicking the right mouse button on the desktop can display a window list menu that allows you to choose between desktops, or it displays a desktop menu that allows you to create shortcuts and arrange icons and windows. Additional mouse button action can be set for windows, acceleration, and mapping; see "Setting window mouse button action" on page 90.

To set desktop mouse button action

1 Click **Launch** ▶ **Control Center**.

2 Click **General Settings**, then **Desktop Behavior**, then **Desktop**.

3 Change the settings in the **Left button**, **Middle button**, and **Right button** list boxes to one of the following options:

- **No Action** — No mouse action (default for left mouse button)
- **Window List Menu** — To arrange windows, select an open application, or a virtual desktop (default for middle mouse button)
- **Desktop Menu** — To create new folders or shortcuts, arrange icons, arrange windows, refresh desktop, access the Run command, or view Properties (default for right mouse button)
- **Application Menu** — View the Launch menu
- **Custom Menu 1** — Set an application to launch
- **Custom Menu 2** — Set an application to launch

4 Click **Apply**.

To set taskbar mouse button action

1 Click **Launch** ▶ **Control Center**.

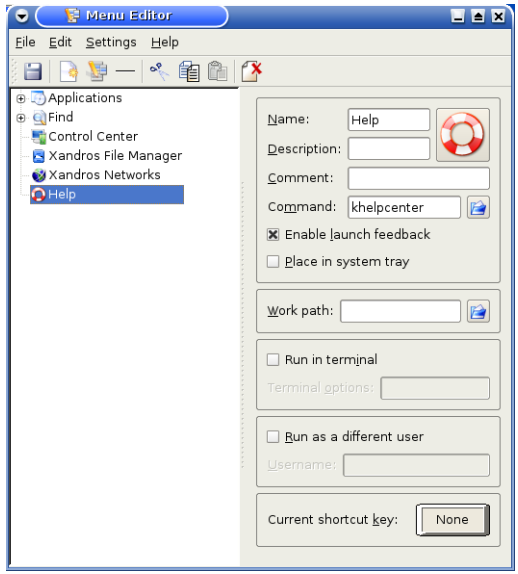
2 Click **Display**, then **Panel/Taskbar**, then **Taskbar**.

3 Set the options.

4 Click **Apply**.

Changing the Launch menu

You use the Menu Editor to rearrange applications and change the names and icons in the Launch menu. You can add items to the Launch menu, for example after you install an application. The Quick Start menu at the top of the Launch menu can be customized.



Adding and changing Launch menu items with the Menu Editor

To move a Launch menu item

1. Click **Launch ▶ Applications ▶ System ▶ Menu Editor.**
2. Expand the listings by clicking **+**, and drag and drop the application from one location to another within the menu structure.
3. Click **File ▶ Save** to save the changes.

To add a Launch menu item

1. Click **Launch ▶ Applications ▶ System ▶ Menu Editor.**
2. Select the category where you want to add the menu item, for example **Games** or **Graphics**.
3. Click **File ▶ New Item.**
4. Type a name for the application and click **OK.**
5. Type the command to launch the application in the **Command** box. This command is usually the name of the application, for example firefox for the Firefox Web Browser.

6 Change the icon for the application by clicking the icon at the right side and selecting a new one. Note the ability to place an icon that you created in any folder and select it using the **Other icons** option.

7 Click **File ▶ Save**. The item is added to the Launch menu.

To rename a Launch menu item

1 Click **Launch ▶ Applications ▶ System ▶ Menu Editor**.

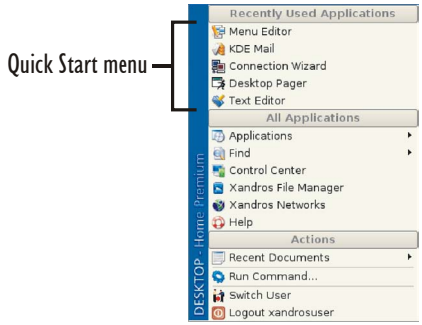
2 Find the application that you want to change from the list on the left side of the window.

3 In the **Name** box, type the new name of the application.

4 Click **File ▶ Save**.

Customizing the Quick Start menu

The Quick Start menu appears at the top of the Launch menu. You can customize it to display the most recently used or most frequently used applications and to set the number of applications that appear. The default is to show the five most frequently used applications.



To customize the Quick Start menu

1 Right-click an empty part of the Panel and select **Configure Panel**.

2 Click the **Menus** tab.

3 Enable one of the following options:

- **Show the applications most recently used** — Shows the last applications used
- **Show the applications most frequently used** — Shows the most frequently used applications

4 In the **Maximum number of entries** box, type the number of applications to display in the Quick Start menu. The maximum is 20 entries. The Quick Start menu disappears if the box is set to 0.

5 Click **Apply**.

Customizing window behavior

Xandros Desktop lets you customize the appearance and behavior of windows. Customizing the placement of windows helps you to maximize the work space on your desktop. Window focus options let you set how windows become active on the desktop. You can also set snap zones around application windows and the edge of the desktop so that windows snap together or snap to the edge of the desktop when they are moved. You can set mouse behavior.

Setting window placement options

You can specify where a window displays on the desktop when you open it and how several windows are displayed on the desktop. When you have more than one monitor connected to your computer, you can also share the display across the monitors.

To set window placement

1. Click **Launch** ▶ **Control Center**.
2. Click **General Settings**, then **Desktop Behavior**, then **Window Behavior**.
3. Click the **Moving** tab.
4. Select one of the following window placement styles from the **Placement** drop-down list:
   - **Smart** — Places a new window on the largest empty desktop area (default)
   - **Cascade** — Places a new window on top of the previously opened window, so that the title bar of each window is visible
   - **Random** — Places new windows randomly on the desktop
   - **Centered** — Places new windows in the center of the desktop
   - **Zero-Cornered** — Places new windows at the top left corner of the desktop
5. Click **Apply**.

To share window display between two monitors

1. Click **Launch** ▶ **Control Center**.
2. Click **Display**, then **Settings**.
3. Enable the **Extend my desktop onto this monitor** check box. The option is active when there is more than one monitor connected.
4. Click **Apply**.

Setting window activation options

The active window is the window on the desktop that receives keyboard input. It is identified by a highlighted title bar. You can customize the way windows on the desktop become active, which is called focus. A window can be activated by clicking it or by positioning the pointer over it. The auto raise option automatically places an active window in front of other windows. If you have set the activation option so that placing the mouse pointer over a window activates it, you can set a delay time between when you position the pointer and when the window becomes active.

To set the window activation method

1. Click **Launch ▶ Control Center**.
2. Click **General Settings**, then **Desktop Behavior**, then **Window Behavior**.
3. Select one of the following activation methods from the **Policy** drop-down list:
   - **Click to Focus** — Window becomes active when you click in it (default)
   - **Focus Follows Mouse** — Active window is the window on which the mouse is pointed. When the mouse pointer is moved to an area without a window, the last window remains active.
   - **Focus Under Mouse** — Same as Focus Follows Mouse, except when you launch a new window it does not become active until the mouse is placed in it
   - **Focus Strictly Under Mouse** — Active window is the window on which the mouse is pointed. When the mouse pointer points to an area on the desktop, the desktop is active.
4. Click **Apply**.

To automatically place activated window to the front

1. Follow all steps in the previous procedure.
2. Enable the **Auto raise** check box (cannot be used with **Click to Focus**).
3. Click **Apply**.

To set the delay time between positioning the mouse and window activation

1. Follow all steps in the "To set the window activation method" procedure.
2. Enable the **Delay focus** check box (cannot be used with **Click to Focus**).
3. Click and move the **Delay** slider to the right to increase the delay time or to the left to decrease the delay time.
4. Click **Apply**.

Setting desktop and window snap zones

A desktop border snap zone consists of a specified number of pixels around the edge of the desktop. A window snap zone consists of a specified number of pixels around the edge of a window. Windows automatically snap together and line up side-by-side when you move one window into the snap zone of another window. Moving a window into a border snap zone automatically lines up the edge of the window with the edge of the screen. You can customize the size of snap zones.

To set the desktop snap zone

1. Click **Launch** ▶ **Control Center**.
2. Click **General Settings**, then **Desktop Behavior**, then **Window Behavior**.
3. Click the **Moving** tab.
4. Click and move the **Border snap zone** slider to the left to decrease size of the snap zone and to the right to increase the size of the snap zone. The default is 10 pixels.
5. Click **Apply**.

To set the window snap zone

1. Click **Launch** ▶ **Control Center**.
2. Click **General Settings**, then **Desktop Behavior**, then **Window Behavior**.
3. Click the **Moving** tab.
4. Click and move the **Window snap zone** slider to the left to decrease the size of the snap zone and to the right to increase the size of the snap zone. The default is 10 pixels.
5. Enable the **Snap windows only when overlapping** check box to snap windows only when they are overlapping, not when they are near each other.
6. Click **Apply**.

Setting window mouse button action

There are several mouse options that you can set when using windows.

You can specify that a mouse button action (for example, right-clicking or double-clicking) performs a particular desktop action (for example, activating or resizing a window).

You can configure mouse action settings so that clicking a mouse button while holding the **Alt** key performs a specified action. Mouse buttons can be used to raise, lower, activate, or toggle raise and lower when you click on an active or inactive window while pressing the **Alt** key. An **Alt**+mouse button combination can also resize a window.

You can change the speed at which the mouse pointer moves. Mouse acceleration refers to the speed at which the pointer moves when you move the mouse. A lower mouse acceleration value makes the pointer move slowly. The mouse acceleration threshold is the distance in pixels that the pointer must move before movement occurs. The lower the threshold, the more quickly the pointer responds to mouse movement. For example, a high acceleration value combined with a low threshold value means that a small mouse movement makes the pointer move a great distance quickly.

You can change the mouse button mapping. For example, you can switch the function of the right and left mouse button from right-handed to left-handed. It is right-handed by default. You can set the mouse for single or double clicking when opening files.

For instruction on configuring mouse settings for the desktop and taskbar, see "Setting desktop and taskbar mouse button action" on page 85.

To set the action for mouse buttons within a window

1. Click **Launch** ▶ **Control Center**.
2. Click **General Settings**, then **Desktop Behavior**, then **Window Behavior**.
3. Click the **Actions** tab.
4. In the **Inactive Inner Window** area, select an action for the **Left button**, **Middle button**, or **Right button** drop-down list with the following options:
   - **Activate, Raise & Pass Click** — Activates a window that you click on, raising it to the top of the desktop, and passing a mouse click to the application in the window
   - **Activate & Pass Click** — Activates a window that you click on and passes a mouse click to the application in the window
   - **Activate** — Activates the window that you click on
   - **Activate & Raise** — Activates the window that you click on and raises it to the top of the desktop
5. Click **Apply**.

To set the action for the modifier key+mouse button combination

1. In the **Window Behavior** panel of the Control Center, access the **Actions** tab.
2. Select a key from the **Modifier key** drop-down list.
3. Select an action for the **Modifier key + x button** with the following options:
   - **Move** — Lets you drag the window around the desktop
   - **Activate, Raise and Move** — Makes the window the active window, raises it to the top of the desktop, and lets you drag the window
   - **Toggle Raise & Lower** — Raises windows that are not on top of the desktop and lowers the ones already on top

- **Resize** — Lets you change the size of the window
- **Raise** — Raises the window to the top of the desktop and any overlapping windows are hidden below it
- **Lower** — Moves the window to the bottom of the desktop
- **Minimize** — Minimizes the window to the Panel taskbar
- **Nothing** — No action is performed

4 Click **Apply**.

To set the mouse speed

1 Click **Launch** ▶ **Control Center**.
2 Click **Peripheral Devices**, then **Mouse**.
3 Click the **Advanced** tab.
4 Decrease the **Pointer acceleration** value for a slower mouse or increase it for a faster mouse. The default is 2.0 x.
5 Click **Apply**.

To set the threshold for mouse movement

1 In the **Mouse** panel of the Control Center, access the **Advanced** tab.
2 Click and move the **Pointer threshold** slider to the left to set a low acceleration threshold or right to set a high acceleration threshold. The default is 4 pixels.
3 Click **Apply**.

To set the double-click interval for a mouse

1 In the **Mouse** panel of the Control Center, access the **Advanced** tab.
2 Click and move the **Double click interval** slider to the left to set a short interval or right to set a long interval. The default is 400 msec.
3 Click **Apply**.

To set mouse button mapping

1 Click **Launch** ▶ **Control Center**.
2 Click **Peripheral Devices**, then **Mouse**.
3 In the **General** tab, enable the **Right handed** or **Left handed** option.
4 Click **Apply**.

To set single or double clicking of mouse

1 Click **Launch** ▶ **Control Center**.
2 Click **Peripheral Devices**, then **Mouse**.
3 In the **General** tab, enable the **Double-click...** or **Single-click...** option.
4 Click **Apply**.

Customizing keyboard settings, shortcuts, and language maps

Customizable keyboard settings include keyboard repeat, Num Lock, shortcut keys, and international keyboard language maps.

Additional keyboard defaults can be set to increase accessibility. See “Setting accessibility” on page 82.

Customizing keyboard settings

By default when you press and hold a key on the keyboard, the character or action of the key repeats. When you turn keyboard repeat off, pressing and holding a key types that character once. The numerical lock (Num Lock) key can be set to turn off or on at startup or to be left the way you last left it (default).

To set keyboard repeat speed

1 Click **Launch** ▶ **Control Center**.

2 Click **Peripheral Devices**, then **Keyboard**.

3 With the **Enable keyboard repeat** check box enabled, click and move the **Rate** slider to the left for slower repeat speed or to the right for faster repeat speed.

4 Click **Apply**.

To set Num Lock default

1 Click **Launch** ▶ **Control Center**.

2 Click **Peripheral Devices**, then **Keyboard**.

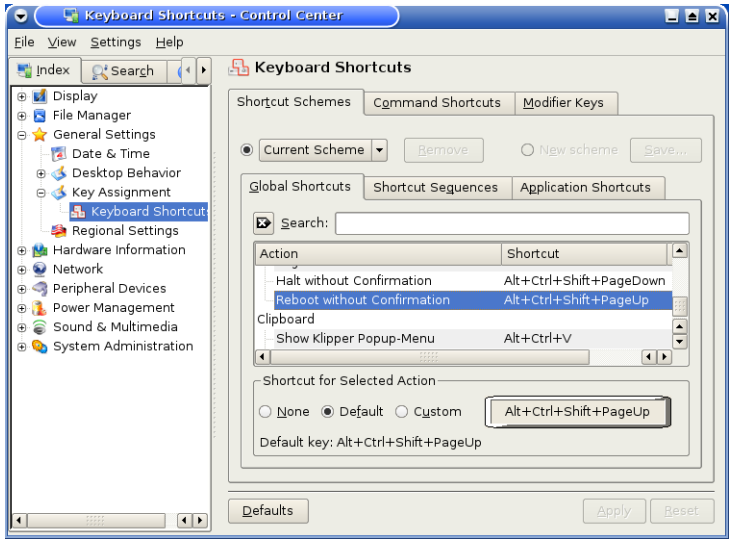
3 Select one of the following options:

- **Turn on**
- **Turn off**
- **Leave unchanged** — Default

4 Click **Apply**.

Customizing global shortcut keys

Shortcut keys are preset keys or key combinations that perform a specified action on the desktop or in applications, for example, pressing **Alt+F2** to launch the Run command. You can change the shortcut keys that are configured automatically by Xandros Desktop or create new ones. In addition, you can delete global keyboard shortcut keys.



Keyboard Shortcuts panel

To change a shortcut key

1. Click **Launch** ▶ **Control Center**.
2. Click **General Settings**, then **Key Assignment**, then **Keyboard Shortcuts**.
3. Select a key scheme from the drop-down list.
4. In the **Global Shortcuts** tab, select a key from the list. For example, **Alt+Ctrl+Shift+Page Up** is used to restart the computer.
5. Select an action from the **Shortcut for Selected Action** list, and change the default if prompted.
6. Change as many keys as required.
7. If you want to create a new scheme, click **Save**, type a name for the key scheme in the dialog box that appears, and click **OK**.
8. Click **Apply**.

To remove a shortcut key

1. Click **Launch** ▶ **Control Center**.
2. Click **General Settings**, then **Key Assignment**, then **Keyboard Shortcuts**.
3. Select a key scheme from the drop-down list.
4. Select a key from the list.
5. In the **Shortcut for Selected Action** area, enable the **None** option.
6. Click **Apply**.

Customizing desktop switching keys

You can set the keys used to switch among virtual desktops. For example, **Ctrl+F1** is used to switch to virtual desktop 1, and **Ctrl+Tab** cycles to the next virtual desktop.

To change a desktop switching shortcut key

1. Click **Launch** ▶ **Control Center**.
2. Click **General Settings**, then **Key Assignment**, then **Keyboard Shortcuts**.
3. Select a key scheme from the drop-down list.
4. Click the **Shortcut Sequences** tab.
5. Select a key from the list.
6. Select an action from the **Shortcut for Selected Action** list, and change the default if prompted.
7. Click **Apply**.

Customizing application shortcut keys

You can create a shortcut key scheme that contains shortcut keys related to applications, for example, pressing **F1** to access help. You can modify the shortcut keys and remove them.

To change default application shortcut keys

1. Click **Launch** ▶ **Control Center**.
2. Click **General Settings**, then **Key Assignment**, then **Keyboard Shortcuts**.
3. Select a key scheme from the drop-down list.
4. Click the **Application Shortcuts** tab.
5. Select a key from the list.
6. Select an action from the **Shortcut for Selected Action** list, and change the default if prompted.
7. If you want to create a new scheme, click **Save**, type a name for the key scheme in the dialog box that appears, and click **OK**.
8. Click **Apply**.

To remove an application shortcut key

1 Click **Launch ▶ Control Center**.

2 Click **General Settings**, then **Key Assignment**, then **Keyboard Shortcuts**.

3 Select a key scheme from the drop-down list.

4 Click the **Application Shortcuts** tab.

5 Select a key from the list.

6 In the **Shortcut for Selected Action** area, enable the **None** option.

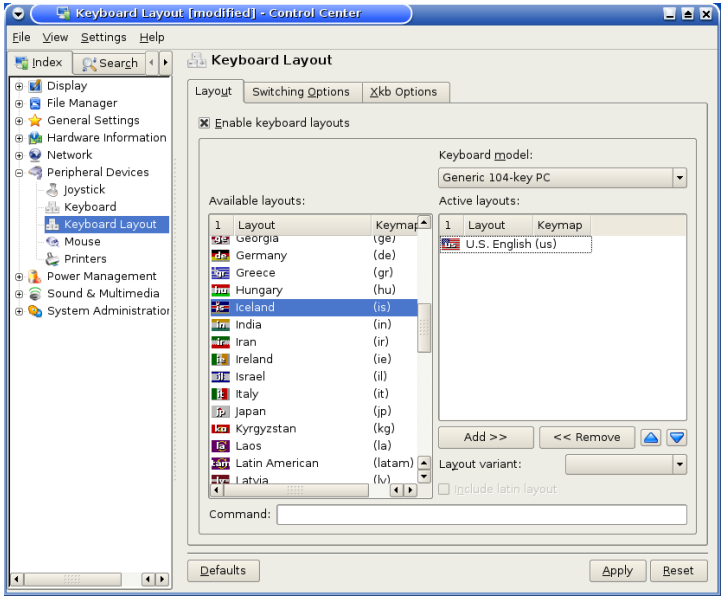
7 Click **Apply**.

Configuring international keyboard language maps

An international keyboard language map has characters associated with each key that differ from the characters assigned to the keys of an English keyboard. For example, when you apply the French keyboard map to your keyboard, pressing the A key types the letter Q. Each language map can have up to four characters associated with each key. You can access the first two characters for a key by pressing the key and **Shift** + the key, like on a standard keyboard. The other two characters are alternative characters, which you access using a combination of keys.

You can add as many keyboard maps as you want from a list of available languages and easily switch among them.

You may have to download fonts, for example msttcorefonts or specific to the language, from Xandros Networks.



Keyboard Layout panel for adding keyboard language mappings

To add an international keyboard map

1. Click **Launch** ▶ **Control Center**.
2. Click **Peripheral Devices**, then **Keyboard Layout**.
3. Enable the **Enable keyboard layouts** check box.
4. Select the language.
5. Click **Add**.
6. Click **Apply**. The keyboard map is available for use, but not active.
7. To use the keyboard map, click the language icon on the Panel to toggle to the next keyboard map, or right-click it and select the keyboard map required.

Restart your desktop session (log out and log in) if your international keyboard language map settings do not take effect immediately.

You may have to download fonts, for example msttcorefonts or specific to the language, from Xandros Networks.

Some keyboard maps, such as Japanese, do not work at this time.

Adding and using spell checkers

Xandros Desktop includes an English spell checker. Several spell checking dictionaries are available on Xandros Networks and the Applications CD: Brazilian, Danish, Danish Aspell, French, German, Italian, Polish, Portuguese, Russian, Spanish, Spanish Aspell, and UK English. The spell checker is used by some applications, such as the Text Editor. Other applications, such as Thunderbird Mail and the OpenOffice.org Word Processor, have their own spell checkers. You can set defaults, such as whether run-together words appear as spelling errors.

You have a choice of Ispell, Aspell, and Hspell clients, which are Open Source spell checkers. Aspell is designed to replace Ispell, having more suggestions for corrections than Ispell, the ability to learn from misspellings, and the ability to use multiple dictionaries, for example. Due to the nature of the Hebrew language, which cannot use Ispell or Aspell, there is an Hspell option.

After installation of Xandros Desktop, if you want to use a spell checker dictionary not installed, there are two options. You can install it from Xandros Networks or the Applications CD.

To install a spell checker dictionary with Xandros Networks

1. Click **Launch** ▶ **Xandros Networks**.
2. Expand the **New Applications** category.
3. Click **Spell Checking Dictionaries**.
4. Enable the check box of the required dictionary.
5. Click **Install** and follow the prompts, for example to choose the default spell checker.

Additional spell checkers and dictionaries can be downloaded from Xandros Networks under the **text** category (switch to **Expert View** under **Settings**).

To choose the default spell checker

1. Click **Launch** ▶ **Control Center**.
2. Click **General Settings**, then **Desktop Behavior**, then **Spell Checking**.
3. Select the client from the **Client** drop-down list (so you can choose a dictionary).
4. Select the dictionary from the **Dictionary** drop-down list.
5. Click **Apply**.

Customizing monitor settings

You can select a higher or lower screen resolution to make images display larger or smaller. Screen resolution is measured in pixels. For example, setting your screen resolution to 800x600 displays images using 800 pixels across the width of the screen and 600 down the length of the screen. The higher the resolution (the more pixels used to display images), the clearer and sharper the image appears. Higher resolutions make images on the screen, such as windows and text, appear smaller. You can set screen resolution as high as 1600x1200, depending on the type of video card and monitor you are using.

To set the screen resolution

1. Click **Launch** ▶ **Control Center**.
2. Click **Display**, then **Settings**.
3. In the **Screen Size** area, click and move the slider to the right to increase the screen size or to the left to decrease it.
4. Click **Apply**. You are prompted to restart the computer.

You can also set these defaults by right-clicking on the desktop and selecting **Properties**.

If you have two monitors, you can share the display across both monitors. See “To share window display between two monitors” on page 88.

Customizing system sounds

System sounds are sounds that you hear when you perform an action on the desktop. For example, a sound plays when you log in to your computer.

There are a variety of sounds that you can set to play for different actions on the desktop. For example, you can set a beep to sound when you change to another virtual desktop, when you open or close a window, or when you activate a window. These system sounds only work if you have a sound card installed and speakers or headphones. The system bell is the default system sound, and it plays when you make a minor system error, like clicking outside a dialog box instead of closing the dialog box first. You can set the volume, pitch, and duration of the bell. Changing the pitch makes the sound higher or lower. You can test sounds before you apply them to your desktop. Sounds can be disabled.

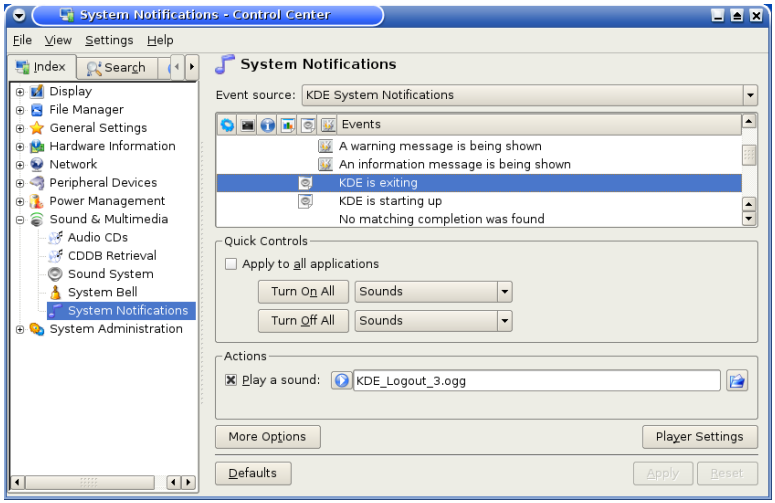
Troubleshooting information is provided for when there is no sound.

To troubleshoot sound

- If sound is too fast or distorted, click **Launch ▶ Control Center**, then **Sound & Multimedia**, then **Sound System**. Click the **Hardware** tab, and set the **Use custom sampling rate** to 48000.
- In the **Hardware** tab, change the **Select the audio device** setting, for example by changing it to **Open Sound System** or **Advanced Linux Sound Architecture**.
- Try reinstalling Xandros Desktop using the troubleshooting menu, for example trying the **ACPI 4 Setup** or **ACPI 2 Setup** option. See “To use the troubleshooting menu for installation” on page 22.
- If that does not work, check if Xandros Technical Support has an updated sound driver for your sound card.

To disable system sound at startup and shutdown

1. Click **Launch ▶ Control Center**.
2. Click **Sound & Multimedia**, then **System Notifications**.
3. From the **Event source** drop-down list, select **KDE System Notifications**.
4. Click the icon beside the **KDE is exiting** event to disable it. The icon does not appear when disabled.
5. Click the icon beside the **KDE is starting up** event to disable it.
6. Click **Apply**.



System Notifications panel for controlling system sounds

To apply a system sound to a desktop action

1. Click **Launch ▶ Control Center**.
2. Click **Sound & Multimedia**, then **System Notifications**.
3. From the **Event source** drop-down list, select the application or event for which you want to apply a sound. Icons are shown in the **Events** list for which sounds currently apply.
4. Click the **Events** to which you want to apply a sound.
5. Enable the **Play a sound** check box.
6. Type the file path and name of a .wav or .ogg file, or browse to find the file.
7. Click **Apply**.

To apply a sound to all applications

1. Follow steps 1 to 6 from the previous procedure.
2. Enable the **Apply to all applications** check box.
3. Click **Apply**.

To set the volume, pitch, and duration of the system bell

1. Click **Launch ▶ Control Center**.
2. Click **Sound & Multimedia**, then **System Bell**.
3. Enable the **Use system bell instead of system notification** check box.
4. Click and move the **Volume** slider, **Pitch** slider, and/or **Duration** slider to increase or decrease the volume, pitch, and duration of the sound.
5. Click **Test** to hear the sound. This test does not work for all computers.

Changing multimedia information retrieval

A compact disc database (CDDB) contains information for music CDs, such as artist name and song titles. This information is retrieved by default from your cache and over the Internet then displayed in media players, such as the CD Player. You can change this default behavior and specify the server to retrieve such information. The default server is the freedb.freedb.org site.

To change multimedia information retrieval

1 Click **Launch** ▶ **Control Center**.
2 Click **Sound & Multimedia**, then **CDDB Retrieval**.
3 In the **CDDB server** box, type the address of the server.
4 Click **Apply**.

You can also specify multimedia inputs in the CD Player application. See “Displaying CD information” on page 279.

Launching applications automatically

You can modify the autorun program that sets the default applications launched, for example the application to launch when an audio CD is inserted.

You can specify applications to launch automatically when you start Xandros Desktop. For example, you can set the Firefox Web Browser to start automatically so that you do not have to manually launch it. You do so by creating a symbolic link in an autostart folder.

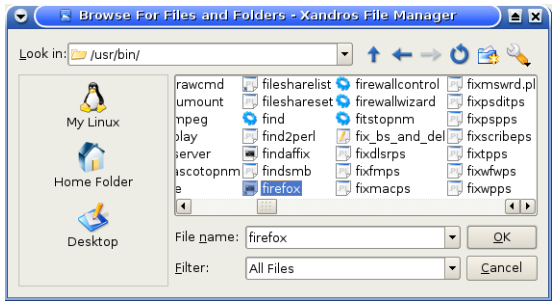
To set default applications

1 Click **Launch** ▶ **Control Center**.
2 Click **File Manager**, then **File Associations**.
3 Select an item from the **Known Types** list, expanding the lists by clicking **+**.
4 Set the default application in the **Application Preference Order** area.
5 Click **Apply**.

You can also edit the file **/etc/autorun/autorun.conf**. See the documentation in **/usr/share/doc/autorun/examples/autorun.conf.gz** for details.

To launch an application automatically at startup

1. Click **Launch ▶ Xandros File Manager.**
2. Click **View**, and enable **Show Hidden Files.**
3. Double-click the **.kde** folder.
4. Double-click the **Autostart** folder.
5. Click **File ▶ Create Symbolic Link.**
6. Click **Browse.**
7. Click **My Linux.**
8. Double-click **All File Systems.**
9. Double-click **/**
10. Find and select the application that you want to launch automatically. Examples are:
    - /usr/bin/firefox for Firefox Web Browser
    - /usr/bin/mozilla-thunderbird for Thunderbird Mail
    - /usr/bin/oowriter for OpenOffice.org Word Processor
    - /usr/bin/noatun for Media Player
    - /usr/bin/ksnapshot for Screen Capture
    - /usr/bin/digikam for Digital Camera
    - /usr/bin/kwrite for Text Editor
    - /usr/bin/kaddressbook for Address Book
    - /usr/bin/kalarm for Reminder Message Scheduler
    - /usr/bin/kfloppy for Floppy Disk Formatter
    - /usr/bin/acroread for Adobe Reader
    - /usr/bin/xmms for MP3 Player
    - /usr/games/kasteroids for Asteroids
    - /usr/games/xgalaga for XGalaga



Selecting application to launch automatically at startup

11 Click **OK**.

12 Log out then in again and check that the application launches automatically after login. Some applications can take up to a minute to load. If an application does not launch, then you did not find the right file to link to. Delete any links that are incorrect before trying again.

13 When finished, turn off hidden files by clicking **View**, and disabling **Show Hidden Files**.

Setting default applications

You can set the application to launch when a certain file type is accessed. For example, when you have Adobe Reader and PostScript Viewer installed, you can specify which application is used to launch for a file with a Portable Document Format (PDF) extension. You do so by associating extensions with applications.

To set default applications

1 Click **Launch ▶ Control Center**.

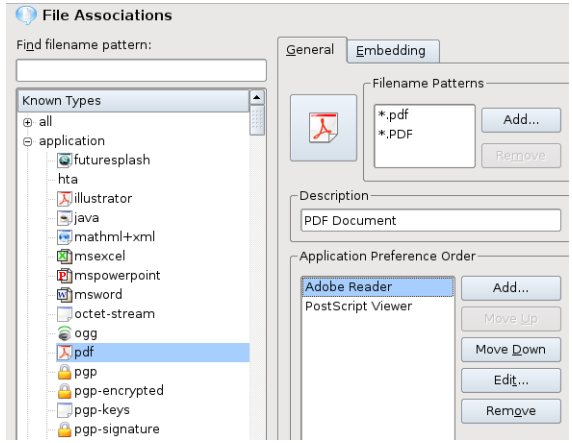
2 Click **File Manager**, then **File Associations**.

3 From the drop-down lists in the **Known Types** column, select the file type, for example **pdf**.

4 In the Application Preference Order area, select an application click **Move Up** or **Move Down** to change the order in which the system tries to launch applications when the file type is encountered.

To instead associate another application with the file type, click **Add**, select the application, and click **OK**.

5 Click **Apply**.



Setting default application used to view PDF files

Using Xandros Desktop

6 Managing your system

Each Xandros Desktop system, whether part of a corporate network or a stand-alone computer, requires periodic administration. This administration can include: managing user accounts; scanning for viruses; monitoring system information and processes; and downloading critical and security updates. Xandros Desktop provides the following system administration utilities to help you accomplish these tasks.

Application	Function	Page
Xandros File Manager	Provides access to files, folders, networks	108
Hardware Information	Provides information about the hardware in and connected to your computer	109
User Manager	Lets you add, edit, and remove user accounts and groups, change user passwords, and encrypt home folders	109
Xandros Storage Manager	Lets you view and manage partitions and hard disks	121
Xandros Anti-Virus	Scans and removes viruses	130
Xandros Security Suite	Integrates security functions	135

table continued

Application	Function	Page
Power Control	Lets you manage monitor power	136
Performance Monitor	Lets you access information about all processes currently running on the operating system, aborts system processes, and displays information about performance	137
Event Viewer	Lets you view log files that describe the activities of system facilities, such as daemon, kernel, and printer facilities	140
Xandros Networks	Lets you install updates and new applications, as well as remove applications	143

Accessing Xandros File Manager as Administrator

The Administrator (root) directory can be viewed using Xandros File Manager. Different files are viewed as Administrator than when accessing files as a regular user, such as hidden files. This mode also allows you to copy files into all directories, such as adding a screen saver or a desktop wallpaper background file. You can view all user files, except encrypted folders, as Administrator.

To access Xandros File Manager as Administrator

1. Click **Launch** ▶ **Applications** ▶ **System** ▶ **Administrator Tools** ▶ **Xandros File Manager**.
2. Type the Administrator password, and click **OK**.

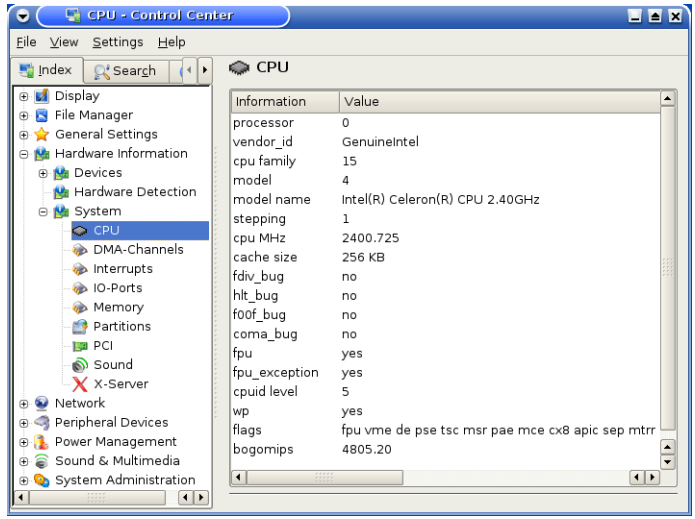
For more information on using Xandros File Manager, see “Managing files” on page 145.

To view user files

1. Access Xandros File Manager as Administrator.
2. Click **All File Systems** in the menu on the left side.
3. Click **/**
4. Double-click **home**.
5. Click into the required user home folder. Home folders that are encrypted are not shown.

Viewing hardware and system information

You can view information about hardware and the system. Although this function is read-only, it provides status information on devices in and connected to the computer, such as the processor (CPU), interrupts, input/output (IO) ports, memory, and partitions. Xandros Desktop automatically detects most hardware, for example network adapters.



CPU panel displaying information about system processor

To view device and system information

1 Click **Launch ▶ Control Center**.

2 Click **Hardware Information**, then the category for which you want information. The **Memory** category under **System** also provides information about usage.

View the **/etc/devices/devices.inf** file in Xandros File Manager for a detailed list of hardware detected.

Managing users and groups

Each user is assigned an account containing information, such as full name, user name, user ID number, and password. Xandros Desktop automatically generates the user ID number. The information stored with each user account determines the files and applications that the user can access.

Encryption capability can be added for home directories so that they cannot be accessed by others, including the Administrator. This feature is useful, for example, for laptop computer users who have critical data that must be secure if the computer is stolen. If you forget the password, you can access or

recover your files if you elected to export the key to removable media. Encryption can be added to new or existing user accounts.

A group is a set of one or more users identified by a group name and ID number. Xandros Desktop automatically generates the group ID number. All users must be assigned to a group. By default, Xandros Desktop creates a primary group for all users. You can assign users to multiple groups. For example, a user who belongs to the "Mail" group can also belong to the "Games" group.

Groups help the Administrator manage the system by classifying users. It makes it possible to assign file and folder access permissions based on the group. Users assigned to a group are automatically given the permissions associated with that group.

Adding, editing, and deleting user accounts

You can add, edit, and delete user accounts. Account encryption is possible for new and existing accounts. User accounts can be set to expire and to have access restricted to certain days and times.

To add a user account

1. Click **Launch** ▶ **Control Center**.
2. Click **System Administration,** then **User Manager**.
3. Click **Administrator**, and enter the Administrator password.
4. Click **Add**. The Add User Wizard appears.
5. In the Enter User Attributes window:
   - Type the name of the user account in the **User name** box. It is the name for logging in to the desktop. No spaces are allowed.
   - Type the full name of the user in the **Full name** box. Spaces are allowed.
   - If you want to change the login shell (bash by default), name of the home folder for the new user (/home/username by default), or add a note about the user, click **Advanced**. A login shell is a program that helps start the computer and sets environment variables for the system and user.
   - Click **Next** to continue in the wizard.
6. To accept the default group access, click **Next**. Otherwise, click **Advanced**, set the groups to which the user account belongs, then click **Next**. If you disable access to the camera or cdrom group, for example, the user cannot view pictures from a digital camera or play a music CD.
7. To encrypt the user's folders, enable the **Encrypt user's home folder** check box and allocate the size of the home folder allowed for the user. The larger the home folder, the longer it takes to encrypt it. When you use encryption,

shared resources are only viewable when the user is logged in. If you later upgrade the product, encryption needs to be turned off in order to preserve some settings, such as e-mail and the address book.

Encrypting a user home folder

When clicking **Advanced**, the encryption algorithm options include:

- **Rijndael (AES) Cryptographic Algorithm** — A symmetric block cipher algorithm that uses a variable block and key length, but default implementations use key lengths of 128, 192, or 256 bits. Approved by NIST of the Federal Information Processing Standard (FIPS) for the Advanced Encryption Standard (AES) FIPS-197.
- **DES Cryptographic Algorithm** — A symmetric block cipher algorithm that uses an 8 byte block size with a 56 bit key length. The Data Encryption Standard (DES) was developed in the 1970s by the National Bureau of Standards with the help of the National Security Agency. IBM created the first draft of the algorithm, calling it LUCIFER. DES is a federal standard.
- **Triple DES Cryptographic Algorithm** — Triple DES essentially uses DES three times, hence has a key length of 168 bits. It was developed as an answer to the shortcomings in DES in the late 1970s. Triple DES is a minor variation of the DES standard and is three times slower than regular DES but can be more secure if used properly.
- **Anubis Cryptographic Algorithm** — A block cipher algorithm that uses a 32 byte block size and a key length of 128 to 320 bits. It has been submitted as a candidate for the NESSIE cryptographic primitive evaluation effort.
- **CAST5 Cryptographic Algorithm** — A symmetric block cipher algorithm that uses an 8 byte block size and a key length of 80 or 128 bits. Also known as CAST-128. Patented by Entrust Technologies.

- **CAST6 Cryptographic Algorithm** — A symmetric block cipher algorithm that uses a 16 byte block size and a key length of 128 or 256 bits. Also known as CAST-256. Patented by Entrust Technologies.
- **Blowfish Cryptographic Algorithm** — A symmetric block cipher algorithm that uses an 8 byte block size and a variable key length of 32 to 448 bits
- **TEA Cryptographic Algorithm** — A symmetric block cipher algorithm that uses an 8 byte block size and a 128 bit key length
- **XTEA Cryptographic Algorithm** — A symmetric block cipher algorithm that uses an 8 byte block size and a 128 bit key length; designed to correct weaknesses in TEA. Also known as eXtended TEA.
- **Serpent Cryptographic Algorithm** — A symmetric block cipher algorithm that uses a variable block and key length, but default implementations use key lengths of 128, 192, or 256 bits. Was a candidate for the Advanced Encryption Standard (AES).
- **Serpent and tnepres Cipher Algorithm** — A symmetric block cipher algorithm. tnepres is serpent cipher, but in reverse. Was a candidate for the AES.
- **Khazad Cryptographic Algorithm** — A symmetric block cipher algorithm that uses an 8 byte block size and a 128 bit key length
- **Twofish Cryptographic Algorithm** — A symmetric block cipher algorithm that uses a 16 byte block size and a variable key length of 8 to 256 bits

Select the **Creation method** from the drop-down list:

- **Fast (medium security)** — To create the encrypted file system with empty data (zeros). Less secure but 10 times faster than the Slow option. This is the default option. It takes about 10 minutes for a 10 GB folder.
- **Slow (high security)** — To create the encrypted file system using secure, random data. More secure and 10 times slower to create or resize the file system than the Fast option, after which there is no impact on performance.

When you encrypt a home folder, a **lost+found** folder is also created in that folder. Ignore this folder.

Note that if you encrypt the home folder and forget your password or do not export it, you will not be able to access or recover your files.

Click **Next** to continue in the wizard.

8 In the Enter User Password window:

- Type a **Password** for the user account (optional but recommended; required if encryption to be used).

- Retype the password in the **Confirm password** box.
- If you want to allow the new user to change their password upon login, enable the **Force user to change password on first login** check box.
- Click **Next** to continue in the wizard.

9 Click **Finish** and wait for the account to be created.

When the account is encrypted, you are prompted if you want to export the encryption key to removable media. If you export the key when the user account is created or from the properties panel, you can recover the data by importing the saved key when you change the user's password. Xandros recommends saving it on removable media that is stored in a secure place. Otherwise, if it is stored on the local machine, then it can be retrieved by anyone who has permission to read the file.

The user account is added and appears in the **Users** tab. Use the following procedures to set user access restrictions or interval between password changes.

To add a user account to a Windows NT or ADS domain, see "Joining a Windows domain" on page 171.

To turn encryption on and off

1 In the **User Manager** panel, select the user account whose properties you want to edit.

2 Click **Properties**.

3 Click the **Encryption** tab and make the changes. If you use encryption, shared resources are only viewable when the user is logged in. If you later upgrade the product, encryption needs to be turned off in order to preserve some settings, such as e-mail and address book.

4 Click **OK**.

To edit the properties of a user account

1 In the **User Manager** panel, select the user account whose properties you want to edit.

2 Click **Properties**.

3 Make the required changes. Use the **Account** tab to set access restrictions by time or date or to set an expiry date (explained later). Use the **Password Management** tab to set the interval between password changes. Use the **Encryption** tab to turn encryption on or off. Use the **Groups** tab to change the groups to which the user belongs.

4 Click **OK** to exit from the window.

To delete a user account

1. In the **User Manager** panel, select the user account you want to delete.
2. Click **Delete**. For unencrypted user accounts, you have the option of deleting the user account and its files or only the user account. If you delete only the user account, you can find the files while logged in as Administrator in the **/home** folder. For encrypted user accounts, you delete the user account and its files; if you want to keep their files, turn off encryption for the account before deleting it.

   Some user accounts cannot be deleted, for example, for the Administrator or a user who is presently logged in to the system.

Changing user passwords

User passwords are normally set when a user account is added to the system. A user can change their own password, and the Administrator can change any user's password.

To change a password as a regular user

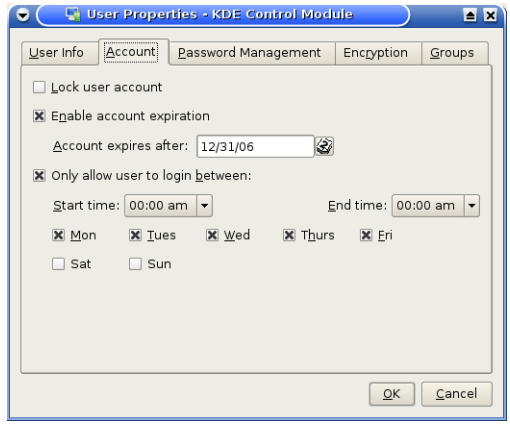
1. Click **Launch** ▶ **Control Center**.
2. Click **System Administration**, then **Change Password**.
3. Type the current password in the **Current password** box.
4. Type a new password in the **New password** box.
5. Type the new password again in the **Confirm password** box.
6. To have the password synchronized with a Windows password (meaning use it as a Windows password too when connected to a Windows network), leave the **Synchronize with local Windows network password** check box enabled. If you do not use a Windows network, you can disable this option.
7. Click **Apply**.

To change a password as the Administrator

1. Click **Launch** ▶ **Control Center**.
2. Click **System Administration**, then **User Manager**.
3. Click **Administrator**, and enter the Administrator password.
4. Select the user account for which you want to set the password.
5. Click **Set Password**. If the user account is encrypted, you are prompted to enter the password.
6. Type a password for the user in the **Password** box.
7. Type the new password again in the **Confirm password** box.
8. If you want to force the new user to change their password, enable the **Force user to change password on first login** check box.
9. Click **OK** to exit from the window.

Restricting user access

A user account can be locked out, the expiry date can be set, and/or access can be restricted to times and days. Administrator access is required to set these functions.



Setting user account expiry date and weekday access

To restrict user login

1. Click **Launch ▶ Control Center**.
2. Click **System Administration**, then **User Manager**.
3. Click **Administrator**, and enter the Administrator password.
4. Select the user account for which you want to restrict login access.
5. Click **Properties**.
6. Click the **Account** tab.
7. Enable the **Lock user account**, **Enable account expiration**, or **Only allow user to login between** check box, as appropriate, and complete the required information.
8. Click **OK**. The changes generally take effect after you log out and after the user logs out; a user account is not locked immediately if the user is logged in.

Adding, editing, and deleting groups

A group is a set of user accounts with specific file access permissions assigned to them. Administrator access is required to create, edit, and delete groups. The Administrator can edit groups when adding or removing user accounts. Removing a user account from a group does not delete the user account from the system.

To add a group

1. Click **Launch** ▶ **Control Center**.
2. Click **System Administration**, then **User Manager**.
3. Click **Administrator**, and enter the Administrator password.
4. Click the **Groups** tab.
5. Click **Add**.
6. Type the name of the new group in the **Group name** box. No spaces are allowed.
7. Click **OK**. The group record appears in the **Groups** tab. By default, no functions are enabled for the group. Use the following procedure to specify functions and the users who belong to the group.

To edit the properties of a group

1. In the **User Manager** panel, click the **Groups** tab.
2. Select the group account you want to edit.
3. Click **Properties**.
4. Click the **Users** tab.
5. Make any required changes to the user properties, including adding user accounts to the group, and click **OK**.

To delete a group

1. In the **User Manager** panel, click the **Groups** tab.
2. Select the group account you want to delete.
3. Click **Delete**, and confirm the deletion. If you are unable to delete a group, it can be because it is a user account, not a group. When you delete a group, the user accounts in that group remain on the system unless you delete each individual user account.

Assigning access privileges to files and folders

You can help to secure system files and folders by assigning access to certain users and by specifying the type of access they can have, for example, whether they can view or change a file. Every file and folder has an assigned owner and owner group.

You can share files and folders at the local and network levels. For information on sharing at the network level, see “Enabling file and printer sharing for a Windows network” on page 167.

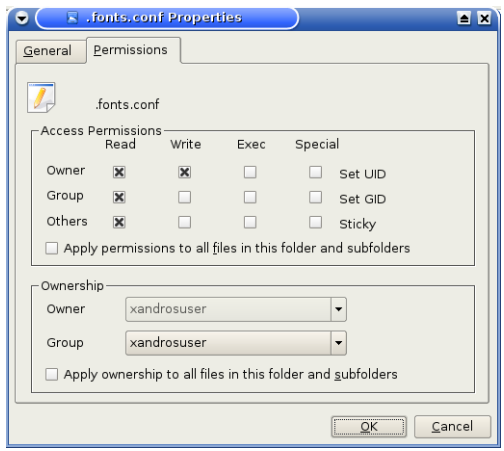
You can encrypt a user’s home folder. See “Adding, editing, and deleting user accounts” on page 110.

Ownership

In general, the owner is the user who creates the file or folder. The owner group is typically the primary group to which the owner belongs. You can change the owner or owner group only for files and folders that you own. The Administrator can change the ownership of all files and folders.

Permissions

You can set access permissions for files and folders that you own. The Administrator can set access permissions for any file or folder, other than encrypted ones. You can set read, write, and execute permissions for the file’s owner, the owner group, and other users. For example, you can set access permissions so that only the owner can write to or modify a file, but all other users on the system, including those in the owner group, can read or view the file’s contents. You can also set read, write, and execute permissions for folders.



Changing file permissions

Changing file and folder ownership

By default, the file or folder owner is the user who created it. The Administrator can change the ownership of unencrypted user's files or folders. An owner does not reassign ownership, but can change group ownership.

To change a file or folder owner

1. In Xandros File Manager, locate the file or folder for which you want to set the ownership. As Administrator, you can view them if user account is unencrypted; click into **All File Systems**, then **/** , then **home**.
2. Right-click the file or folder, and select **Properties**.
3. Click the **Permissions** tab.
4. Select the owner from the **Owner** drop-down list. The current owner cannot change the owner to another one.
5. Click **OK**.

To change a file or folder owner group

1. Follow steps 1 to 3 of the previous procedure.
2. Select the group from the **Group** drop-down list.
3. Click **OK**.

When you change the owner, the new owner automatically receives the same access permissions as the previous owner. Likewise, changing the owner group automatically gives the users in that group the same access permissions as the previous group.

Setting file and folder permissions and sharing

The owner of a file and the Administrator can specify who has permission to read and write changes, and run the file (if it is an executable file). File permissions can be set for the owner, the owner group, and all other users who are neither the owner or a member of the owner group. The Administrator can also disable all file sharing.

For access over a network, file sharing must be enabled for it. See "Enabling network folder sharing on your local system" on page 181.

To set file or folder permissions for the owner

1. In Xandros File Manager, locate the file or folder for which you want to set permissions. As Administrator, you can view them if user account is unencrypted.
2. Right-click the file or folder, and select **Properties**.

3 Click the **Permissions** tab.

4 In the **Access Permissions** section, enable any of the following check boxes for the **Owner** row:

- **Read** — Lets the owner examine the file contents
- **Write** — Lets the owner change the file
- **Exec** — Lets the owner run executable files, for example, to install an application
- **Set UID** — Set user ID. This option applies only to executable files. It assigns the user name for the time during which an executable program executes. An example of such an executable program is the Connection Wizard, which is set at Administrator (root) level because it needs to modify root-owned files.

To set file or folder permissions for the owner group

1 Follow steps 1 to 3 of the previous procedure.

2 In the **Access Permissions** section, enable any of the following check boxes for the **Group** row:

- **Read** — Lets group members examine the file contents
- **Write** — Lets group members change the file
- **Exec** — Lets group members run an executable file, for example, to install an application
- **Set GID** — Set group ID. This option applies only to executable files. It assigns the group name for the time during which an executable program executes. An example of such an executable program is the Connection Wizard, which is set at Administrator (root) level because it needs to modify root-owned files.

For access over a network, file sharing must be enabled for it. See “Enabling network folder sharing on your local system” on page 181.

To set file or folder permissions for all other users

1 Follow steps 1 to 3 of the “To set file or folder permissions for the owner” procedure.

2 In the **Access Permissions** section, enable any of the following check boxes for the **Others** row:

- **Read** — Lets all other users examine the file contents
- **Write** — Lets all other users change the file
- **Exec** — Lets all other users run an executable file, for example, to install an application
- **Sticky** — Applies only to executable files. When enabled, applications are not swapped out of memory when they are not being used and

instead are run in the background, which means the applications are quickly available when you want to use them again.

3 Click **OK** to exit from the window.

For access over a network, file sharing must be enabled for it. See "Enabling network folder sharing on your local system" on page 181.

To disable file sharing

1 Click **Launch** ▶ **Xandros File Manger**.

2 Open the **Home** folder, which is indicated as **/home/username** or as **My Home**, where "username" is the user account currently logged in.

3 Right-click in the window, and click **Properties**. Or, without a file selected, click **File** ▶ **Properties**.

4 Click the **Permissions** tab.

5 Disable the permissions in the **Group** and **Others** rows.

6 Enable the **Apply permissions to folder and all subfolders** check box to apply the same permissions to all folders in the **Home** folder.

7 Click **OK**.

Disabling sharing of the **Home** folder means that other users cannot see the folder. However, other users still have access to folders and files at lower levels if they know the path name, which is a UNIX functionality.

To disable sharing on a network, sharing must also be disabled at the network level. See "Enabling network folder sharing on your local system" on page 181.

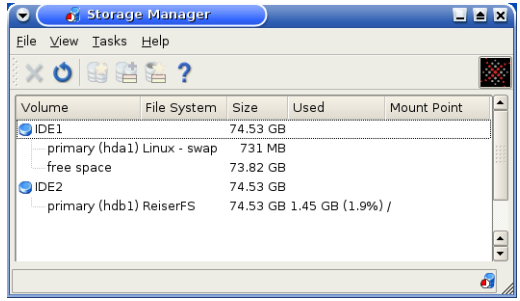
Managing partitions and disks

With Xandros Storage Manager, you view, format, and manage hard disks, partitions, and logical volumes on the computer. You use this application for two reasons. First, when you add a hard disk, you partition and format that hard disk for use. Second, you can pool space on multiple hard disks to create a larger space. For example, if you have a disk of 10 GB used for a file server and add a disk of 40 GB, you can pool the memory to 50 GB.

Xandros Desktop supports logical volume management (LVM), which allows you to add new hard drives or replace them and have them detected automatically. With LVM, you can pool space of multiple disks. Without LVM, you can pool space on a single disk. By default Xandros Desktop is installed into the root partition / and a swap partition, as required for LVM.

Understanding storage

Hard disks, partitions, volume groups, logical volumes, file systems, size, space used, and mount points can be viewed and/or managed in Xandros Storage Manager. This section explains each of these elements.


Storage Manager
File View Tasks Help
Volume File System Size Used Mount Point
IDE1 74.53 GB
primary (hda1) Linux - swap 731 MB
free space 73.82 GB
IDE2 74.53 GB
primary (hdb1) ReiserFS 74.53 GB 1.45 GB (1.9%) /

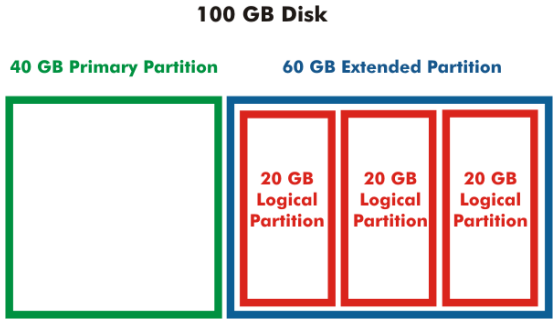
Two hard disks, with one operating system and a swap partition

Hard disks

Hard disks are indicated by type and number. Types include integrated drive electronics (IDE) disks associated with desktop and laptop computers, serial advanced technology attachment (SATA) disks that are faster than IDE, and small computer system interface (SCSI) disks associated with high-end desktop computers and servers. You can mix types on the same computer, and multiple SCSI or IDE disks can be used to create a redundant array of independent disks (RAID) where data is stored on multiple hard disks, which appear on the system as a single disk. RAID helps to protect data and improves performance. In terms of naming conventions, the first IDE hard disk on the computer is referred to as IDE1. A SCSI disk is indicated as SCSI. In the example shown, the hard disks are labelled as IDE1 and IDE2.

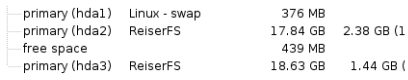
Partitions

There are three types of partitions: primary, extended, and logical. The first partition often is a primary partition from which the computer boots. There can be up to four primary partitions, for example when you have a multi-OS computer, or there can be three primary partitions and one extended partition. An extended partition contains any remaining partitions, which are called logical partitions. For example, with a 100 GB disk you can have a 40 GB primary partition, then a 60 GB extended partition that is divided into three 20 GB logical partitions. In this case, three logical partitions were created, which are not bootable. The operating system is contained in the primary partition, which is bootable. User files can be placed in any of the partitions. Please note that a logical partition is not the same thing as a logical volume (explained later).



Primary, extended, and logical partitions

To illustrate use, the operating system is on the primary partition, the path /home/xandrosuser1 can be one logical partition, and /home/xandrosuser2 can be another logical partition. The space allocated to each partition can be managed separately, but you cannot resize a partition.


primary (hda1) Linux - swap 376 MB
primary (hda2) ReiserFS 17.84 GB 2.38 GB (1
free space 439 MB
primary (hda3) ReiserFS 18.63 GB 1.44 GB (

Disk naming conventions include disk and partition information. In Linux, primary and extended partitions for an IDE disk are numbered hda1, hda2, hda3, and hda4 and logical partitions are numbered hda5 and up. For example, hdb3 refers to partition 3 on the second IDE disk ("hd" and "b"). In the example shown, hda1 is partition 1 or the first hard disk, hda2 is partition 2 on the first hard disk, and hda3 is also a partition on the first hard disk. In this case, hda3 contains Xandros Server and hda2 contains Xandros Desktop. For a SCSI disk, the format is sda1, sda2, sdb1, and so on. For RAID configurations, the convention is hde, hdf, hdg, and hdh, or hdi, hdj, hdk, and hdl, depending on how the hard disks are attached.

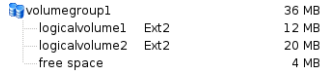
In the example shown, the smaller partition is a swap partition of 376 MB. It is a primary partition, but does not have to be.

You can add, format, group, and delete partitions.

Volume groups and logical volumes

You can create groups, then partitions in these groups. The groups are called volume groups and the partitions are called logical volumes. This lets you combine space of multiple disks, for example two hard disks in order to create a larger space. For example, you combine a 20 GB disk with a 10 GB disk to obtain a block of 30 GB.

You can create volume groups and logical volumes with free space, and you can bundle primary and logical partitions to create volume groups. They can be given user friendly names, such as proxyserver1 instead of sda1 or hda1. A volume group can include multiple file system types. In the example shown, free space was taken to create a volume group. It has two logical volumes, and there is free space remaining.



Volume group with two partitions called logical volumes

A logical partition differs from a logical volume. A logical partition is part of an extended partition, while a logical volume is part of a volume group. The space of a logical partition cannot be split and used over multiple hard disks, while the space of logical volume can be split and used over multiple hard disks such that it creates a larger space.

When you have a volume group and add a hard disk, you do not need to move user folders to the new hard disk. Instead, you can add the hard disk to the volume group and expand the logical volumes. You create a logical volume, designate a file system for it, mount it, then use it.

Xandros Desktop lets you view volume groups and logical volumes, add them, and remove them.

File systems

Types of file systems include:

- Linux-swap — Smaller partition used for temporary storage to improve performance on Linux-based systems. When there is more than one Xandros OS installed on a computer, they share a single swap partition.
- ReiserFS — Default file system for Xandros OS; generally better performance than Ext2 or Ext3 in terms of disk space use, access, and crash recovery
- Reiser4 — The latest version of the Reiser file system. Fastest file system, more space efficient. Faster copying speed than ReiserFS and Ext3.
- Ext2 and Ext3 — Extended file system (Ext), versions 2 and 3, used in Linux. Alternatives to the Reiser file systems.

- FAT and FAT32 — File allocation table (FAT) file system associated with Windows 3.x and 95. FAT32, for 32-bit computers, was introduced with Windows 95 and 98.
- NTFS — NT file system associated with Windows NT, 2000, XP, and 2003 Server. Newer than Fat and Fat32.

The ReiserFS file system is the standard and recommended file system for Xandros products. You can have multiple types of file systems in a volume group, for example Ext2 and ReiserFS file systems can be in the same group.

Xandros Desktop lets you view the file system types. To change the file system type, you unmount a partition then mount it.

Size and space used

The size of the disk or partition and amount of space used is provided.

Mount point

The mount point indicates where the files are located. A single slash of / indicates the root level. Primary partitions, logical partitions, and logical volumes can be mounted and unmounted, but you cannot unmount a primary partition that is at root level or a swap partition. Normally, Xandros Desktop is installed at the root level of /

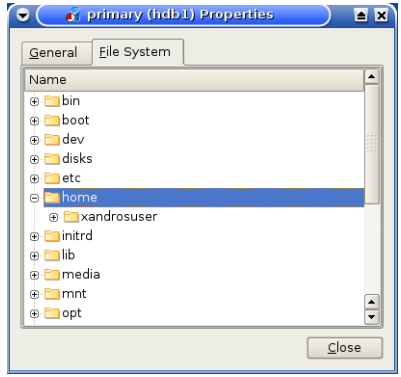
Xandros Desktop lets you view mount points, mount partitions and logical volumes, and unmount them. When you unmount a partition, it means that the data on that partition can be written over. You can change the type of file system used for a partition by unmounting the partition, then mounting it again.

Browsing files contained in a partition

You can easily see which files and folders are contained in a partition.

To browse files contained in a partition

1. Click **Launch** ▶ **Applications** ▶ **System** ▶ **Administrator Tools** ▶ **Xandros Storage Manager**.
2. Type the Administrator password, and click **OK**.
3. Right-click the partition, for example hda2 or hda3, and select **Properties**. The partition must be mounted. A Properties window opens.
4. Click the **File System** tab.
5. Click into the required folder, for example the **home** folder to view user files. You cannot open the files.



Browsing files in a partition

Managing disks and partitions

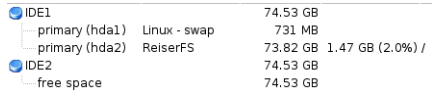
You can add disks and partitions. You add a partition to free space, not to existing partitions.

To add a hard disk

1 Shut down the computer and disconnect the power cord.

2 Install the hard disk.

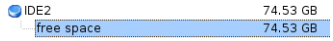
3 Reconnect the power cord and turn on the computer. Detection of the disk is automatic in Xandros Desktop, and the new disk appears in Xandros Storage Manager component. In the example shown, a new hard disk IDE2 has just been installed. It has no partitions, and all of its space is free. It is an 80 GB disk, but all 80 GB are never available. To use that disk, you add a partition.



New hard disk IDE2

To add a partition

1 Right-click a free space entry and select **Add Partition**. If there is no free space entry, unmount an existing partition or logical volume then delete it, or delete a partition or logical volume. (You cannot unmount and delete a partition that contains the current operating system, for example the root-level partition mounted at /) If the **Add Partition** option does not appear when you right-click a free space entry, it means that the maximum number of primary and extended partitions is already being used.



Creating a partition with free space

2 In the wizard, identify the type of partition and file system:

Partition type — The partition type selectable here depends on the location of the free space. If you are creating a partition within an extended partition, you are creating a **Logical** partition. Otherwise, you can create a **Primary** or **Extended** partition, where up to four primary or three primary and one extended partitions are possible. See "Partitions" on page 122 for an explanation of partition types.

File system type — Select the type of file system for the partition from the drop-down list. The default and recommended system is **ReiserFS**. See "File systems" on page 123 for a description of each type.

A partition is automatically formatted for use. If you do not want to format it, enable the **Do not format** check box.

Click **Next** to continue in the wizard.

3 In the Enter Start Point and Size window, specify the values:

Start point offset — The partition is created at the first available space on the hard disk unless you specify a location here

Size — Specify the size of the new partition in MB, where the maximum available is used by default

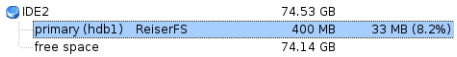
Click **Next** to continue in the wizard.

4 If the Choose Mount Point window appears, specify the folder where the partition will reside. You can click into the various files to select one or type a name to create a new one. If the partition is for a user, you can click into the home folder, for example.

For the **Do not mount** option, there are two reasons to enable this option: if you intend to bundle the partition with other partitions or logical volumes, or if you do not want the space to be accessible yet to users, in which case you can mount it later.

Click **Next** to continue in the wizard.

5 Click **Finish**. The partition is created.



New partition

To delete a partition

1 For a mounted partition, right-click it, select **Unmount**, and confirm that you want to unmount the partition. You cannot unmount and delete a root-level partition that contains the current operating system. You cannot delete a Linux swap partition being used.

2 Right-click the partition, select **Delete**, and confirm that you want to delete the partition.

If you cannot delete a partition, you can do so in the installation wizard using the installation CD.

Managing volume groups and logical volumes

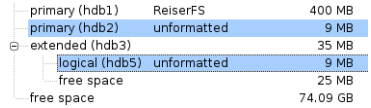
You can bundle primary and logical partitions into volume groups. You do so when you want to combine space in order to create a larger space. For example, you can combine a 20 GB hard disk with a 10 GB hard disk to obtain a block of 30 GB. You can create and remove these volume groups.

In a volume group, the partitions are called logical volumes. You create a volume group, then add logical volumes to it.

When adding a volume group or logical volume, the computer does not need to be restarted.

To create a volume group

1 Select one or more primary and/or logical partition, for example using the **Ctrl** key. They must be unmounted in order to be added to a volume group. They can be located on different hard disks.


primary (hdb1) ReiserFS 400 MB
primary (hdb2) unformatted 9 MB
extended (hdb3) 35 MB
logical (hdb5) unformatted 9 MB
free space 25 MB
free space 74.09 GB

Using unmounted primary and logical partitions to create a volume group

2 Right-click and select **Create Volume Group**. The Create Volume Group window appears.

3 Configure the group:

Volume group name — Type a name for the group, for example WebServer or VolumeGroup1.

Physical extent — A multiplier for disk space, in MB. All logical volumes are multiples of this size. When specifying the sizes of logical volumes, they are created to nearest multiple. For example, if you use a physical extent of 4, then create a logical volume of 399 MB, the size of the volume is rounded up or down to the nearest multiple of 4, in this case to 400 MB. If you were creating a logical volume of 399 MB when only 399 MB of free

space is available, then the size of the volume is rounded down to 396 MB. The default value is 4 MB, which is the lowest multiple possible and which provides the most flexibility for logical volume size, and it increments by 4 MB, so valid values are 4, 8, 16, and so on. The higher the value, the faster the disk access for users. Xandros recommends using the default value of 4.

4 Click **OK**. The volume group is created and appears in the list. The partitions included are marked as LVM. Next, create a logical volume.

primary (hdb1) ReiserFS 400 MB
primary (hdb2) LVM: WebServer 9 MB
extended (hdb3) 35 MB
logical (hdb5) LVM: WebServer 9 MB
free space 25 MB
free space 74.09 GB
WebServer 16 MB
free space 16 MB

Volume group called WebServer

To create a logical volume

1 In a volume group, right-click the free space entry and select **Add Logical Volume**. The Add Logical Volume Wizard appears.

2 Enter the attributes of the logical volume:

Name of logical volume — Type a name for the logical volume, such as logicalvolume1

Size — Specify the size in MB of the logical volume

File system type — Select the type of file system for the logical volume from the drop-down list. The default and recommended system is **ReiserFS**. See "File systems" on page 123 for a description of each type.

Click **Next** to continue in the wizard.

3 In the Choose Mount Point window, specify the folder where the logical volume will reside. You can click into the various files to select one or type a name to create a new one.

For the **Do not mount** option, there are two reasons to enabled this option: if you intend to bundle the logical volume with other logical volumes or do not want the space to be accessible yet, in which case you can mount it later.

Click **Next** to continue in the wizard.

4 Click **Finish**. The logical volume is created and added to the volume group.

To delete a logical volume

1. If mounted, right-click the logical volume, select **Unmount**, and confirm that you want to unmount it.
2. Right-click the logical volume, select **Delete**, and confirm that you want to delete it.

If you cannot delete a partition, you can do so in the installation wizard using the installation CD.

To delete a volume group

1. Unmount and delete all logical volumes in the group.
2. Right-click the volume group and select **Remove Volume Group**.
3. Confirm the deletion.

Formatting a partition or logical volume

You format a partition or logical volume to erase the data on it, use another file system for it, or to eliminate a virus, for example.

To delete all files on a disk that contains the Xandros Desktop operating system and its Linux-swap partition, you instead uninstall Xandros Desktop with the installation disk. See “Uninstalling Xandros Desktop” on page 378.

To format a partition or logical volume

1. If the partition or logical volume is mounted, unmount it.
2. Right-click the partition or logical volume and select **Format**. You can only format a partition that is unmounted.
3. Confirm the format. A format window appears.
4. From the drop-down list, select the type of file system for the partition or logical volume. See “File systems” on page 123 for a description of each type.
5. Click **OK**. The partition or logical volume is formatted and the file system type appears in the main window.

When you format a partition or logical volume, all data on the partition is erased.

Mounting and unmounting a partition or logical volume

You can mount and unmount primary partitions, logical partitions, and logical volumes. You cannot unmount a primary partition that is a swap partition. When you mount a partition, you specify its location, for example /home. When you unmount a partition, it means that the data on the partition can be overwritten. Unmounting and remounting a partition allows you to change its file type.

To mount a partition or logical volume

1. Right-click the partition or logical volume and select **Mount**. The Set Mount Point window appears.
2. Click into the various files to select one or type a name to create a new one. If the partition is for a user, you can click into the home folder, for example.
3. Click **OK**. The partition or logical volume is mounted and the mount point appears in the window.

To unmount a partition or logical volume

1. Right-click the partition or logical volume and select **Unmount**. You cannot unmount a primary partition that contains the current operating system or its swap partition.
2. Confirm that you want to unmount the partition.

Scanning and removing viruses

Xandros Desktop includes an anti-virus application. It allows you to scan for viruses, worms, and trojans and to remove infected files.

A virus is an executable program that replicates. Upon execution, it can render files and hard disks unusable, consume memory, slow computer performance, enable others to control your computer, or cause other damage. A virus can be transferred to a computer in an e-mail attachment, with a downloaded file, or from a disk. It can be distributed across a network to other computers. Execution can be immediate or delayed, and thereby the virus can spread before being activated by a date, by launching the applicable program, or other means.

A worm is a virus located in the computer memory. It does not change files, but it replicates and slows the computer by using resources such as memory. It can also infect other computers.

A trojan is similar to a virus, but does not replicate or affect other computers. It appears to be a legitimate program but is not. The effects can be the same as a virus, such as providing others with access to the computer.

There are two ways to scan for viruses. First, you can manually invoke a scan. Second, the application can scan at specified intervals. The application is set by default to scan daily at midnight, and this interval can be changed. If you schedule a scan and the computer is not on at the scheduled time, the scan does not take place. Because a scan can take more than an hour depending on your system and because performance can slow, you can have a scan performed when you are away from your computer and/or exclude large file types, such as ISO, PS, and SYS.

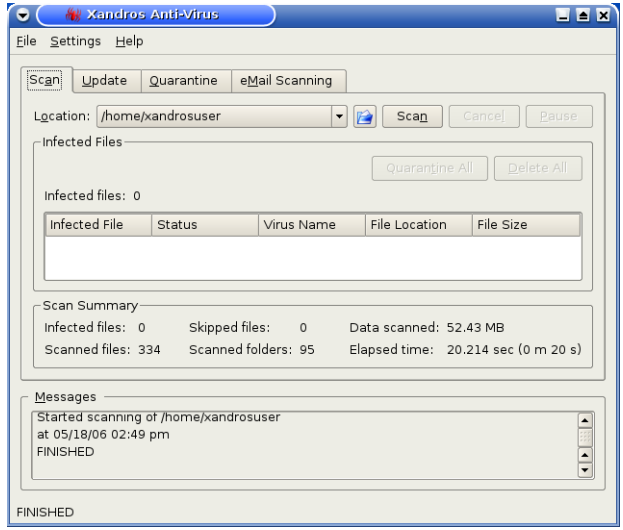
You can set the action taken when an infected file is found. By default, you manually quarantine or delete the file. When you quarantine a file, you move it away from other files so that the other files will not be affected. When you delete the file, it is removed completely from the computer.

Because new viruses appear regularly, the anti-virus definitions need to be updated. The application is set by default to check daily at midnight for new definitions, and this interval can be changed. The computer must be on and connected to the Internet in order for a scheduled update to occur. You can also manually invoke an update.

You can view results of scans and updates in logs and set other defaults.

At this time, the application does not scan e-mail for infected attachments, but you have the option of saving an attachment then scanning. It does not run automatically in real-time; a scan must be invoked.

Files that are on mounted network file systems (either in Windows domains or because you mounted them) are scanned.


Xandros Anti-Virus
File Settings Help
Scan Update Quarantine eMail Scanning
Location: /home/xandrosuser
Scan Cancel Pause
Infected Files
Quarantine All Delete All
Infected files: 0
Infected File Status Virus Name File Location File Size
Scan Summary
Infected files: 0 Skipped files: 0 Data scanned: 52.43 MB
Scanned files: 334 Scanned folders: 95 Elapsed time: 20.214 sec (0 m 20 s)
Messages
Started scanning of /home/xandrosuser
at 05/18/06 02:49 pm
FINISHED
FINISHED

Scan completed

To manually update virus definitions

1 Click **Launch ▶ Applications ▶ System ▶ Security ▶ Xandros Anti-Virus**.

2 While connected to the Internet, click the **Update** tab.

3 Click **Update**. Any new definitions are retrieved and a message is displayed that your database is up-to-date.

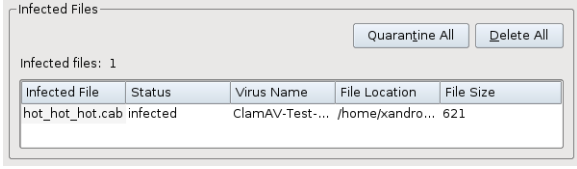
To manually scan and remove viruses

1 Click **Launch ▶ Applications ▶ System ▶ Security ▶ Xandros Anti-Virus**.

2 When using the application for the first time, update the virus definitions as outlined in the previous procedure.

3 In the **Scan** tab, click **Scan**. The files in the folder specified are scanned for viruses. By default, your user files are scanned, as indicated by the **Location** of **/home/username**, where "username" is the account logged in. Encrypted folders can be scanned. If you have a Windows partition, you can scan it for Windows viruses.

It can take several minutes for some files to be scanned, so if the application appears to be hanging, wait for 15 minutes or so. An entire scan can take 90 minutes for 9 GB, for example. Files such as ZIP and tar are also scanned. (You can specify file types and folders to exclude.) If there is a folder mounted from another computer, for example a SharedDocuments directory on a Windows computer, this directory is also scanned.



Virus found

4 When infected files are found, they are listed in the upper portion of the window. You can click **Quarantine All** to move them out of your directories, click **Delete All** to delete them from the computer, or they can be automatically quarantined or deleted, depending on configuration. The default is that you manually quarantine or delete infected files. You can quarantine and delete files for which you have the required permission; the Administrator can quarantine and delete any files. If, as Administrator, you quarantine or delete a user's infected files, those files will disappear from the user's account without warning to the user. At this time, the files cannot be disinfected, that is, recovered within the application.

Anti-virus software is only one means of security. Hardware/software firewall combinations can also be used, such as the Xandros Firewall Wizard and the Xandros Security Suite.

To view quarantined files

- Click the **Quarantine** tab.

To set the automatic scan and update intervals

1. Click **Settings** ▶ **Configure Xandros Anti-Virus**.
2. Click the **Scheduled Tasks** tab.
3. With the **Automatically Scan for Viruses** check box enabled (default), set the interval (every day or on a specific day of the week) and time to perform a scan. If you schedule a scan and the computer is not on at that time, the scan does not take place.
4. To update the virus definitions, with the **Automatically Update Virus Definitions** check box enabled (default), set the interval (every day or on a specific day of the week) and time to update. The computer needs to be connected to the Internet for the updates to take place.
5. Click **OK** to exit from the window.

To set behavior when a virus is found

1. Click **Settings** ▶ **Configure Xandros Anti-Virus**.
2. In the **General** tab, select one of the following options:
   - **Manual removal and/or quarantine** — When a virus is found, the infected file is listed but no action is performed on it until you click the **Quarantine All** or **Delete All** button. This is the default option. If the virus remains on the computer without being quarantined, it can be infecting other files or computers without your knowledge.
   - **Automatically delete** — When a virus is found, delete the infected file automatically from the computer. When you delete the file from the computer, you lose whatever contents the file contains.
   - **Automatically quarantine** — When a virus is found, move the infected file automatically to the quarantine area away from other files so that other files are not infected.
3. Click **OK** to exit from the window.

To specify the types of files to scan

1. Click **Settings** ▶ **Configure Xandros Anti-Virus**.
2. Click the **Filters** tab.
3. To exclude certain file types from a scan, list them in the **Exclude matching extensions** box. Large files, such as ISO, PS, or SYS files, can take a long time to be scanned, so you may want to exclude them from a scan. Use a space between entries, such as `.iso .ps .sys`
4. To scan only certain file types, specify them in the **Scan only matching extensions** box. Use a space between entries, such as `.doc .exe`

5 To include or exclude folders from a scan, specify them at the bottom of the window.

6 Click **OK** to exit from the window.

To set other configuration

1 Click **Settings ▶ Configure Xandros Anti-Virus**.

2 Set the required options, including:

- **Automatic startup** — When enabled (default), after being launched the first time, the application launches on login and remains active until closed on the Panel. When disabled, you manually start the application from the Launch menu.
- **Recursively scan folders** — When enabled (default), scan all files at or below the level specified, including in all subfolders. When disabled, scan only the files in the folder specified.
- **Show file permission errors** — When enabled (default), show error messages, such as empty files, in the Messages area of the window. When disabled, show that a scan is in progress but no error messages.
- To set limits on compressed/zipped files that are scanned, use the **Archives** tab.
- To turn off notification on the Panel, access the **Reports** tab and disable the **Display pop-up notification messages in system tray** check box.

3 Click **OK** to exit from the window.

To view report logs

1 Click **Settings ▶ Xandros Configure Anti-Virus**.

2 Click the **Reports** tab.

3 Click the appropriate **View** button to see the scan log or the update log.

4 Note that you can change the default log locations and maximum size in the **Reports** tab.

5 Click **OK** to exit from the window.

Using Xandros Security Suite

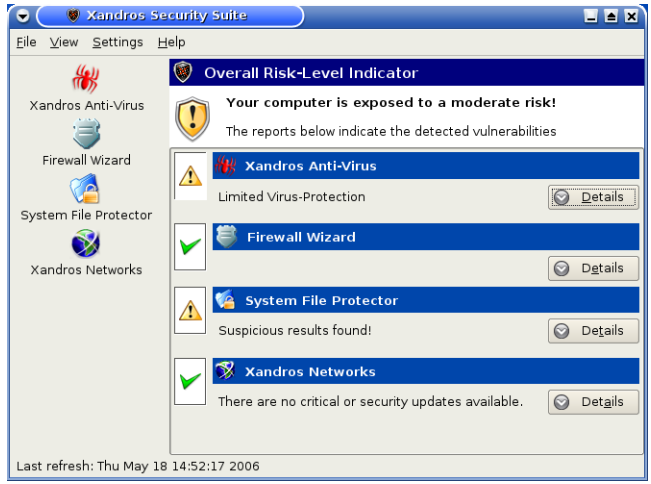
Xandros Security Suite provides a single interface to view security issues. It assesses risk and identifies issues in four areas: anti-virus protection, firewall, spyware, and critical or security updates available in Xandros Networks.

To perform a security scan

1 Launch Xandros Security Suite by clicking **Launch** ▶ **Applications** ▶ **System** ▶ **Security** ▶ **Xandros Security Suite**. Issues are identified, for example when the anti-virus application is not running, the high risk is indicated.

2 When a risk is identified, click the **Xandros Security Suite** icon on the Panel. The application window is launched.

3 Click **Details** for information on how to increase security.



Xandros Security Suite

Managing monitor power

You can set your computer monitor to save energy or power down when no activity is detected:

- Standby — The monitor saves a minor amount of energy and returns to full operation by moving the mouse
- Suspend — The monitor uses a low amount of energy and returns to full operation about 10 seconds after moving the mouse
- Power off — Shuts down monitor

To set monitor power management options

1. Click **Launch** ▶ **Control Center**.
2. Click **Power Management**, then **Power Control**.
3. Enable the **Enable display power management** check box.
4. Click and move the **Standby after** slider to specify the interval after which the computer powers down to standby mode.
5. Click and move the **Suspend after** slider to specify the interval after which the computer suspends any processes running.
6. Click and move the **Power off after** slider to specify the interval after which the monitor shuts down.
7. Click **Apply**.

These settings do not apply to all monitors and monitor behavior can vary.

To reactivate the monitor

- Move the mouse.

You can also manage laptop computer battery power using the **Laptop Battery** panel in the Control Center.

Monitoring system processes and performance

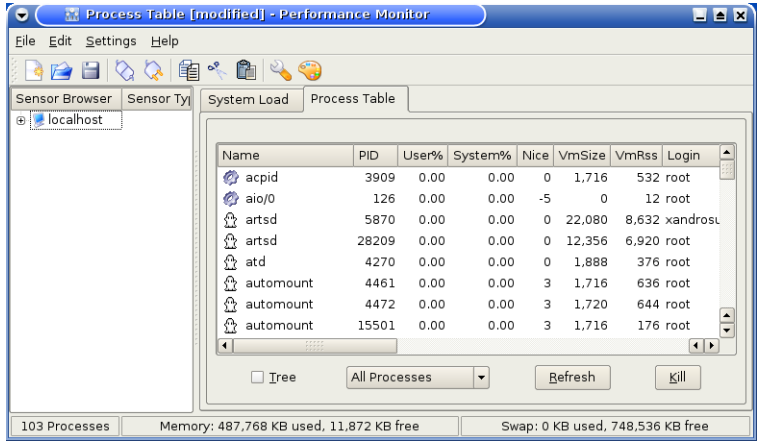
Xandros Desktop tracks all programs running on the operating system. You access information about these processes using the Performance Monitor, which displays a list with information about each process, including its unique ID number, the user that invoked it, the time that it has been running, and the amount of memory that it is using. You can sort processes and filter them to display only certain processes. When you refresh the process list, the Performance Monitor displays new processes and removes processes that are no longer running.

In general, the user who invoked a process is the owner of that process and can abort it. The Administrator can abort any system process.

The Performance Monitor also displays information about the operating system's overall performance. The CPU Load meter displays the overall processor load. The Memory meters display the total memory used by the operating system and gives a breakdown of the memory usage by program, buffer, cache, and swap memory. The view is customizable.

Viewing, sorting, and stopping system processes

You can view all processes running on the operating system. By default, the Performance Monitor displays all processes in a list. You can also display processes in a tree format, which displays the relationship between processes. You can sort system processes according to attributes, such as memory, user ID, or process name.


Process Table [modified] - Performance Monitor
File Edit Settings Help
Sensor Browser
Sensor Ty
localhost
System Load
Process Table
Name PID User% System% Nice VmSize VmRss Login
acpid 3909 0.00 0.00 0 1,716 532 root
aio/0 126 0.00 0.00 -5 0 12 root
artsd 5870 0.00 0.00 0 22,080 8,632 xandrosu
artsd 28209 0.00 0.00 0 12,356 6,920 root
atd 4270 0.00 0.00 0 1,888 376 root
automount 4461 0.00 0.00 3 1,716 636 root
automount 4472 0.00 0.00 3 1,720 644 root
automount 15501 0.00 0.00 3 1,716 176 root
Tree
All Processes
Refresh
Kill
103 Processes
Memory: 487,768 KB used, 11,872 KB free
Swap: 0 KB used, 748,536 KB free

Viewing system processes with the Performance Monitor

To display system processes in a folder tree format

1 Click **Launch** ▶ **Applications** ▶ **System** ▶ **Performance Monitor**.

2 Click the **Process Table** tab.

3 Enable the **Tree** check box.

To sort the system processes list

- In the **Process Table** tab, click the column header for the attribute by which you want to sort, for example **Name** of process, **Login** for users, or **VmSize** for memory consumed.

To filter processes

- In the **Process Table** tab, select one of the following filter types from the drop-down list:
  - **All Processes** — Displays all processes that are running on the operating system
  - **System Processes** — Displays the system processes
  - **User Processes** — Displays the processes you are running
  - **Own Processes** — Displays the processes you are running with your User ID

To refresh the process list

- In the **Process Table** tab, click **Refresh**.

To terminate a process

1 In the **Process Table** tab, select the process(es) you want to stop. To deselect processes, right-click and select **Unselect All Processes**.

2 Click **Kill** and confirm it.

You can also terminate an application by pressing **Ctrl+Alt+Esc**, then clicking the window of the application.

As a regular user, you can stop only the processes that you own. The Administrator can stop any process.

Monitoring system performance

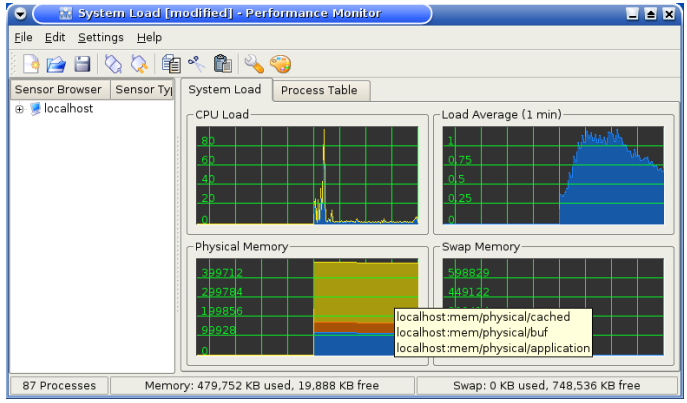
The Performance Monitor lets you monitor the overall performance of the operating system. You can customize the display.

To monitor CPU load performance

1. Click **Launch** ▶ **Applications** ▶ **System** ▶ **Performance Monitor**.
2. Click the **System Load** tab. The information will start scrolling in a few seconds. The color coding is indicated with the tool tip (as shown). You can also right-click, select **Properties**, then **Sensors** to view the color coding.

To monitor memory usage performance

1. Click **Launch** ▶ **Applications** ▶ **System** ▶ **Performance Monitor**.
2. Click the **System Load** tab. Depending on the display settings, Physical Memory is shown by cache, buffer, and applications. You can also right-click, select **Properties**, then **Sensors** to view the color coding.



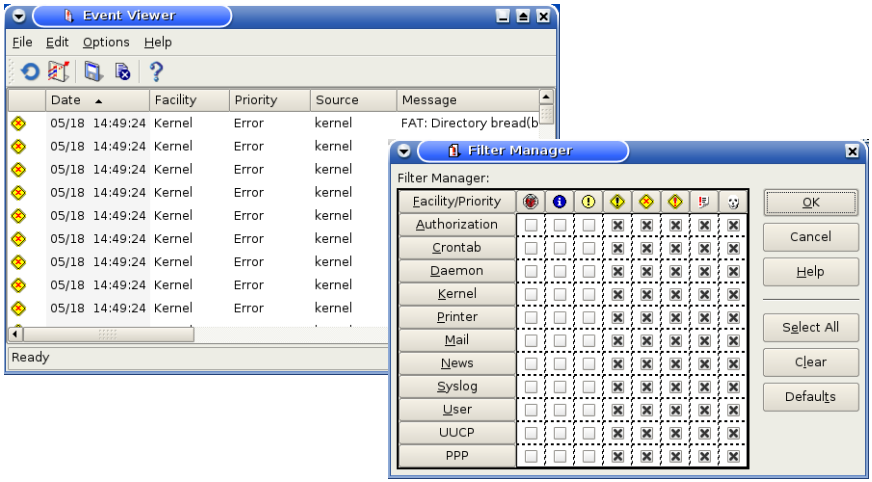
Viewing system load with the Performance Monitor

To change the display

1. In the **System Load** tab, view the processes available for monitoring by expanding the lists displayed in the left side of the window (for example, click the **+** button of **localhost** and its subdirectories).
2. Right-click on a display that you want to replace, click **Remove Display**, and confirm the deletion.
3. Drag the new process into the blank display area. You can be prompted to select the type of display:
   - **Signal Plotter** — Displays values over time
   - **Multimeter** — Displays values as a digital meter
   - **BarGraph** — Displays values as a moving bar
   - **SensorLogger** — Lets you store values in a file

Monitoring system activities

Using the Event Viewer, you can view a log of system activity. For example, when you are required to enter the Administrator password for a task and the password is incorrect, this error is logged. You can specify the log entries to view, and they are available for the following facilities: Authorization, Crontab, Daemon, Kernel, Printer, Mail, News, Syslog, User, UUCP, and PPP. Crontab refers to a command that creates a list of commands to run at specified times. A daemon is a program that runs continuously in the background. UUCP refers to the UNIX-to-UNIX copy protocol, which is used to copy and send files. PPP refers to point-to-point protocol, such as Internet use from a server to your computer.



Viewing system events (left) and setting which events to view (right)

You can organize the way log entries display by sorting or changing the viewing options. Refreshing the list lets you view the most current entries. You can clear log file entries or save them. You can specify that the Event Viewer overwrite events if the event reoccurs after a specified date.

Viewing the log

You can specify the system facilities for which you want to view the log and set the priority level. System activities are prioritized according to how the activity affects a system facility. For example, a log entry with an Information priority level indicates only that a system activity has occurred, while a log entry with an Emergency priority level indicates that the system activity is adversely affecting the facility. By default, Event Viewer displays entries for system activity with the following priority levels: Warning, Error, Critical, Alert, and Emergency. You can add Debug, Information, and Notice categories.

To select log entries to view

1 Click **Launch** ▶ **Applications** ▶ **System** ▶ **Event Viewer**.

2 Click **Options** ▶ **Select Filters**.

3 For each system facility listed, enable the check box for each priority level for which you want to view log information. To enable all check boxes in a row, click a **Facility/Priority** row header. To enable all check boxes in a column, click a column header. To select all priority levels, click **Select All**. The options are:

- **Warning** — System messages, such as the processor detected in the computer. It is normal to see a lot of warnings. No action is required. Example: a process did not exit.
- **Error** — System errors, such as being unable to connect to an LDAP server. May or may not require action. Example: headers end prematurely.
- **Critical** — Critical system issues, such as the e-mail system not running. May or may not require action. Example: failed to get a socket.
- **Alert** — System integrity issues that require immediate attention. Example: user name not recognized.
- **Emergency** — System instabilities that require immediate attention because the system is unusable. The system cannot be used. Example: a locked file cannot be opened.
- **Debug** — System messages to help with issues. Example: configuration file being opened.
- **Information** — Routine system messages, such as a restart. It is normal to see a lot of information items. No action is required. Example: server busy.
- **Notice** — System messages, such as the Linux version detected, amount of memory detected, and checking file systems. No action is required.

4 Click **OK** to exit from the window.

To return the default settings, click **Defaults**.

Changing log viewing options

By default the log displays information in the following order: date, facility affected, priority level of the event, source, and a message describing the event. You can change the order in which this information displays.

To change the column order of the log list

- In Event Viewer, select and drag a column header to its new position.

Sorting log entries

You can sort the log entries according to date, facility, priority, source, or message, in either descending or ascending order. By default, log entries are sorted by date and time, starting with the most recent activity.

To sort the log

1. Click **Launch ▶ Applications ▶ System ▶ Event Viewer.**
2. The current sorting criteria is shown with an arrow, either upward or downward for ascending or descending order. Click one of the following column headers:
   - **Date** — Sorts the entries chronologically (default)
   - **Facility** — Sorts the entries alphabetically according to system facility
   - **Priority** — Sorts the entries in order of urgency
   - **Source** — Sorts the entries alphabetically by source
   - **Message** — Sorts the entries alphabetically according to the log description

Refreshing the log

Entries are added automatically when they occur, and you can manually refresh the log.

To refresh the log

- In Event Viewer, click **Edit ▶ Refresh**.

Clearing the log

Clearing the log deletes all log entries from the system and from the viewing list.

To clear the log

1. In Event Viewer, click **Edit ▶ Clear All Log Files**.
2. Click **Yes** to confirm the clear.

Saving the log

You can save the log in a local or system folder. Saving it ensures that the entries are not deleted if the log is cleared.

To save a log

1. In Event Viewer, click **File** ▶ **Save Filtered Log File**.
2. Navigate to the folder in which you want to save the file.
3. In the **File name** box, type a name for the file.
4. Click **Save** and indicate if the file entries are to be separated by tabs or commas.
5. Click **OK** to close the confirmation window.

Overwriting the log

You can set Event Viewer to overwrite entries that are older than a specified date, which prevents the list from becoming unmanageable. You can also specify that log entries are never overwritten; when an event or system activity reoccurs, all instances of it are displayed in the log. The default is to overwrite entries older than five days.

To overwrite the log

1. In Event Viewer, click **Options** ▶ **Log Dates**.
2. With the **Overwrite events older than** option enabled, type a number to specify the number of days after which a log event is overwritten by the most recent event.
3. Click **OK** to exit from the window.

To display all log entries

1. In Event Viewer, click **Options** ▶ **Log Dates**.
2. Enable the **Do not overwrite events** option.
3. Click **OK** to exit from the window.

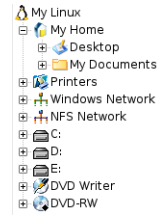
Using Xandros Networks for updates and new applications

Xandros Networks is an application that connects to servers over the Internet. It allows you to obtain security patches, critical updates, general updates, and new applications for Xandros Desktop. Applications can be removed using Xandros Networks. Xandros recommends that you regularly check for updates. For more information, see "Downloading updates and applications" on page 69.

7 Managing files

Xandros File Manager lets you display and navigate through the folders and files on your computer and on remote file systems, including a Linux Network File System (NFS), Microsoft Windows network, FTP site, and the Internet. You can also access files and folders on floppy disks, CDs, USB memory keys, Zip drives, and tape drives, for example.

There are some differences between managing files in Microsoft Windows and managing files in Xandros Desktop. Features of Xandros Desktop to note are:



- Linux users can access different types of file systems, including Microsoft Windows and UNIX systems across a network
- Linux displays Windows drives such as **A:** or **C:** as is and other devices by name, for example **DVD-RW** for a readable/writable DVD drive
- File names and folder names are case sensitive, whether you use them in the command line interface (console window) or Xandros File Manager. For example, Xandros Desktop recognizes File, file, and FILE as three different files.

The top level of the folder tree is called the root, or home, folder and is denoted by the slash (/) key. All other folders are below (or within) the root folder.

You can open files from Xandros File Manager. You can edit MIME types so that Xandros Desktop knows what application to use to open a file.

You can share the files on your local file system with remote Microsoft Windows and Linux users. For more information, see “Accessing Windows and Linux file systems” on page 164.

In Xandros File Manager, you can perform a variety of operations on the files and folders, including selecting, moving, copying, renaming, sorting, and viewing properties. You can search for files, folders, and network computers.

Xandros File Manager has browser and FTP capabilities that let you navigate the folders and files on your local file system and the folders of FTP sites. For more information about using Xandros File Manager as a browser, see “Browsing the World Wide Web” on page 201. For more information about using Xandros File Manager to work with files using FTP, see “Transferring files using FTP” on page 203.

Because file security is a built-in feature of Xandros Desktop, a regular user has access to their own folders and files, while the Administrator has unlimited access to all user folders and files, unless a user’s home folder is encrypted. In general, regular users have limited access to configuration files and program files. When you change system configuration options like hardware settings and passwords, you provide the Administrator password. The Administrator can also give or restrict user access to applications or user folders and files. For more information, see “Setting file and folder permissions and sharing” on page 118.

Moving from Windows Explorer to Xandros File Manager

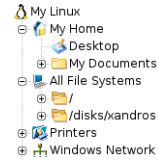
The following table lists features and tasks that are similar between Windows Explorer and Xandros File Manager.

Windows Explorer uses...	Xandros File Manager uses...
Default double-paned tree view	Default double-paned tree view
Contents list showing contents of selected folder	Name list showing contents of selected folder
Map Network Drive (a drive on a network computer can be displayed on your local drive)	Mount Network Share (a folder on a network computer can be displayed in your local file system)
Network Neighborhood	Windows Network and NFS Network folders
Floppy, CD, DVD drives as C: and so on	Floppy, CD, DVD folders

Xandros File Manager lets you perform similar operations as Windows Explorer, such as moving up a level in the file system, cut, copy, paste, delete, view file properties, and switching between large and small icon views.

File system explained

Your home folder contains all the subfolders and files on the desktop and the personal files that you created or copied to the file system. If you are logged in as the Administrator (root user), your home folder is **/root**. If you are logged in as a regular user, your home folder is **/home/username**. If you are logged in as a domain user on a network, your home folder is **/home/domainname/username**. In each case, the home folder is under **My Home** in Xandros File Manager.



As outlined in the table, files that launch programs are contained in **/usr/bin** and **usr/games**, for example, which can be accessed by enabling **View ▶ Show All File Systems**.

You can add functionality to Xandros File Manager by adding plug-ins. For example, you add an XML file to a plug-in folder and the function appears in the tree structure. See the online help for Xandros File Manager for more information.

Function	Folder
User files	**/home** and **/root**
Linux kernel files	**/boot**
Configuration files	**/etc**
Program files	**/bin**, **/usr/bin**, **/usr/games**, and **/usr/local** for example
Device files	**/dev**
Temporary program files	**/tmp**
Fonts	**/usr/share/fonts** for OpenOpen.org and **/usr/lib/staroffice7/share/fonts/truetype** for StarOffice
Desktop background	**/usr/share/wallpapers**
Screen savers	**/usr/share/xscreensaver/config** and **/usr/share/applnk/System/ScreenSavers**

Accessing files in local, floppy, CD, and DVD folders

The default view in Xandros File Manager displays folders and files organized in a tree structure. The tree view lets you navigate the file system using a double-paned window that displays multiple levels of the file system at the same time. The left pane shows the parent folders available in your file system. The right pane displays the contents within the folder selected on the left.

Another viewing option is the single-paned flat view. The flat view shows only one level of the file structure at a time. It is useful when viewing Web pages in Xandros File Manager.

Files accessed can be located in several places: on the local computer; located on another computer and accessed over a Windows or Linux network; and on external devices, such as on a floppy disk, CD, DVD, or similar device. On most Linux systems, you must set up the operating system to recognize the floppy disk drive or CD drive before the system can read the contents of the floppy disk or CD, which is called mounting a device. Xandros Desktop, however, automatically detects the floppy disk drive or CD drive when you place a disk in that drive. This feature is called automount.

Some Linux system files are hidden by default. Hidden files are generally files that are critical for running operating system processes. You can view hidden files and edit them when you are logged in as the Administrator. You can view them as a user.

Viewing local folders and files

You can view a folder's subfolders and files in either the tree view, which is the default, or the flat view. In tree view, the navigation pane on the left is displayed. In flat view, there is only one pane, which is useful for Web browsing.

To view folders and files

1. Click **Launch ▶ Xandros File Manager**.
2. Click or double-click a folder to view its subfolders and files.

To switch between the tree view and flat view

- In Xandros File Manager, click **View ▶ Tree** to toggle between the two views.

To change the number of panes displayed

- Click **Window**, and select one of the of the following options:
  - **One** — Condenses Xandros File Manager into one window (flat view)
  - **One Top And Two Bottom** — Splits Xandros File Manager into one top and two bottom windows, reflecting flat or tree view
  - **Two Vertical** — Splits Xandros File Manager into two vertical windows (tree view; default)
  - **Two Horizontal** — Splits Xandros File Manager into two horizontal windows, reflecting flat or tree view
  - **Two Top And One Bottom** — Splits Xandros File Manager into two top and one bottom window, reflecting flat or tree view
  - **Four** — Splits Xandros File Manager into four windows, reflecting flat or tree view

To switch between view modes

- Click **View**, and enable one of the following options:
  - **Thumbnails** — Allows you to view the file content as thumbnail images; change the size of the images with **View ▶ Thumbnail Size**
  - **Large Icons** — Allows you to view files and folders as large icons
  - **Small Icons** — Allows you to view files and folders as small icons
  - **Detailed List** — Allows you to view files and folders in a list along with their properties, such as size, permissions, dates, and owners

You can also arrange these icons by name, size, type attributes, date, owner, and group. See “Sorting and refreshing the Xandros File Manager view” on page 156.

To toggle Web pane view in Xandros File Manager

- Click **View**, and select **View as Web Page**. The right side of the window shows as a single pane when the option is deselected.

Navigating in Xandros File Manager

In addition to navigating in Xandros File Manager by clicking through the folders or using the buttons on the tool bar, you can also use the **Address** box.

To navigate using the address box

- In the **Address** box, type the path name of the folder or file you want to access, and press **Enter**.

You can also select a path name or Web site address from the **Address** drop-down list.

Accessing files from a floppy disk, CD, or similar device

You can access folders and files on a floppy disk, CD, DVD, USB flash memory key, or similar device. You can perform the same actions on such files as you do on files on your computer or elsewhere on the network, such as opening, copying, pasting, moving, and renaming files.

Programs, such as Firefox Web Browser, that are not based on Xandros KDE do not show removable media in the file dialogs. To access CD-ROM or floppy devices using such applications you browse to the folder **/disks/Removable**.

Xandros Desktop mounts disk drives automatically. If you prefer to mount the drives manually, or if your system is slow with automount turned on, you can stop the automount feature.

To access files on a floppy disk with Xandros File Manager

1. Insert a floppy disk into the disk drive.
2. Click **Launch** ▶ **Xandros File Manager**.
3. Click the **Floppy** icon on the left side of the window. If Xandros File Manager does not display the contents of the floppy disk when you initially click the **Floppy** icon, close and reopen the **Xandros File Manager** window, and click the **Floppy** icon.

To access files on a CD or DVD with Xandros File Manager

1. Place the disc in the drive.
2. Xandros File Manager normally launches automatically. If not, click **Launch** ▶ **Xandros File Manager**.
3. Click the **CD** icon on the left side of the window (can also be called CD-RW or DVD-ROM, for example). If Xandros File Manager does not display the contents of the disc when you initially click the folder, close and reopen the **Xandros File Manager** window, and click the CD/DVD icon again.

To access files on a floppy disk or CD with an application

1. In the application, for example Firefox Web Browser, click **File** ▶ **Open** or **Open File**.
2. Navigate to **/disks/Removable**, for example through the **Filesystem** folder.
3. Continue navigating to select the file.

To eject a CD or DVD from the drive

- In **Xandros File Manager**, right-click the CD or DVD icon on the left side of the window, and select **Eject Disc**.

To access files on a flash memory card

1. When using a card reader device in which you insert flash memory sticks (for example, a one inch by one inch card that holds 128 MB), click the **Removable Disk** entries in Xandros File Manager to access the contents.
2. To remove the card, select the **Removable Disk** and click **Eject Disc**. If you remove the card without selecting Eject Disc then change the contents of the files, your changes will not be saved.

To stop Xandros Desktop from automatically mounting disk drives

1. Click **Launch** ▶ **Applications** ▶ **System** ▶ **Administrator Tools** ▶ **Console**.
2. At the prompt, type the Administrator password, and press **Enter**.
3. Type

   ```
   /etc/init.d/autofs stop
   ```

   and press **Enter**.
4. Click **Session** ▶ **Quit**.

To allow Xandros Desktop to automatically mount disk drives

1. Click **Launch** ▶ **Applications** ▶ **System** ▶ **Administrator Tools** ▶ **Console**.
2. At the prompt, type the Administrator password, and press **Enter**.
3. Type

   ```
   /etc/init.d/autofs start
   ```

   and press **Enter**.
4. Click **Session** ▶ **Quit** to close the window.

Viewing hidden and system files

Some Linux system files are hidden by default. Hidden files are generally files that are critical for running operating system processes. The setup.log file, which lists details about the computer hardware, is an example of a hidden file.

By viewing system files as the Administrator, you can navigate to unencrypted user files, or you can navigate to /usr/share/wallpapers and add a background image, for example.

You can view and edit hidden and system files. The files displayed and permission vary between user and Administrator accounts.

To view hidden files in Xandros File Manager

1. Click **Launch** ▶ **Xandros File Manager**.
2. Click **View** and enable the **Show Hidden Files** option.

To view system files in Xandros File Manager

1 Click **Launch** ▶ **Xandros File Manager**.

2 Click **View** and enable the **Show All File Systems** option.

Accessing Windows and Linux file systems

In addition to viewing and using the files on your computer, when your computer is connected to a network you can access other computer files on the network according to the file permissions set by other users. See "Accessing Windows and Linux file systems" on page 164.

Working with files using Xandros File Manager

You can perform a variety of operations on the folders and files within Xandros File Manager, including selecting, moving, copying, renaming, printing, and sorting. You can also start applications from Xandros File Manager.

Selecting multiple subfolders and files enables you to move, copy, cut, or delete the selected files at the same time. You can move a folder or file to another location on the file system by dragging it to the new location or by cutting and pasting it.

If you are logged in to Xandros Desktop as a regular user, you can delete files from your home folder. As the Administrator, you can delete any folder or file, provided the account is unencrypted. When you Delete a subfolder or file, the action removes it from your file system. You can instead move files that you eventually want to delete to the **Trash** folder, which is available on the desktop as an icon.

You can view information about a folder or file. Information displayed in the **Properties** window includes the following:

- The associated icon and name of the file (including file path)
- Time and date that it was created, modified, and the date last accessed
- The owner, owner group, and designated permissions
- Windows and NFS sharing information (folders only)

Owner, owner group, and designated permissions are aspects of the multi-user capability of Xandros Desktop. The owner of a folder or file is the user who created it; the owner sets the permissions on the file for other users. The owner group is a system-designated group of users. Permission designations are the series of 10 characters. The characters indicate the type of file or show that it is a folder, and shows the read, write, and execute permission status for the owner, group, and other users, respectively. For example, the folder **/bin** has the permission designation of **drwxr-xr-x**. The easiest way to understand the permissions is to right-click the file or folder,

select **Properties**, and click the **Permissions** tab. Otherwise, the following table describes the file permissions.

Permission setting...	Character indicates...
d	Folder
l	Link
c	Special file, such as a device
rwx	Owner has read, write, and execute access
r-x	Owner group has read and execute access but not write access
r-x	Any user not in the owner group has read and execute access but not write access

The r, w, and x characters show that permission for read (r), write (w), and execute (x) are granted. A dash (-) indicates that permission is denied. The first character can also be a dash (-), indicating that it is a regular file.

For more information about file permissions, see "Assigning access privileges to files and folders" on page 117. For more information about owners, groups and file permissions, see "Managing users and groups" on page 109.

Selecting folders and files

You can select multiple folders and files in Xandros File Manager. You can select a group of files and folders that display consecutively in the file list or select multiple files individually. When you invert a file selection, all the files and folders that were selected are deselected, and the files and folders that were not selected are selected.

To select consecutive multiple folders and files

1. Click **Launch** ▶ **Xandros File Manager**.
2. Click the first file or folder that you want to select, hold down **Shift**, and then click the last file that you want to select.

To select multiple folders and files

1. Click **Launch** ▶ **Xandros File Manager**.
2. Hold down **Ctrl**, and click each file and folder that you want to select.

To select all the folders and files in a folder

1 Click **Launch ▶ Xandros File Manager**.
2 Click **Edit ▶ Select All**.

To invert the selection of folders and files

1 Click **Launch ▶ Xandros File Manager**.
2 Click files or folders.
3 Click **Edit ▶ Invert Selection**.

Moving and copying folders and files

You can move and copy a folder or file to another location in the file system or to the desktop.

To move a folder or file

1 Select the folder or file you want to move.
2 Click **Edit ▶ Cut**.
3 Access the folder where you want to paste the folder or file.
4 Click **Edit ▶ Paste**.

To copy a folder or file

1 Select the folder or file you want to copy.
2 Click **Edit ▶ Copy**.
3 Access the folder where you want to copy the folder or file.
4 Click **Edit ▶ Paste**.

To copy or move a folder or file to the desktop

1 Drag the folder or file from Xandros File Manager to the desktop.
2 In the menu that displays, click one of the following options. Not all files can be moved, copied, or linked to another location.
   - **Move Here** — Moves the folder or file to the new location; it is no longer in the original location
   - **Copy Here** — Places a copy of the folder or file in the new location; the original copy remains in its location
   - **Link Here** — Allows you to place a shortcut to the folder or file at the new location

Deleting folders and files

You can delete a folder or file. When you are logged in as a regular user, you can delete folders or files from your home folder. When you are logged in as the Administrator, you can delete any folder or file that is unencrypted. Deleting a file or folder removes it from your file system.

When you move an item to the Trash folder, it is not deleted; you can restore it or choose to delete it. Emptying the Trash folder removes all the files in it completely from your system.

To delete a folder or file

1. Click **Launch** ▶ **Xandros File Manager**.
2. Select the folder or file you want to delete.
3. Click **File** ▶ **Delete**, and confirm the deletion.

You can also delete a folder or file by right-clicking it and selecting **Delete**.

To move a folder or file to the Trash folder

1. Click **Launch** ▶ **Xandros File Manager**.
2. Select the folder or file you want to move.
3. Click **File** ▶ **Move to Trash**, and confirm the move.

You can also drag a file or folder from Xandros File Manager or the desktop to the **Trash** icon on the desktop.

To retrieve a folder or file from the Trash folder

1. Double-click the **Trash** icon on the desktop.
2. Right-click the folder or file that you want to retrieve, and select **Restore**. For a folder, all of its contents are restored.

To delete a folder or file from the Trash folder

1. Double-click the **Trash** icon on the desktop.
2. Right-click the folder or file, select **Delete**, and confirm the deletion.

To empty the Trash folder

- Right-click the **Trash** icon on the desktop, and select **Empty Trash Bin**.

Creating folders

You can create folders in Xandros File Manager or on the desktop.

To create a folder in Xandros File Manager

1. Click **Launch** ▶ **Xandros File Manager**.
2. Open the folder where you want to place the new folder.
3. Click **File** ▶ **Add New** ▶ **Folder**.
4. Type a name for the new folder in the highlighted space beside the new folder icon, and press **Enter**.

To create a folder on the desktop

1. Right-click the desktop, and select **Create New** ▶ **Folder**.
2. Type a name for the folder, and click **OK**. When you create a folder on the desktop, it also displays in the **Desktop** folder in Xandros File Manager.

Changing the name of folders and files

You can rename folders and files.

To change the name of a folder or file

1. Click **Launch** ▶ **Xandros File Manager**.
2. Select the folder or file you want to rename.
3. Click **File** ▶ **Rename**.
4. Type the new name in the highlighted space by the folder icon, and press **Enter**.

You can also rename a folder or file by right-clicking it and selecting **Rename**.

Sorting and refreshing the Xandros File Manager view

You can sort the list of folders and files in Xandros File Manager by criteria, such as name, size, type, attributes, date modified, owner, and group. You can also change the order of the columns in the tree view and the flat view. You can refresh the Xandros File Manager view, for example to view the computers in the Windows Network.

To arrange folders and files

1. Click **Launch** ▶ **Xandros File Manager**.
2. Click **View** ▶ **Arrange Icons by**, and one of the following options:
   - **Name** — Arranges folders then files alphabetically (default)
   - **Size** — Arranges folders and files by size

- **Type** — Arranges folders, then files by type of file
- **Attributes** — Arranges folders, then files by file permission
- **Modified** — Arranges folders, then files by date modified
- **Owner** — Arranges folders and files by owner
- **Group** — Arranges folders and files by group name

To change the order of the information columns

1. Click **Launch** ▶ **Xandros File Manager**.
2. Click **View** and enable the **Detailed List** mode.
3. Click an information column header and drag it to another position on the header bar.

To refresh the view

1. Click **Launch** ▶ **Xandros File Manager**.
2. Click **View** ▶ **Refresh** or press **F5**.

Viewing folder and file properties

You can view information about a folder or file, such as read and write permissions.

To view the properties of a folder or file in Xandros File Manager

1. Click **Launch** ▶ **Xandros File Manager**.
2. Select a folder or file.
3. Click **File** ▶ **Properties**.

You can also view file properties by right-clicking a folder or file and selecting **Properties**.

Starting applications in Xandros File Manager

You can start applications in Xandros File Manager.

To start an application in Xandros File Manager

1. Click **Launch** ▶ **Xandros File Manager**.
2. Navigate to the folder where the application you want to open is located.
3. Double-click the icon of the application.

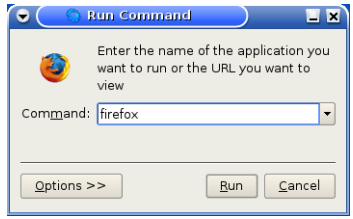
You can also open the application by right-clicking it, and selecting **Open**.

Starting applications using the Run command window

You can start applications by typing the path and file name where the application is stored in the **Run Command** window. Typing an application name in this window also launches it. An example is typing firefox to launch the Web browser.

To start an application using the Run command window

1. Click **Launch** ▶ **Run Command**.
2. Type the path and file name, or the application name, and click **Run**. You can look up the command to type in the Menu Editor under **Launch** ▶ **Applications** ▶ **System** ▶ **Menu Editor**.



Run Command window to start applications

To open the application and also launch a console window to view execution information, click **Options**, and enable the **Run in terminal window** check box.

Finding folders and files

Xandros Desktop lets you search for computers, folders, and files. You can define the search parameters to conduct a simple search, using a string of text, file type, using dates, owner, group, and so on. You can save the results of your search.

Wildcard characters help you to find folders and files. Wildcard characters take the place of one or more characters in your search string:

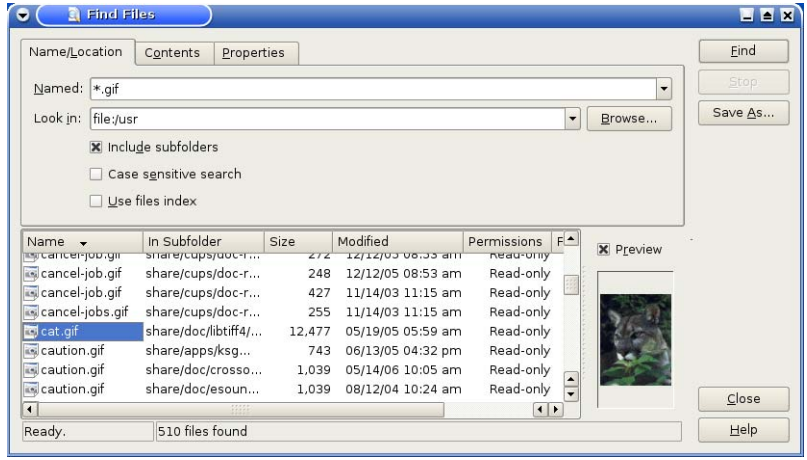
- ? — Question mark — Substitutes a single character in your search string for folders
- * — Asterisk — Substitutes any number of characters in the search string for files and folders

For example, you can search for a folder using the search string “Pic*”. This search string returns all folders that have a name beginning with the letters “Pic”. Searching for a folder using the search string “Pic?” returns only folders that have one character following “Pic”, such as “pics” or “pico”. Use of the asterisk increases your search results, finding both folders and files. You can use a wildcard character anywhere in the search string.

When you have mounted a network share, for example a SharedDocuments folder from a Windows Network, the search will also look in that folder for the file. For more information on finding computers, folders, and files in a computer network, see “Finding computers” on page 166.

Finding folders and files

You can search for folders and files in Xandros File Manager. You can use wildcard characters in a search string. You can search for a file by name, string of text contained in the file, file type, dates, owner, group, and so on.



Finding all GIF files in the /usr folder by searching on *.gif

To find a folder or file using the name

1. In Xandros File Manager, click **Tools ▶ Find Files/Folders**.
2. In the **Named** box, type the name of the folder or file for which you are searching. Searches are case insensitive. Try more than one variation, for example, to find a file called palm.pdf, search on palm.pdf or palm.* instead of palm
3. From the **Look in** drop-down list select the folder that you want to search in, or click **Browse** to locate it. To search in all directories, select **file:/**
4. Click **Find**. If you mounted a network share, the system also searches the other computer for the folder or file.

You can also access the find window by clicking **Launch ▶ Find ▶ Files/Folders**.

To find a folder or file using a text string

1. In Xandros File Manager, click **Tools** ▶ **Find Files/Folders**.
2. Clear the **Named** box.
3. From the **Look in** drop-down list select the folder that you want to search in, or click **Browse** to locate it. To search in all directories, select **file:/**
4. Click the **Contents** tab.
5. Do any of the following:
   - Select a file type from the **File type** drop-down list.
   - In the **Containing text** box, type a word or phrase contained in the file.
6. Click **Find**.

To find a folder or file by date, size, owner, or group

1. In Xandros File Manager, click **Tools** ▶ **Find Files/Folders**.
2. Click the **Properties** tab.
3. Enable the **Find all files created or modified** check box.
4. Select one of the following options from the list:
   - **Between** — Lets you specify the date interval
   - **During the previous** — Lets you specify the number of previous minutes, hours, days, months, and years
5. Alternatively, click the file size, owner, or group options.
6. Click **Find**.

You can complete the information on all three tabs in the **Find Files/Folders** window for a search. The more information you provide, the narrower the search.

Saving searches

You can save the results of your search for later use.

To save the results of a search

1. Click **Save As**.
2. Select a folder in which to save your search file.
3. Type a file name in the **File name** box.
4. From the **Filter** drop-down list, note that you can save the information as a text file or HTML file.
5. Click **Save**.

Backing up files

To avoid accidental loss of work from hard disk failure, theft, or other events, you can back up files to a CD, memory key, other computer, or other media. You can simply drag and drop files to copy them, for example, between Xandros File Manager windows. For instructions on copying to a CD, see "To create a music or data CD or DVD" on page 286.

Zip archives can be created, which compresses files. Their creation is outlined in this section.

The rsync command can also be used, whereby you simply double-click on a desktop shortcut to back up files. This command can be customized to run automatically at timed intervals.

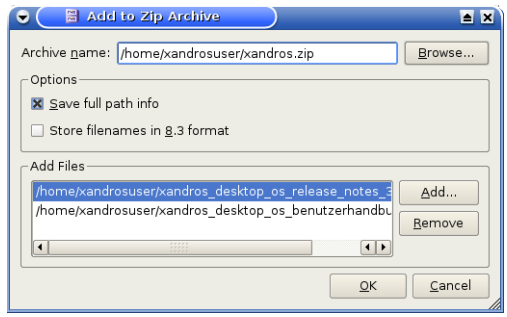
You can use Xandros Server (available separately) to back up computers.

Another option is to use the Konserve application, which can be installed in Xandros Networks from the Debian unsupported site.

To add files to a Zip archive

1 Right-click a file that you want to archive and select **Add to ZIP Archive**.

2 Click **Add** to add more files to the archive.



Adding files to a ZIP archive

3 Specify the location and name of the ZIP file in the **Archive name** box.

4 For the **Store filenames in 8.3 format** option, old DOS and Windows FAT file systems only allowed file names with a maximum of 8 characters plus a 3-character extension (hence 8.3). Enable this option if you want to truncate filenames to fit these constraints.

5 Click **OK**. The archive is created with a .zip extension.

You can also create TGZ archives. Right-click a folder or file and select the **Create TGZ Archive** option. TGZ tars and compresses files. It is a format used in UNIX, while ZIP is commonly associated with Windows. In general, a .tgz file size is marginally smaller than a .zip file.

To back up files using rsync

1 Click **Launch** ▶ **Applications** ▶ **Accessories** ▶ **Text Editor**.

2 Type the backup command. Three examples are:

`rsync -au /root/ /disks/C/backup/`
where `root` indicates the folder that will be backed up to a new folder called `backup` on a Windows partition called `C`

`rsync -au /home/username/ /root/backup/username/`
where the Home folder of the user is copied to a new folder called `backup` in the Administrator account.

`rsync -au /home/username/ /home/username/SharedDocs/backup`
where the Home folder of the user is copied to a new folder called `backup` in the SharedDocs directory on another computer. The SharedDocs directory has been mounted as a network share, so it is accessible.

You can back up multiple user accounts by typing more commands in the same file.

See the rsync UNIX manual page in the Help Center for more information on the command options.

3 Click **File** ▶ **Save As** and save the file to the Desktop as a .sh file.

4 Exit from Text Editor.

5 Right-click the .sh file, select **Properties**, click the **Permissions** tab, and enable the check box(es) in the **Exec** column. Click **OK**.

6 Double-click the .sh file on the desktop whenever you want the files backed up.

You can schedule the job to repeat in the Task Scheduler, but the maximum interval is 99,999 seconds, or just over a day, and the application must remain open or minimized on the desktop for the backup to be performed.

You can view a list of applications installed on the computer by entering `dpkg -l` in a console window.

8 Windows and Linux networking

When your computer is connected to a Windows, UNIX, and/or Linux network, you can access other computers and printers on the network. With access to other computers, you can use their folders and files according to the permissions granted.

Xandros Desktop Professional computers can access network resources by being authenticated against a Microsoft Windows Primary Domain Controller (PDC), Microsoft Active Directory Server (ADS), a Linux/UNIX NIS controller, or by the local computer. For the computers in a Windows domain, scripts can be added for login and logoff, and network shares can be assigned. For other editions of Xandros Desktop, authentication can be done by the local computer. Configuration is required.

You can share your files and printers with Windows and other Linux users, and you can set security levels for this sharing. You can allow remote access to your desktop, for example, allow a network administrator to take control of your desktop for troubleshooting.

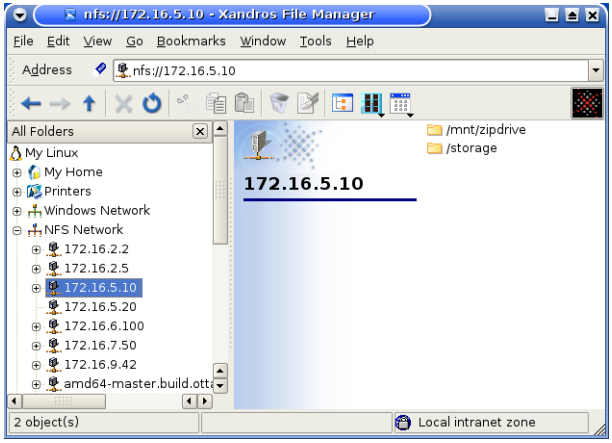
You can connect to networks and computers remotely, including by virtual private network (VPN).

Xandros Desktop is integrated for use with Xandros Server (available separately). You can install and run Xandros Management Console (xMC).

Accessing Windows and Linux file systems

When the computer is connected to a network of Microsoft Windows, UNIX, or Linux computers, you can access their shared folders and files. Windows, UNIX, and Linux networks display in Xandros File Manager as the following folders:

- **Windows Network** — Displays the computers, folders, and files on the Microsoft Windows network to which your computer is connected. You can access the shared resources on other Windows computers on the network if you have permission. The computers displayed are not just Windows computers, for example a Xandros Desktop computer is accessible when it is connected to the Windows network.
- **NFS Network** — Displays the shared Linux and UNIX Network File System (NFS) computers to which your computer is connected on the network. You can access the shared resources based on the permissions set on each share. (UNIX networks will be referred to as Linux networks hereafter because both use the NFS Network designation.)



Accessing computers on a Linux or UNIX network

The Windows and NFS folders appear in Xandros File Manager even if you do not connect to such networks. If your computer is connected to a Windows network that uses the Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) to assign IP addresses, then the domain, IP information, and corresponding DNS servers are configured for you. Otherwise, you provide all TCP/IP information (domain name, IP addresses, DNS server) if you connect to a network with static IP addresses; do so in the **Network Connections** panel of the Control Center.

For troubleshooting, the computers displayed in the **Windows Network** and **NFS Network** folders can be refreshed by pressing **F5**. You can also disconnect and reconnect in the **Network Connections** panel of the Control Center. When others cannot access your computer over the network and you

ran the Firewall Wizard, check that Windows and NFS networking was allowed.

Once you have accessed a Windows Network or NFS Network, you can work with the folders and files just like you work with files on your local file system.

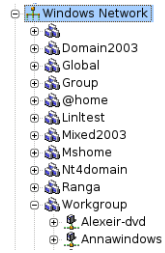
When you have a dual-boot computer with Windows and Xandros Desktop on separate partitions or drives, your Windows drives appear in Xandros File Manager with their original drive names, like **C:**

Accessing folders and files on a Microsoft Windows network

Xandros Desktop lets you access the folders and files on Windows networked computers. These networked computers are displayed in the Windows Network folder in the Xandros File Manager window.

To access a Windows Network

1. Click **Launch** ▶ **Xandros File Manager**.
2. Click **Windows Network**, clicking the plus sign (+) beside the folder to display networked computers.
3. Click the plus sign (+) beside the computer name to display the shared resources. User computers are often in a directory called **Workgroup** in Windows.
4. If you cannot see all of the computers, press **F5** to refresh the view. If that does not work, try logging out and logging in again.



If you are on a Windows network and do not see your computer listed in the **Windows Network** folder in Xandros File Manager, it means that file and printer sharing for Windows has been disabled. To enable file and printer sharing, see "Enabling file and printer sharing on a Windows network" on page 168.

Accessing Linux NFS computers, folders, and files

You can access the computers, folders, and files of other users from your Xandros Desktop system when shared on the network file system (NFS). When you open the **NFS Network** in Xandros File Manager, the servers and computers (identified by IP address or hostname) and their associated folders and files display in the Xandros File Manager window.

To access a Linux NFS

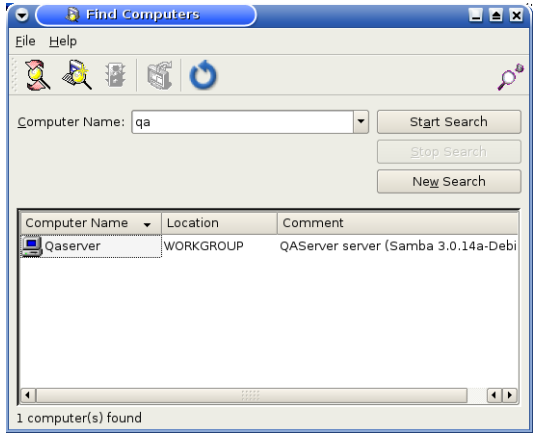
1 Click **Launch ▶ Xandros File Manager**.

2 Click **NFS Network**, clicking the plus sign (+) beside the folder to display the networked computers.

3 Click the plus sign (+) beside the computer name to display the shared resources.

Finding computers

In addition to using the Xandros File Manager to locate computers, folders, and files, you can also use the Find Computers function when your computer is connected to a network. The search is conducted using the name of the computer. When you locate a computer you can view and use its files, create a desktop link, and other functions depending on permissions. A link creates a shortcut icon on the desktop that allows you to quickly access the computer.



Searching for all computers on a network with "qa" in their name

To find a computer on a network

1 In Xandros File Manager, click **Tools ▶ Find Computers**.

2 Type the name of the computer in the **Computer Name** box or use * to list all viewable.

3 Click **Start Search**. The computers in the local network are viewable. If the one you want is not viewable, enter the computer name in the **Address** box of Xandros File Manager to find it; use the format \\name and the complete name of the computer, for example \\qaserver.

You can also access the **Find Computers** window by clicking **Launch ▶ Find ▶ Computers**.

To view the files of a computer

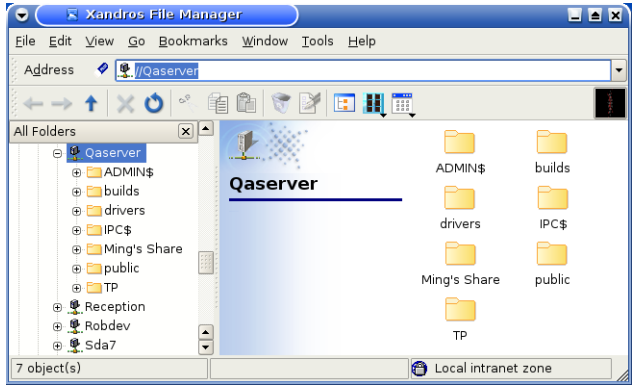
1 In Xandros File Manager, click **Tools ▶ Find Computers**.

2 Type the name of the computer in the **Computer Name** box.

3 Click **Start Search**.

4 Select the computer on which you want to view the files.

5 Click **File ▶ Explore**. You may be prompted to enter a password to access the files (try clicking **OK** without entering a password). Those files for which you have permission are displayed, and the location of the computer in the network is displayed.



Accessing the Qaserver computer over the network

To create a desktop link to a computer

1 In the Find Computers window, search for the computer and select it.

2 Click **File ▶ Create Desktop Nickname**. The shortcut is added to your desktop.

Accessing network printers

You can access printers located on Windows and/or Linux networks. See “Adding and removing printers” on page 349.

Enabling file and printer sharing for a Windows network

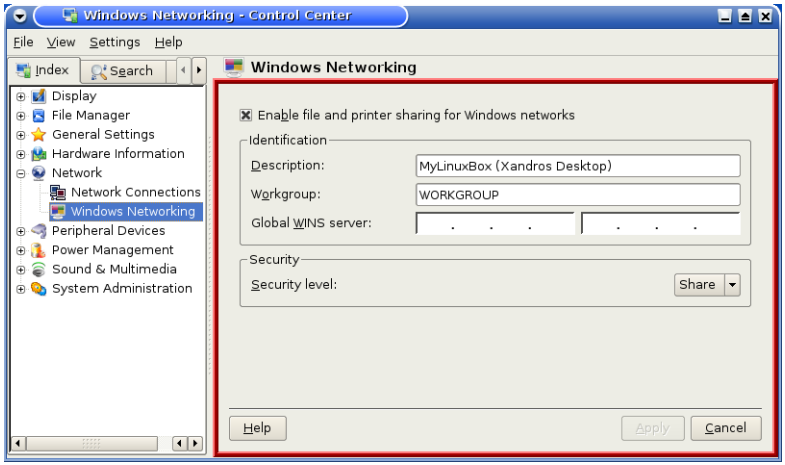
Your Xandros Desktop system can share files and printer services on a network with other Windows and Linux computers. The software included in Xandros Desktop lets Windows and Linux systems recognize and communicate with each other. When your computer is connected to a network, you can share resources on your computer or mount whole folders of other Linux and Windows computers through Xandros File Manager. For information about accessing Windows network computers, see “Accessing

Windows and Linux file systems” on page 164. For information about mounting shared folders, see “Mounting a network share” on page 183.

A workgroup is a group of computers connected to a network. It can consist of both Windows and Linux systems. When you enable sharing, your computer becomes available on the network for file sharing with other computers, and it is located on the network in a default folder named WORKGROUP on a Windows network. This workgroup may not exist on your network; if it does not, you must specify an actual workgroup. You can change workgroups if you want your computer to be available in a different location on the network.

You can also set the security level for file and printer sharing and the associated password authentication server.

In the example shown here, the shared resources of a Xandros Desktop computer can be accessed over a Windows network by looking in the Workgroup folder for the computer called MyLinuxBox.



Windows Networking panel with file and printer sharing set to Share (no password required)

Enabling file and printer sharing on a Windows network

You can share your files and printers with Windows and Linux computers on the network. The setting in the Windows Networking panel of the Control Center is the master setting for file and printer sharing on the Windows network and over-rules all other settings. When this setting is disabled, other users cannot access shared folders or printers on your system, but you can see their shared folders or printers.

By default, file and printer sharing on your Xandros Desktop computer is turned on with the security level set to Share, which means that a user name is not required to connect to your computer; instead, authentication information is sent on a per-share basis when attempting to connect to your computer. Information on security levels is provided later in this chapter.

To change your file and printer sharing for a Windows network

1. Click **Launch** ▶ **Control Center**.
2. Click **Network**, then **Windows Networking**.
3. Click **Administrator**, and enter the Administrator password.
4. Enable or disable the **Enable file and printer sharing for Windows networks** check box. By default, it is enabled.
5. Click **Apply**.

To change the name of your computer as it appears to other users on a network

1. In the **Windows Networking** panel, type a name for your computer in the **Description** box, for example JaneQ (Xandros Desktop). Click **Apply**.
2. To change the name that appears on the network to others, access the **Network Connections** panel, click the **Identification** tab, type the name, and click **Apply**. For example, the name JaneQ appears in Xandros File Manager over a Windows network as Janeq.

Setting your workgroup for a Windows network

You can change your workgroup if you want your computer to appear in a different location on the Windows Network.

To change your workgroup for a Windows network

1. Click **Launch** ▶ **Control Center**.
2. Click **Network**, then **Windows Networking**.
3. Click **Administrator**, and enter the Administrator password.
4. Type a workgroup name in the **Workgroup** box. This field is called **Workgroup** when the **Security level** is set to **Share**, **User**, or **Server**, and is typically completed as WORKGROUP. It is called **Domain** when the security level is set to **Domain** or **ADS**, and is completed by you with the appropriate name of the server, as outlined later in this chapter. (The Server, Domain, and ADS options appear only in the Professional edition.)
5. Click **Apply**.

Specifying a WINS server for name resolution

A Windows Internet Naming Service (WINS) server maps computer names to IP addresses so that computers can recognize them. When your computer is set to act as a WINS server, you do not need to specify the WINS server IP address because Xandros Desktop automatically detects it.

When your network does not use a WINS server, you can use a Domain Name System (DNS) server for name resolution. See “To set a DNS server” on page 73.

When you are using a DHCP server and it is configured to do so, a WINS server IP address can be received from the DHCP server automatically, meaning the server address is automatically filled in.

To specify a WINS server

1. Click **Launch** ▶ **Control Center**.
2. Click **Network**, then **Windows Networking**.
3. Click **Administrator**, and enter the Administrator password.
4. Type the IP address(es) of the WINS server in the **Global WINS server** box(es).
5. Click **Apply**.

Setting file sharing security and authentication for a Windows network

You can set the security level for access by other computers on a Windows network. If your system uses a password authentication server, you must specify the name or IP address of the server. When you grant access to others, the permissions you set elsewhere also apply, for example, read and write access.

To set the security level for access to your computer

1. Click **Launch** ▶ **Control Center**.
2. Click **Network**, then **Windows Networking**.
3. Click **Administrator**, and enter the Administrator password.
4. Select one of the following security levels from the **Security level** drop-down list. The Server, Domain, and ADS options appear only in the Professional edition.
   - **Share** — A user name does not have to be provided to connect to your shared resources, such as files or printers
   - **User** — A user name and password must be provided to connect to your shared resources; the user name and password are validated against the user/password list on the machine that hosts the shared resources
   - **Server**— A user name and password must be provided to connect to your shared resources; the user name and password are passed to a password server for validation. If validation fails, security is reverted to the User level. This option is displayed in the Professional edition of Xandros Desktop only.
   - **Domain** — A user name and password must be provided to connect to your shared resources; the user name and password are passed to a Windows NT, Windows 2000 or 2003 mixed mode, or Samba PDC for validation. Follow "Joining a Windows domain" on page 171 to

complete this process. This option is displayed in the Professional edition of Xandros Desktop only.

- **ADS** — Active Directory Server, which is a new version of the Windows domain controller. The user name and passwords are passed to the domain controller for authentication. With this option, an ADS server name, realm, and Windows binding information must be provided to connect to your shared resources. Follow "Joining a Windows domain" on page 171 to complete this process. This option is displayed in the Professional edition of Xandros Desktop only.

5 You can change the **Workgroup** if you want. This is the folder/directory in the Windows network where your computer appears to other users.

6 When the **Server** security level is selected, the **Password authentication server** box is automatically completed with the name of a server. Check that the server is the correct one to use.

7 Click **Apply**.

Joining a Windows domain

With the Professional edition of Xandros Desktop you can join Windows domains, including:

- Windows NT4
- Windows 2000 and 2003 ADS — Mixed and native modes

Joining such Windows domains allows you to access computers, printers, folders, and files located on those domains, depending on permissions granted.

In the following instructions, if you are using a Samba domain, you follow the Windows NT4 instructions and will substitute "root" and the root password when instructed to enter "Administrator" and the Administrator password.

Joining a Windows NT4 domain

Using the Professional edition of Xandros Desktop, there are two ways to join a Windows NT4 domain:

- Your network administrator creates the computer account on the server before your computer joins the domain (join with pre-existing account)
- The computer account is created when your computer joins the domain. In this scenario, the domain administrator password is required.

After you join a domain, you can then log in at startup to the Windows domain instead of logging in to your local computer.

To join a Windows NT4 domain with pre-existing account

1. Click **Launch** ▶ **Control Center**.
2. Click **Network**, then **Windows Networking**.
3. Click **Administrator**, and enter the Administrator password.
4. From the **Security level** drop-down list, select **Domain**.
5. In the **Domain** box (second box from the top of the window), type the name of the domain.
6. Ensure that the **Password authentication server** box reads "*" or enter the server name or IP address.
7. Enable the **Join domain** check box.

   For the **Allow trusted domains** box, a domain trust can be defined as a relationship between domains that allows users in one domain to be authenticated by a domain controller of another domain. When this box is set to **No**, all trusted domains are ignored and bypassed, which reduces the login time on a large network with a number of trusted domains. In this case, attempts to connect to a resource from a domain that has a trusted relationship will fail. You can use the default setting of **Yes** when there are few trusted domains or when you need access to a resource.
8. Click **Apply**, confirm that you want the setting to take effect immediately, and acknowledge that the changes are now in effect.
9. In the **Join Domain** window that appears, enable the **Join without user name and password** check box. Leave the **Cache domain credentials locally** check box enabled for when the domain server is unavailable, for example when you use your laptop computer at a different location and want to log in to the domain as the same domain user. Click **OK** to exit from the window.
10. In the **Join Successful** window, click **OK** to acknowledge that your computer has joined the domain. Your computer account has not been added to the domain unless you see this message.
11. Click **Launch** ▶ **Logout**.
12. Click the **Logout** icon.
13. In the login window, type the domain **User name**, type the **Password**, select the domain from the **Log in to** drop-down list, and click **Login**.

To join a Windows NT4 domain without pre-existing computer account

1. Obtain the name of the domain from the domain administrator.
2. Click **Launch** ▶ **Control Center**.
3. Click **Network**, then **Windows Networking**.
4. Click **Administrator**, and enter the Administrator password.
5. From the **Security level** drop-down list, select **Domain**.
6. In the **Domain** box (second box from the top of the window), type the name of the domain.
7. Ensure that the **Password authentication server** box reads "*" or enter the server name or IP address.
8. Enable the **Join domain** check box.

   For the **Allow trusted domains** box, a domain trust can be defined as a relationship between domains that allows users in one domain to be authenticated by a domain controller of another domain. When this box is set to **No**, all trusted domains are ignored and bypassed, which reduces the login time on a large network with a number of trusted domains. In this case, attempts to connect to a resource from a domain that has a trusted relationship will fail. You can use the default setting of **Yes** when there are few trusted domains or when you need access to a resource.
9. Click **Apply**, confirm that you want the setting to take effect immediately, and acknowledge that the changes are now in effect.
10. In the **Join Domain** window that appears, with the **Join with user name and password** check box enabled, type `Administrator` in the **User name** box and type your Administrator password in the **Password** box, which is the password for the server. (Remember to use root instead if you are using a Samba domain.) Leave the **Cache domain credentials locally** check box enabled for when the domain server is unavailable, for example when you use your laptop computer at a different location and want to log in to the domain as the same domain user. Click **OK**.
11. In the **Join Successful** window, click **OK** to acknowledge that your computer has joined the domain. Your computer account has not been added to the domain unless you see this message.
12. Click **Launch** ▶ **Logout**.
13. Click the **Logout** icon.
14. In the login window, type the domain **User name**, type the **Password**, select the domain from the **Log in to** drop-down list, and click **Login**.

Joining a Windows 2000 or 2003 domain

Using the Professional edition of Xandros Desktop, there are several ways to join a Windows 2000 or 2003 domain. The possible configurations for Windows 2000 include:

- Mixed mode, with a pre-existing account
- Mixed mode, without a pre-existing account and with or without an Organizational Unit specified
- Native mode, with or without an Organizational Unit specified

If the account is part of an Organizational Unit, for example a department name or a location name, you can set up the account to include this information.

After you join the network domain, you can then log in at startup to this Windows domain instead of logging in to your local computer.

If you are a network administrator and working with native modes, start with the server-side instructions.

To prepare permissions for native mode when user is member of Account Operators group (server-side instructions for network administrators)

1. Log in to the domain controller as Administrator.
2. Go to **Start Menu** ▶ **Program** ▶ **Administrative Tools** ▶ **Active Directory Users and Computers**.
3. In the left panel, select **Users** under your domain.
4. Right-click the user name in the right panel, and select **Add members to a group**.
5. Select **Account Operators**, and click **OK**.

To prepare permissions for native mode to make user delegate the control of join computer to domain (server-side instructions for network administrators)

1. Log in to the domain controller as Administrator.
2. Go to **Start Menu** ▶ **Program** ▶ **Administrative Tools** ▶ **Active Directory Users and Computers**.
3. Right-click on the domain name in the left panel, and select **Delegate Control**.
4. In the pop-up wizard, click **Next**.
5. Click **Add**.
6. Select a user (or group) and click **Add**.
7. Click **OK**.
8. Click **Next**.
9. Check the **Join a computer to the domain** check box.

10 Click **Next**.

11 Click **Finish**.

To join a Windows 2000 domain (mixed mode) with pre-existing computer account

1 Obtain your user name and password from the domain administrator. You also need to know the name of the domain.

2 Click **Launch** ▶ **Control Center**.

3 Click **Network**, then **Windows Networking**.

4 Click **Administrator**, and enter the Administrator password.

5 From the **Security level** drop-down list, select **Domain**.

6 In the **Domain** box (second box from the top of the window), type the name of the domain.

7 Ensure that the **Password authentication server** box reads "*" or enter the server name or IP address.

8 Enable the **Join domain** check box.

For the **Allow trusted domains** box, a domain trust can be defined as a relationship between domains that allows users in one domain to be authenticated by a domain controller of another domain. When this box is set to **No**, all trusted domains are ignored and bypassed, which reduces the login time on a large network with a number of trusted domains. In this case, attempts to connect to a resource from a domain that has a trusted relationship will fail. You can use the default setting of **Yes** when there are few trusted domains or when you need access to a resource.

9 Click **Apply**, confirm that you want the setting to take effect immediately, and acknowledge that the changes are now in effect.

10 In the **Join Domain** window that appears, enable the **Join without user name and password** check box. Leave the **Cache domain credentials locally** check box enabled for when the domain server is unavailable, for example when you use your laptop computer at a different location and want to log in to the domain as the same domain user. Click **OK**.

11 In the **Join Successful** window, click **OK** to acknowledge that your computer has joined the domain. Your computer account has not been added to the domain unless you see this message.

12 Click **Launch** ▶ **Logout**.

13 Click the **Logout** icon.

14 In the login window, type the domain **User name**, type the **Password**, select the domain from the **Log in to** drop-down list, and click **Login**.

To join a Windows 2000 domain (mixed mode) without pre-existing computer account and with or without Organizational Unit

1. Obtain the name of the domain, host name, active directory name (valid Internet domain), and name of the Organizational Unit (optional) from the domain administrator.
2. Click **Launch** ▶ **Control Center**.
3. Click **Network**, then **Windows Networking**.
4. Click **Administrator**, and enter the Administrator password.
5. From the **Security level** drop-down list, select **Domain**.
6. In the **Domain** box (second box from the top of the window), type the name of the domain.
7. Ensure that the **Password authentication server** box reads "*" or enter the server name or IP address.
8. Enable the **Join domain** check box.

   For the **Allow trusted domains** box, a domain trust can be defined as a relationship between domains that allows users in one domain to be authenticated by a domain controller of another domain. When this box is set to **No**, all trusted domains are ignored and bypassed, which reduces the login time on a large network with a number of trusted domains. In this case, attempts to connect to a resource from a domain that has a trusted relationship will fail. You can use the default setting of **Yes** when there are few trusted domains or when you need access to a resource.
9. Click **Apply**, confirm that you want the setting to take effect immediately, and acknowledge that the changes are now in effect.
10. In the **Join Domain** window that appears, with the **Join with user name and password** check box enabled, type the domain **User name**, type the **Password** (which is the password for the server), type the **Organization unit** (optional; use / to separate layers). Leave the **Cache domain credentials locally** check box enabled for when the domain server is unavailable, for example when you use your laptop computer at a different location and want to log in to the domain as the same domain user. Click **OK**.
11. In the **Join Successful** window, click **OK** to acknowledge that you have joined the domain. Your computer account has not been added in the domain unless you see this message.
12. Click **Launch** ▶ **Logout**.
13. Click the **Logout** icon.
14. In the login window, type the domain **User name**, type the **Password**, select the domain from the **Log in to** drop-down list, and click **Login**.

To join a Windows 2000 domain (native mode) with or without Organizational Unit

1. Obtain the name of the domain, host name, active directory name, and name of the Organizational Unit (optional) from the domain administrator.
2. Click **Launch** ▶ **Control Center**.
3. Click **Network**, then **Windows Networking**.
4. Click **Administrator**, and enter the Administrator password.
5. From the **Security level** drop-down list, select **ADS**.
6. Ensure that the **ADS server** box displays the correct host name.
7. Ensure that the **Realm** box displays the correct active directory name. This name is a fully qualified domain name, for example, ending in .com or .info
8. In the **Domain** box (second box from the top of the window), type the name of the domain.
9. Enable the **Join domain** check box.

   For the **Allow trusted domains** box, a domain trust can be defined as a relationship between domains that allows users in one domain to be authenticated by a domain controller of another domain. When this box is set to **No**, all trusted domains are ignored and bypassed, which reduces the login time on a large network with a number of trusted domains. In this case, attempts to connect to a resource from a domain that has a trusted relationship will fail. You can use the default setting of **Yes** when there are few trusted domains or when you need access to a resource.
10. Click **Apply**, confirm that you want the setting to take effect immediately, and acknowledge that the changes are now in effect.
11. In the **Join Domain** window that appears, with the **Join with user name and password** check box enabled, type the domain **User name**, type the **Password** (which is the password for the server), type the **Organization unit** (optional; use / to separate layers). Leave the **Cache domain credentials locally** check box enabled for when the domain server is unavailable, for example when you use your laptop computer at a different location and want to log in to the domain as the same domain user. Click **OK**.
12. In the **Join Successful** window, click **OK** to acknowledge that you have joined the domain. Your computer account has not been added in the domain unless you see this message.
13. Click **Launch** ▶ **Logout**.
14. Click the **Logout** icon.
15. In the login window, type the domain **User name**, type the **Password**, select the domain from the **Log in to** drop-down list, and click **Login**.

To join a Windows 2003 domain

1. Obtain your user name and password from the domain administrator. You also need to know the name of the domain.
2. Click **Launch** ▶ **Control Center**.
3. Click **Network**, then **Windows Networking**.
4. Click **Administrator**, and enter the Administrator password.
5. From the **Security level** drop-down list, select **ADS**.
6. In the **Domain** box (second box from the top of the window), type the name of the domain.
7. Ensure that the **ADS server** box displays the correct host name.
8. Ensure that the **Realm** box displays the correct active directory name. This name is a fully qualified domain name, for example, ending in .com or .info
9. Enable the **Join domain** check box.

   For the **Allow trusted domains** box, a domain trust can be defined as a relationship between domains that allows users in one domain to be authenticated by a domain controller of another domain. When this box is set to **No**, all trusted domains are ignored and bypassed, which reduces the login time on a large network with a number of trusted domains. In this case, attempts to connect to a resource from a domain that has a trusted relationship will fail. You can use the default setting of **Yes** when there are few trusted domains or when you need access to a resource.
10. Click **Apply**, confirm that you want the setting to take effect immediately, and acknowledge that the changes are now in effect.
11. In the **Join Domain** window that appears, with the **Join with user name and password** check box enabled, type the domain **User name**, type the **Password** (which is the password for the server), type the **Organization unit** (optional; use / to separate layers). Leave the **Cache domain credentials locally** check box enabled for when the domain server is unavailable, for example when you use your laptop computer at a different location and want to log in to the domain as the same domain user. Click **OK**.
12. In the **Join Successful** window, click **OK** to acknowledge that your computer has joined the domain. Your computer account has not been added to the domain unless you see this message.
13. Click **Launch** ▶ **Logout**.
14. Click the **Logout** icon.
15. In the login window, type the domain **User name**, type the **Password**, select the domain from the **Log in to** drop-down list, and click **Login**.

Adding scripts and assigning network shares for Windows domains

With the Professional edition of Xandros Desktop, login and logout scripts can be executed for users belonging to a Windows domain and a network share can be assigned as a network home directory for a user at login. The scripts are written by you, and they are placed server-side. They are activated when a domain user logs in or out.

There are two kinds of scripts:

- User object scripts for Windows NT
- Group policy scripts for Windows 2000 or 2003

A user object script for a Xandros client is a Linux script assigned to a domain user on the domain controller for login. It is often used to automatically map network drives, start background processes, or set environment variables. The script is stored in the NETLOGON share and only one script can be assigned. By default, NETLOGON is shared by all domain users. Windows NT supports this script and only for login.

A group policy script for a Xandros client is a Linux script that is specified in a group policy that is invoked at login. Windows 2000 and 2003 supports such scripts. Group policies are applied in the following order: local, site (in the specified order), domain (in the specified order), and Organizational Unit (from largest to smallest and in the specified order for each Organizational Unit). When there are inconsistencies, group policies applied later overwrite previously applied policies. For user configuration, scripts are stored in a share called sysvol, in which the default script path is

[domain]\policies\[policy id]\user\scripts\{logon|logoff}

The network home folder is a network share assigned to a domain user on the domain controller with an associated drive number. When the domain user logs in, the network share is mounted to the drive number assigned. The network home folder is mounted under a folder within the user's local home folder. It is identifiable by the user by the drive number.

There are four requirements for scripts:

- The user must already have joined a domain (see the previous section for instructions)
- A script must be executable under Xandros Desktop and cannot contain Windows-specific commands
- Users must log in using a password in order to invoke a login script; users who automatically log in without providing a password are unaffected by a login script
- The group policy applied is based on the user, not the computer; Xandros Desktop does not support a loopback policy

When invoked by the user, a login script is placed in a .kde/logon folder in the user's home folder. A logout script is placed in a .kde/logoff folder. The network home folder information is placed in a .automount file in the same home folder. The .desktop files under a ~/.kde/Autostart folder are processed at login and removed at logout.

Here is an example of a login script in a file called login.sh:

```
#!/bin/sh
#
# login.sh: sample domain login script
#
# This script is run locally when a domain user logs in to a
# Xandros system. Input your server name and share name.

# log last log in time
date >>.lastlogin

# run virus scanner (in the background)
viruscan $HOME &

# run the Personal Time Tracker application
karm &

# mount a network share
mkdir $HOME/share
smbmount //servername/sharename $HOME/share -o guest
```

Here is an example of a logout script in a file called logout.sh:

```
#!/bin/sh
#
# logout.sh: sample domain logout script
#
# This script is run locally when a domain user logs out from
# a Xandros system.

# unmount a network share
smbunmount $HOME/share

# log last log out time
date >>.lastlogout
```

To add a script for use with Xandros Desktop

1. For Windows NT, add the script server-side to a directory called **xandros** in the NETLOGON share for the user object script.

   For Windows 2000 or 2003, add the script server-side to a directory called **xandros** under the sysvol share for the group-policy-based script.

   The script is a shell script; if you do not want the Windows clients to run it, use a suffix that the Windows clients do not recognize, such as .sh
2. For Windows NT, assign the script to the profile for the domain user.

   For Windows 2000 or 2003, assign the group policy to a domain, Organizational Unit, or other unit.

Sharing your local system with network computers

You can make folders and their contents available to Microsoft Windows and Linux users who are connected to your computer through a network. You can specify the number of users allowed to access a folder and set access permissions for users, including full access, no access, or read access to a folder.

You can create a link to a folder or resource located elsewhere in a Linux or Windows network so that you can access the folder quickly. This is called mounting a network share. For example, if you want to quickly access a folder called Graphics on a Windows network computer, you can mount the Graphics folder so that it displays in Xandros File Manager as if it is part of your local file system. Mounting a network share in Xandros Desktop is similar to mapping a network drive in Microsoft Windows. You can perform the same actions on mounted folders and files as on your Linux folders and files.

When you mount a shared folder, the folder and its files are displayed in the location you specify as the mount point. The mount point is the location in the local file system where you place the shared network folder. For example, it can be at the top level or within the My Documents folder.

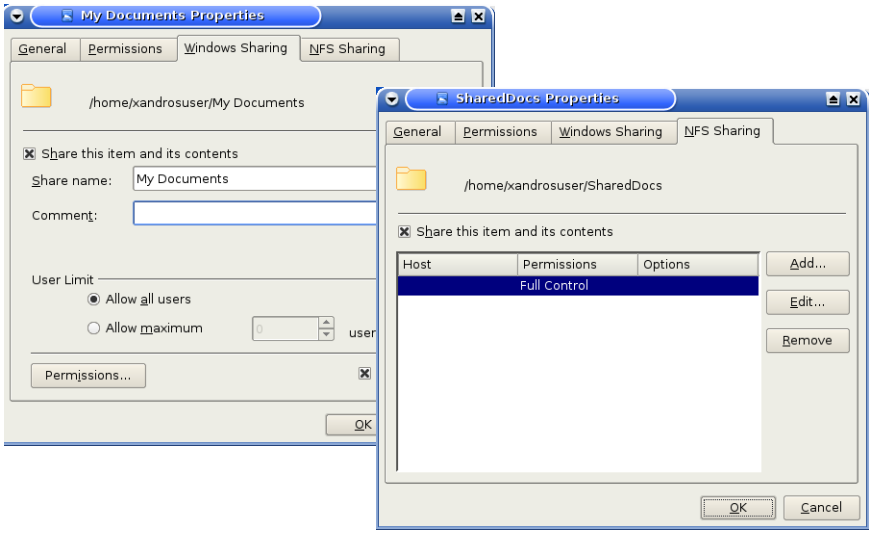
You can also share desktop control with other users, whereby you invite a user at a remote location to watch and/or control your desktop. The reverse can also be done: you can control a Windows computer with thin client software.

Enabling network folder sharing on your local system

You can make a folder on a local file system available to other users on a network. You can set the maximum number of users allowed to access the shared folder.

By default, file and printer sharing on your Xandros Desktop computer is turned on with the share level set to Share, but you need to specify which

files you want to share, as outlined here. See “Enabling file and printer sharing for a Windows network” on page 167 for information on default sharing.



Allowing access to a folder over a Windows network (left) and Linux network (right)

To enable folder sharing and set permissions for network use

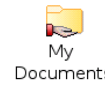
1. Click **Launch ▶ Xandros File Manager**.
2. For sharing over a Linux network, no spaces are allowed in the path and file names, so rename such objects, such as the **My Documents** folder to **MyDocuments**. Also, you may need to share the home folder. For example, right-click **My Home**, select **Properties**, and in the **Permissions** tab enable the **Read**, **Write**, and **Execute** box for **Group** and **Others**, then enable the **Apply permissions to folder and all subfolders**, then click **OK** to exit from the window.
3. Right-click the folder you want to share and select **Sharing ▶Windows Sharing** (for a Windows network) or **NFS Sharing** (for a Linux network).
4. Enable the **Share this item and its contents** check box.
5. For Windows (shown left), enable one of the following options:
   - **Allow all users** — Any user can access the folder
   - **Allow maximum** — Lets you specify a limit to the number of users

   For Windows, click **Permissions** if you want to specify the password to use or to change access to read-only.

   For Linux (shown right), click **Edit** to change permissions, if required (ignore the **Host** box). The default is read-only access. You can be required to provide the Administrator password to change permissions. As indicated in step 2, if a folder higher in the hierarchy does not allow sharing, you

need to change its permissions. For more information about file access permissions, see “Setting file and folder permissions and sharing” on page 118.

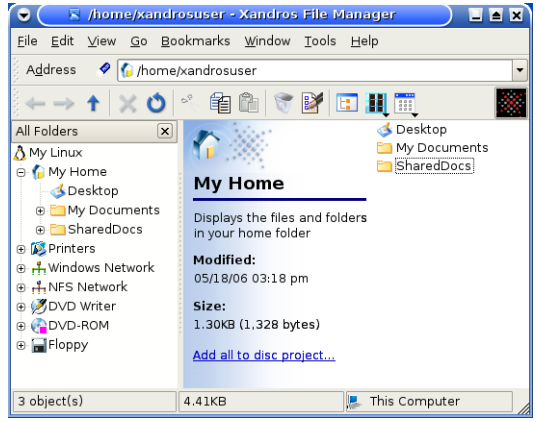
6 Click **OK**. Note that the folder icon includes a hand to indicate file sharing.



Mounting a network share

Mounting a network folder on your computer lets you access the resources of that file system or folder. You can mount a folder that is on a remote Microsoft Windows or Linux file system, for example. It is the easiest way to access and swap files between Windows and Linux systems. The local folder where you place the link is called the mount point.

In the example shown here, the SharedDocs directory has been mounted. It accesses a shared documents folder on a Windows computer. The mount point is the home folder of xandrosuser.



SharedDocs directory of a Windows computer mounted for access in Xandros File Manager

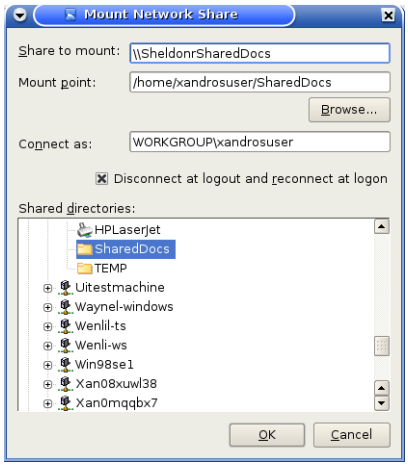
You can also disconnect a mounted network share, which you may need to do if the other computer is turned off.

When a user has joined a Windows domain, it is possible to add scripts that automatically assign a network share as the home folder for the user at login. See “Adding scripts and assigning network shares for Windows domains” on page 179.

To mount a network share

1 Click **Launch ▶ Xandros File Manager.**

2 Click **Tools ▶ Mount Network Share.**



Mounting the SharedDocs directory

3 Simply double-click into a Windows or Linux network until you find the folder that you want to link to (double-click the folder too), then click **OK**. Otherwise follow the rest of this procedure for detailed instructions.

4 Click **Browse** to specify where you want the link to appear. An example is /home/xandrosuser, which is the home folder of the user named xandrosuser.

5 If you want to connect as part of a different group or user, change the **Connect as** box. An example is WORKGROUP\xandrosuser, where WORKGROUP is the group and xandrosuser is the user.

6 Locate and double-click the folder that you want to mount in the **Shared directories** box so that the path appears in the **Share to mount** box. An example is \\Sheldonr\SharedDocs, where the link will be created to the SharedDocs folder of a computer named Sheldonr. If the computer you want is not shown, you can still type the path, that is \\Sheldonr\SharedDocs, to create the mounted share.

When a user's home folder is encrypted, the files will be viewable to others on the network only when the user is logged in.

The other computer needs to be on for the network share to function. You may not be able to access Xandros File Manager when the other computer is off. Turn on the other computer, then restart your Xandros computer.

To dismount a network share

1 Click **Launch ▶ Xandros File Manager**.

2 Click **Tools ▶ Disconnect Network Share**. This option can be selected only when a mounted network share is active.

3 Select the share in the window, and click **OK**. You will be prompted if you want to mount the system or folder the next time you log in, that is, if the disconnection is temporary or permanent.

Sharing desktop control with a remote user

With Remote Desktop Sharing you can invite a person at a remote location to watch and/or control your desktop, and similarly you can respond to such an invitation. This feature facilitates detecting and fixing computer problems, for example because an administrator can access your directories and folders while sitting at their own computer. The view that the remote user sees is the same as you see on your computer.

Either a network or Internet connection is required, depending on the location of the invited person. You invite the person by e-mail or provide them with the login information. For security reasons, an invitation is valid for one hour after creation. You can track existing invitations and cancel them. The invited party then responds to your invitation using a virtual network computing (VNC) or remote desktop protocol (RDP) application. They log in and view and/or control your desktop.

If one or both computers are behind firewalls, remote desktop sharing may not work without configuration. Try connecting and if it does not work, check with your network administrator which ports are open, then try configuring your computer for the port by clicking **Launch ▶ Control Center**, then **System Administration**, then **Remote Desktop Sharing**. Click the **Network** tab, disable the **Assign port automatically** check box, set the port number, and click **Apply**.

To share desktop control

1 If the Xandros Firewall Wizard is active at either end of the connection, ensure that VNC access is enabled.

2 Click **Launch ▶ Applications ▶ System ▶ Remote Desktop Sharing ▶ Share My Desktop.**

Invitation - Share My Desktop
Desktop Sharing
Welcome to KDE Desktop Sharing
KDE Desktop Sharing allows you to invite somebody at a remote location to watch and possibly control your desktop.
More about invitations...
Create Personal Invitation...
Invite via Email...
Manage Invitations (0)...
Help
Configure...
Close

Share My Desktop application for sharing desktop viewing and control

3 Click an option:

- **Create Personal Invitation** — You give the invited party the information displayed
- **Invite via E-mail** — The information is sent to the address specified

Personal Invitation - Share My Desktop
Desktop Sharing
Personal Invitation
Give the information below to the person that you want to invite (how to connect). Note that everybody who gets the password can connect, so be careful.
Host: 172.16.1.151:0 (Help)
Password: fazC-BvR
Expiration time: 05/19/2006 11:34:58
Close

IP address and password generated for a personal invitation to share your desktop

4 The person invited uses the **Connect to Desktop** application when using Xandros Desktop to connect to your computer. Otherwise, any VNC viewer can be used. When they attempt to connect, a window appears on your computer indicating that someone is attempting to access your computer. Check that the **Remote system** is the invited party, decide if you will **Allow remote user to control your keyboard and mouse**, and accept or refuse the connection. The invited party cannot sees an **Authenticating**

window until you accept the connection, types the password. The invited party is not notified if you refuse the connection. After a successful connection, you are notified. You are also notified when the invited party disconnects from your desktop.

To cancel desktop control

1 Click **Launch** ▶ **Applications** ▶ **System** ▶ **Remote Desktop Sharing** ▶ **Share My Desktop**.

2 Click **Manage Invitations**.

3 Select the invitation to cancel, and click **Delete**.

To respond to an invitation

1 Click **Launch** ▶ **Applications** ▶ **System** ▶ **Remote Desktop Sharing** ▶ **Connect to Desktop**.

2 In the **Remote desktop** box, type the IP address and display number of the computer specified in the invitation, separated by a colon. An example is 172.16.1.224:0 Or click **Browse** to search for the computer. (Click **Browse** again to return to the smaller window.)

Remote Desktop Connection - Connect to Deskto
Remote desktop:
172.16.1.151:0
Browse >>
Enter the address of the computer to connect to, or browse the network and select one. VNC and RDP compatible servers will be supported.
Examples
Help
Preferences
Connect
Close

Connecting to someone else's desktop

3 Click **Connect**.

4 From the window that appears, select the connection type, then click **OK**.

5 You see an authenticating message while the person who invited you receives a notification of your attempt to connect and accepts or refuses the connection.

6 Wait for the prompt to enter the password provided, then type the password and click **OK**. You are given access to the other desktop.

7 Using the small connection box located at the top of the desktop, close the connection when you are finished by clicking the large red X.

If the connection is interrupted, a new invitation must be created.

You can also connect to other computers in a network using the Xandros File Manager. See "Accessing Windows and Linux file systems" on page 164.

You can also configure defaults to allow uninvited connections by clicking the **Configure** button.

Connecting to computers remotely

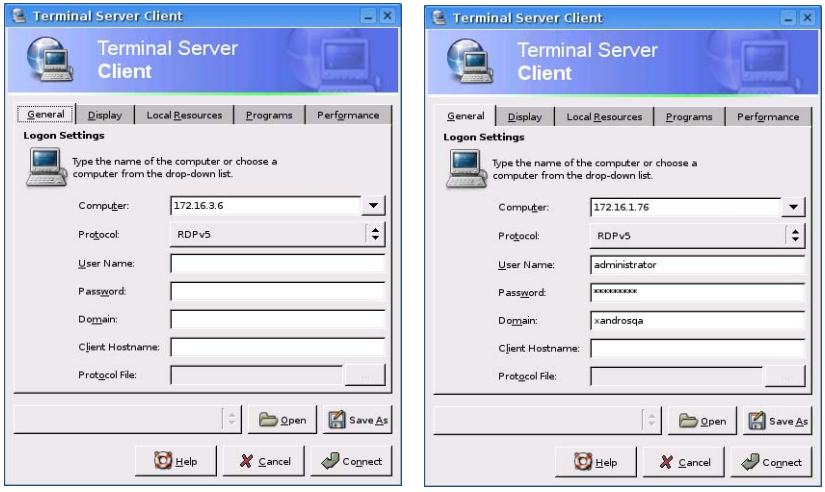
In addition to using Xandros File Manager to access computers over a network, you can connect to other computers using applications. You can also connect remotely to a network and its computers by a virtual private network (VPN).

Three applications are outlined here:

- **Terminal Server Client** — To log in remotely to Windows servers and computers and run their applications
- **NX Client** — To log in remotely and run applications on any operating system over a network
- **Connection Wizard** — To log in remotely to a Windows, Linux, or UNIX network and computers by VPN

Connecting with Remote Windows Connection (Terminal Server Client)

The Terminal Server Client application is provided with the Professional edition of Xandros Desktop (can be downloaded from Xandros Networks for other editions). It allows you to log in remotely to Windows servers and computers, including from thin clients (network computers). For example, from a UNIX or Linux computer, you can require use of an application provided on a Windows computer. The Terminal Server Client lets you run a program upon connection. The Windows computer needs to be set to allow remote access (right-click on **My Computer**, access **Properties**, click **Remote**, and ensure that remote access is allowed). And if the Windows computer is password-protected, you need to be added as a user first before you will be able to connect. The application does not work with the Home edition of Windows XP. For Windows 98, you need a VNC server service for it to work.



Remotely accessing applications on a Windows computer (LAN left, other right)

To access a Windows server or computer remotely

1. Ensure the Windows computer is configured for remote access.
2. If the remote Windows computer is password-protected, ensure that you have a user account on it.
3. On the Xandros computer, click **Launch** ▶ **Applications** ▶ **System** ▶ **Remote Desktop Sharing** ▶ **Remote Windows Connection** to launch the Terminal Server Client. (This application is provided with the Professional edition and can be downloaded from Xandros Networks for the other editions.)
4. Complete the **General** tab. As shown on the left, you can leave the **User Name**, **Password**, **Domain**, and **Client Hostname** boxes blank if you are connecting to a computer on a local area network (LAN). If you complete them, they are those required for the destination computer.
5. To connect to the computer specified, click **Connect**. A window displays the remote Windows screen. You may have to wait for the window to display if the connection is slow. If the remote Windows computer is password-protected, you log in remotely. A user on the remote Windows computer is notified when you log in, but not when you log out.
6. To invoke a program upon next connection, use the **Programs** tab.

Connecting with NX Client

The NX Client allows you to log in remotely and run a graphical application on any operating system over a network. The NX Client is provided free and requires an NX Server product. The client and server product need to be installed on your Linux computer, then the client needs to be installed on the computer that you want to access, for example your Xandros computer or a Windows computer. An evaluation version of the server product for Linux is available at **www.nomachine.com/download.php** During configuration, you choose if the application runs inside a window on your desktop or covers the entire desktop.

To configure the NX Client

1. Click **Launch** ▶ **Applications** ▶ **System** ▶ **NX Client for Linux** ▶ **NX Connection Wizard**. The wizard launches.
2. Click **Next**.
3. Complete the Session window:

   Type the name of your computer, your name, or the name that you want to use when you connect each time in the **Session** box.

   Type the IP address or name of the NX server to connect to in the **Host** box and its **Port** number. The default port is 22. On a Xandros computer, the IP address and name of the computer can be viewed in the **Network Connections** panel of the Control Center.

Click and drag the slider to indicate the type of Internet connection:

MODEM — If you use a telephone line or cable modem and cable television line to connect to the Internet

ISDN — If you use Integrated Services Digital Network (ISDN) adapter and a telephone or other line to connect to the Internet

ADSL — If you use an Asymmetrical Digital Subscriber Line (DSL) modem and a telephone line to connect to the Internet

WAN — If the computer is on a wide area network (WAN)

LAN — If the computer is on a local area network (LAN), for example using an Ethernet card in an office with a high-speed Internet connection

Click **Next**.

4 Complete the Desktop window:

From the first two drop-down lists, select the operating system and desktop of the computer to which you will connect. When you are connecting to a Xandros computer, select **Unix** and **KDE**.

In the other boxes, specify the screen size to use for your computer so that the applications appear correctly on your computer. You can use the **Fullscreen** or specify your settings, which can be viewed in the **Settings** panel of the Control Center. If in doubt, leave the default value of **Available Area**.

To encrypt the connection, enable the **Enable SSL encryption of all traffic** check box (recommended).

Click **Next**.

5 Click **Finish**. The settings are saved and the login window appears.

To access a server or computer remotely

1 Click **Launch** ▶ **Applications** ▶ **System** ▶ **NX Client for Linux**.

2 Type the user name in the **Login** box. It is the user name for logging in to NX server.

3 Type the **Password** for this account.

4 From the **Session** drop-down list, select which NX server account you want to use.

5 Click **Login**.

6 When prompted about authentication and keys, click **Yes** to indicate that you want to continue connecting. The system connects.

7 If you are unable to access a folder, in the **Services** tab, enable the **Enable SMB printing and file sharing** check box, and click **OK**.

Connecting to a virtual private network

A virtual private network (VPN) is used to connect a computer at one location to a computer or network at another location. For example, a telecommuter works at home and connects securely to the office network, thereby obtaining access to their own files. In this case, you sit at your Xandros Desktop at home, use the VPN application to connect to the office over the Internet, open Xandros File Manager, and access your files in the Windows Network and/or NFS Network.

The application included with Xandros Desktop enables a point-to-point tunnelling protocol (PPTP) connection; you need an account on the server to use it, for example on a Windows server at the office. If the Xandros Firewall Wizard is active at either end of the connection, ensure that VPN access is enabled.

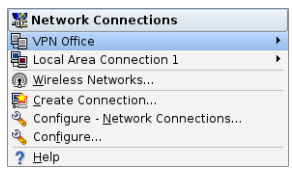
To use a VPN, you set up an account in the Connection Wizard, then connect.

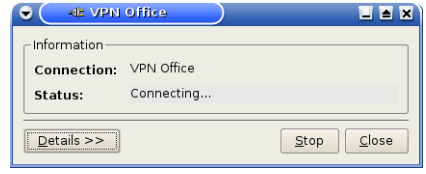
To set up a VPN connection account

- See “To set up a VPN connection account” on page 65.

To connect to a VPN

- Click the network connections icon on the Panel, select the VPN connection, then **Connect**. The connection is established and you are able to access files on the remote computer, for example a file over a Windows network in Xandros File Manager. In the example shown here, the VPN connection is named VPN Office.





Connected by VPN

If you are unable to connect to the computer, click the **Details** button for information. You can check that VPN access is allowed, for example that a firewall does not block your connection.

To terminate a VPN connection

- Click the network connections icon on the Panel, select the VPN connection, then **Disconnect**.

Using Xandros Server

Xandros Server is software to configure and manage servers and resources. You can establish Web sites, file transfer protocol (FTP) sites, file servers, VPNs, and manage user accounts and printing, for example. Users of Xandros Server can install and run Xandros Management Console (xMC). This feature means that you can manage your servers from any Xandros computer in the network.

To run Xandros Management Console

1 Install Xandros Management Console from Xandros Networks as follows. Click **Launch ▶ Xandros Networks** and follow the prompts. Click **New Applications**, then **Servers**, and install **Xandros Management Console**, following the prompts.

2 Launch Xandros Management Console by clicking **Launch ▶ Applications ▶ Server Management ▶ Xandros Management Console**. The application launches and the login window appears.

Xandros Management Console application of Xandros Server

Using the Internet

9

With the applications provided in Xandros Desktop, you can use the Internet, set up a firewall, make phone calls, send electronic mail, and check the weather, just to name a few examples. The following table outlines the Internet-related applications available.

Application	Function	Page
Connection Wizard	Lets you create an Internet connection account	57
Network Connections applet	Lets you connect to the Internet	195
Firewall Wizard	Lets you use set access to your computer and share an Internet connection	197
Firefox Web Browser	Lets you view Web pages, access FTP servers, and other file systems	201
Xandros File Manager	Lets you view Web pages, access FTP servers, and other file systems	201
Cache	Lets you clear the cache	205
Cookies	Lets you manage cookies	206

table continued

Application	Function	Page
OpenOffice.org Web	Lets you create and edit Web pages	207
Thunderbird Mail	Lets you send and receive e-mail, and view newsgroups	208
KDE Mail	Lets you send and receive e-mail, and view newsgroups	211
Personal Information Manager	Provides e-mail, address book, and scheduling functions; includes a Microsoft Exchange 2000 plug-in	214
News Ticker	Lets you view news on your desktop in the form of a ticker	217
Web cam	Information on using a Web cam	219
Skype Internet Calling	Lets you use the Internet to make phone calls	220
Instant Messaging	Lets you chat online with text messages	226
Weather	Provides weather information, such as temperature, wind speed, and air pressure	228
Stock Ticker	Scrolls stock quotes on the Panel	229

Connecting to the Internet

When you have an Ethernet connection to a network with a Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) server or if a network connection was set up during the installation process, your network connection is enabled automatically on startup. The quickest way to determine if this situation applies is to launch Firefox Web Browser and try to access a Web site.

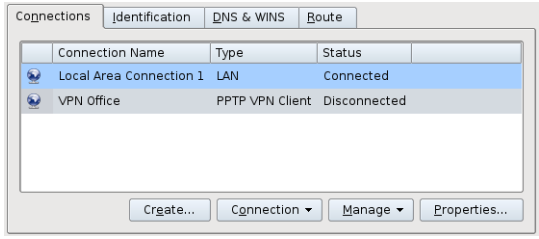
With a manual connection, such as with dial-up service or cable modem, you need to have a connection account in Xandros Desktop.

Determining if connection accounts exist

Depending on your hardware and the connection accounts created during installation of Xandros Desktop, there can be one or more connection accounts established for your computer.

To view connection accounts

1. Click **Launch** ▶ **Control Center**.
2. Click **Network**, then **Network Connections**. Any accounts are listed.
3. If you do not have an Ethernet connection account that was automatically configured during installation, you need to create a connection account. Click **Create** and follow "Setting up a connection account" on page 57. In the example shown here, there is one Ethernet connection that was set up during installation and is connected to the Internet automatically (shown as the LAN connection) and a virtual private network (VPN) account that was created.



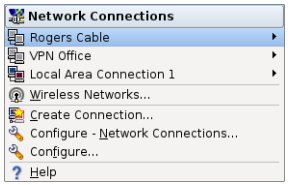
Network connections

Making an Internet connection

When you have a modem, depending on the settings configured in the Connection Wizard, the connection is initiated automatically on startup or you manually connect to your Internet service provider (ISP). This section outlines how to manually connect to the Internet and how to share this connection among multiple users. When you share an Internet connection among several computers over a local network, these computers share the connection simultaneously.

To manually connect to an ISP

- Click the network connections icon on the Panel, select the connection type, then **Connect**. The connection is established and you are able to use a Web browser, for example In the example shown here, a cable modem is selected for connection.



Selecting an account to connect to the Internet

To connect to the network server automatically upon login, in the **Network Connections** panel, click **Properties**, select **On Boot** from the drop-down list, and click **OK**. This option is not available for all connection types.

If only the Administrator account connects automatically upon login, copy their **konnect.desktop** file in the **.kde/Autostart/** folder and copy it into **/usr/share/autostart/** This allows all users to dial out on login.

If you need to use a cell phone with a laptop to get Internet access, add a line to the UDEV rules to permit the Xandros connection system to view the device. As Administrator, access the file **/etc/udev/rules.d/50-xandros-udev.rules** Under the **usb modems** category add the following line if it is not already there:
KERNEL="ttyACM[0-9]", NAME="%k", GROUP="dialout", MODE="0660",SYMLINK="usb/tts/%k"

If you want to use Internet connection sharing whereby multiple users can access a single Internet connection over a local network, see “Using the firewall” on page 197.

To disconnect from an ISP

- Click the network connections icons on the Panel, select the connection, then **Disconnect**.

To share an Internet connection

1. Access the **Network Connections** panel in the Control Center.
2. Select the connection to be shared.
3. Click **Properties**.
4. Click the **Sharing** tab.
5. Enable the check box.
6. Click **OK** to exit from the window.

Using the firewall

You can activate a firewall to provide protection from unauthorized access of your computer and to block outgoing services.

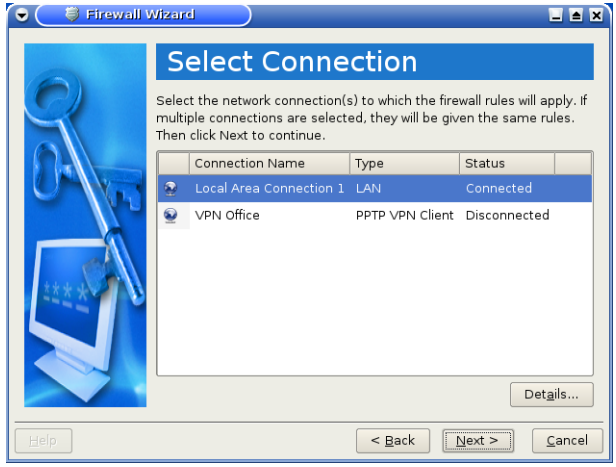
Complete the wizard at the computer that you want protected.

The firewall opens inbound ports and blocks outbound ports specified by you. If you do not run the firewall wizard, all the ports/services are open.

When your computer is within a corporation, the corporation may already have firewalls set up that are invisible to you.

To set up the firewall

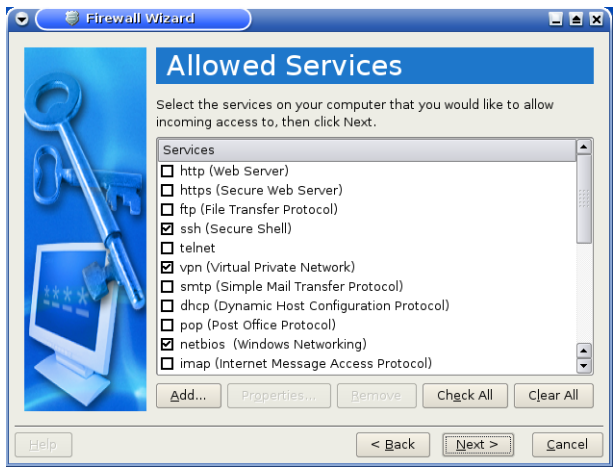
1. Click **Launch** ▶ **Applications** ▶ **System** ▶ **Security** ▶ **Firewall Wizard**. If you are not logged in as Administrator, the password is required, then the wizard launches.
2. In the wizard, click **Next**.
3. From the drop-down list, select the connection(s) to which the firewall rules will apply. The connection types displayed are those that were established during installation or created subsequently in the Connection Wizard, and you can apply the firewall rules to several connections.



Selecting the Internet connection in the Firewall Wizard

Click **Next**.

4 Enable the check boxes of the services for which you want to allow access. The selections available depend on the connection type selected. They include:



Identifying access allowed to the computer

- **http and https (Web server)** — When the computer hosts Web pages and you want to allow access to it, for example over the Internet. Please note that these options do not determine whether your computer users can access the Internet.
- **ftp (File Transfer Protocol)** — To allow access to the computer by the file transfer protocol (FTP) when it functions as an FTP server

- **ssh (Secure Shell)** — To allow remote access to the computer, for example for maintenance by administrators, including over the Internet. SSH is also a protocol used for remote access of Web and other servers.
- **telnet** — To allow remote access to the computer by logging in by telnet command
- **vpn (Virtual Private Network)** — To allow access to the computer by VPN, which means logging in remotely
- **smtp (Simple Mail Transfer Protocol)** — To allow access to the computer by this e-mail protocol
- **dhcp (Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol)** — To allow the IP address of the computer to change dynamically from an outside source, such as your ISP
- **pop (Post Office Protocol)** — To allow access to the computer by this e-mail protocol
- **netbios (Windows Networking)** — To allow access to the shared files on your computer, over a Windows network
- **imap (Internet Message Access Protocol)** — To allow access to the computer by this e-mail protocol
- **ldap (Lightweight Directory Access Protocol)** — To allow access to the computer for use by the directory protocol that facilitates finding and accessing computers by relating names to network addresses
- **rsync (Remote Synch)** — To allow access to the computer so that it can be synchronized with another computer, for example your computer contains applications that need to be kept up to date
- **vnc (Virtual Network Computing)** — To allow access by another computer remotely to view your desktop and/or take control of your desktop
- **dns (Domain Name System)** — To allow access to the computer when it functions as a DNS server to facilitate finding and accessing computers by relating names to network addresses
- **tftp (Trivial FTP)** — To allow access to the computer by the file transfer protocol that is simpler than regular FTP and does not require authentication
- **nfs (Network File System)** — To allow access to the shared files on your computer, over a Linux/UNIX network
- **ntp (Network Time Protocol)** — To allow access to the computer so that it can be used to synchronize the time clock of other computers
- **Instant Messaging** — When you want to chat online by sending text messages to others or make Skype Internet Calling faster

- **Peer to Peer file-sharing server** — If you use applications such as BitTorrent that download files and share the load among several users over a network or the Internet
- **Network Gaming Server** — When you play games with others over a network or Internet
- **Ignore ping requests** — ping refers to a query to verify an IP address or determine an address of a computer, for example `ping xandros.com` provides the address 66.199.183.6
- **Event Logging** — To log information relating to the firewall in the Event Viewer. The Event Viewer is accessible at **Launch ▶ Applications ▶ System ▶ Event Viewer**.

To allow access to specific ports:

- Click **Add**.
- Type a name for the new rule in the **Service Name** box.
- Select the ports in the **From** and **To** boxes.
- Click **Add to List**.
- Click **OK** to add the service to the list and enable access.

Click **Next**.

5 Enable the check boxes of the outgoing services that you want to block. To block access to specific ports, click **Add**. When finished, click **Next**.

6 Click **Finish**. The settings are applied.

The firewall is only one means of security. Hardware/software firewall combinations and antivirus protection can also be used, such as Xandros Anti-Virus.

To change your firewall settings

- Run the firewall wizard again.

To start or stop the firewall

- Click **Launch ▶ Applications ▶ System ▶ Security ▶ Xandros Security Suite**.

Browsing the World Wide Web

You can browse the World Wide Web using the Firefox Web Browser, Xandros File Manager, or another application installed for that purpose. You can open a variety of file types, including HTML and PDF. Plug-ins can be added to view additional file types.

You can bookmark Web pages that you view frequently for easy access and set the default Web browser.

Pop-up windows are blocked by default in Firefox Web Browser, but you can manage these on a per-site basis.

Viewing Web pages

You can view Web pages using Firefox Web Browser and Xandros File Manager. The Firefox Web Browser has a clean interface and protection against spyware.

To view a Web page using Firefox Web Browser

1. While connected to the Internet, click **Launch** ▶ **Applications** ▶ **Internet** ▶ **Firefox Web Browser.**
2. Type a Web site address in the white box, for example **www.xandros.com** or **http://home.xandros.com** and press **Enter.**

To increase the size of the fonts, click **Edit** ▶ **Preferences**. Under **Content**, change the font sizes.

Using Firefox Web Browser to view Web pages

You can download and install Firefox Web Browser in more than 30 languages from www.mozilla.com

You can add applications and other functions, such as weather conditions, to the tool bar and browser window. In Firefox Web Browser, select **Tools ▶ Extensions** and click **Get More Extensions**.

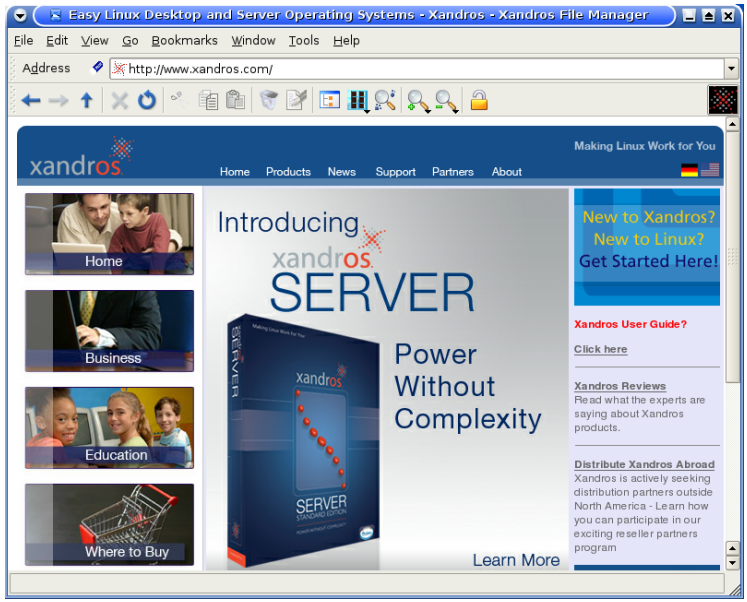
To view a Web page using Xandros File Manager

1 While connected to the Internet, click **Launch ▶ Xandros File Manager**.

2 Click **View**, and disable the **Tree** check box.

3 Type a Web site address in the **Address** box, for example **www.xandros.com** or **http://home.xandros.com** and press **Enter**.

4 To increase the size of the font, click **Tools ▶ Configure Xandros File Manager**.


Easy Linux Desktop and Server Operating Systems - Xandros - Xandros File Manager
File Edit View Go Bookmarks Window Tools Help
Address http://www.xandros.com/
xandros
Home Products News Support Partners About
Making Linux Work for You
Home
Business
Education
Where to Buy
Introducing xandros SERVER
Power Without Complexity
Learn More
New to Xandros? New to Linux? Get Started Here!
Xandros User Guide?
Click here
Xandros Reviews
Read what the experts are saying about Xandros products.
Distribute Xandros Abroad
Xandros is actively seeking distribution partners outside North America - Learn how you can participate in our exciting reseller partners program

Using Xandros File Manager to view Web pages

To run the Konqueror Web browser, click **Launch ▶ Run Command**, type `konqueror`, and click **Run**. To create a shortcut to it, right-click on the desktop, select **Create New ▶ Shortcut**, use the **Program** option, and type `konqueror` in the box. You can change the desktop icon by right-clicking it, selecting **Properties**, and clicking the icon shown. If you use Konqueror, please note that it is not supported by Xandros.

You can install Internet Explorer using CrossOver Office. See “Installing Windows-based applications” on page 33.

To revisit a Web page using the history list

1 Click the arrow to the right of the address box.
2 From the list that displays, click the Web page to revisit.

To refresh the Web browser

- Click the **Refresh** or **Reload current page** icon on the tool bar.

To interrupt a Web page transmission

- Click the **Stop** or **Stop loading this page** icon on the tool bar.

To bookmark a Web page

- With the page open, click **Bookmarks** ▶ **Bookmark This Page** or **Bookmarks** ▶ **Add Bookmark**.

To view a bookmarked Web page

- Click **Bookmarks**, and select the Web page from the list.

To change the home page

1 In Firefox Web Browser, click **Edit** ▶ **Preferences**.
2 In the **General** tab, change the address in the **Location** box.
3 Click **Close**.

To set the default Web browser

1 Click **Launch** ▶ **Control Center**.
2 Click **General Settings**, then **Desktop Behavior**, then **Component Chooser**.
3 Click **Web Browser**.
4 Set the default.
5 Click **Apply**.

Transferring files using FTP

You can download files using the File Transfer Protocol (FTP) with a Web browser. FTP lets you transfer files and folders across the Internet.

To download a file using FTP

1 In the **Address** box of a Web browser, type the address of the remote location. Precede the address with **ftp://** An example is **ftp://ftp.xandros.com**
2 Press **Enter**.
3 Select the file to view/download. You may need a password or an account before you can view or transfer files by FTP, depending on the permissions set on the remote computer.

To transfer files to an FTP site, for example because you have a Web site and transfer files to it by FTP, use Xandros File Manager. Enter the address of the site in Xandros File Manager, such as **ftp://intranet**, then log in when prompted. You can then drag and drop files into and out of the site. Or you can try gFTP; install it in Xandros Networks by setting the source to the Debian unsupported site.

Creating an FTP server

You can have your computer function as an FTP server, for example to download files to a laptop computer while you are away on a trip or to allow several people to upload files remotely to your computer.

To create an FTP server

1. If using Xandros Firewall Wizard, ensure that FTP access is enabled.
2. Install ProFTPD from the Applications CD or Xandros Networks.
3. From a remote computer, open Xandros File Manager or a Web browser. (In Windows, try an FTP program to download the files, not a Web browser.)
4. Type `ftp://0.0.0.0` substituting 0.0.0.0 with the IP address of your computer, then log in to your user account. You can view your IP address in the **Network Connections** panel of the Control Center.
5. When using Xandros File Manager, right-click a file to open it.

   For security, you can turn FTP access on and off in the **Services** panel of the Control Center; set the **Start Mode** to **Manual** to turn it off.

If you create a user account specifically for FTP access and allow others to upload files to the computer, they may load files that can harm the computer system and files.

Blocking advertising and images

You can set options to manage pop-up ads and images when viewing sites with the Firefox Web Browser. Most pop-up windows are blocked by default, but you can allow them on a site-by-site basis when such functionality is required. Images are allowed by default, and when you block them you block all images on a Web site.

To manage pop-up ads and images

1. Click **Launch** ▶ **Applications** ▶ **Internet** ▶ **Firefox Web Browser**.
2. Click **Edit** ▶ **Preferences**.
3. Click the **Content** icon.
4. With the **Block Popup Windows** option enabled, click **Allowed Sites** and complete the information to enable popup windows for a specific site.
5. With the **Load Images** option enabled, click **Exceptions** and complete the information to block all images from a specific site.
6. When finished, click **Close** to exit the preferences window.

Clearing caches

A cache stores parts of Web pages that you have viewed, such as the images. It is used to reload pages quickly. For privacy or security, you may want to clear the caches.

To clear the Firefox Web Browser cache

1. In Firefox Web Browser, click **Edit** ▶ **Preferences**.
2. Click the **Privacy** icon.
3. Click the **Cache** tab.
4. Click **Clear Cache Now**.
5. Click **Close** to exit from the window.

To clear the Xandros File Manager cache

1. In Xandros File Manager, click **Tools** ▶ **Configure Xandros File Manager**.
2. Scroll down and click **Cache**.
3. Click **Clear Cache**.
4. Click **OK** to exit from the window.

The **Cache** panel in the Control Center clears the Xandros File Manager cache.

Managing cookies

Cookies contain information specific to your Web viewing activities, such as your location for television listings, items that you have viewed on a shop site, and items you have placed in a shopping basket. They can be used to customize banner advertising as well. They are initiated by remote servers. For privacy and security, cookies can be managed. For example, you can disable cookies so that information about your Internet activity is not maintained, or you can be notified each time a cookie is initiated.

To manage cookies for Firefox Web Browser

1. In Firefox Web Browser, click **Edit** ▶ **Preferences**.
2. Click the **Privacy** icon.
3. Click the **Cookies** tab.
4. Set your options, for example enable the **for the originating site only** option.
5. Click **Close** to exit from the window.

To manage cookies for Xandros File Manager

1. In Xandros File Manager, click **Tools** ▶ **Configure Xandros File Manager**.
2. Click **Cookies**.
3. Set your options. See the online help file for an explanation of each option.
4. Click **OK** to exit from the window.

The **Cookies** panel in the Control Center manages cookies for Xandros File Manager.

Creating Web pages

Several applications included in Xandros Desktop can be used to prepare content for Web sites, including OpenOffice.org and the Text Editor. In the Professional edition, the equivalent Star Office applications are used.

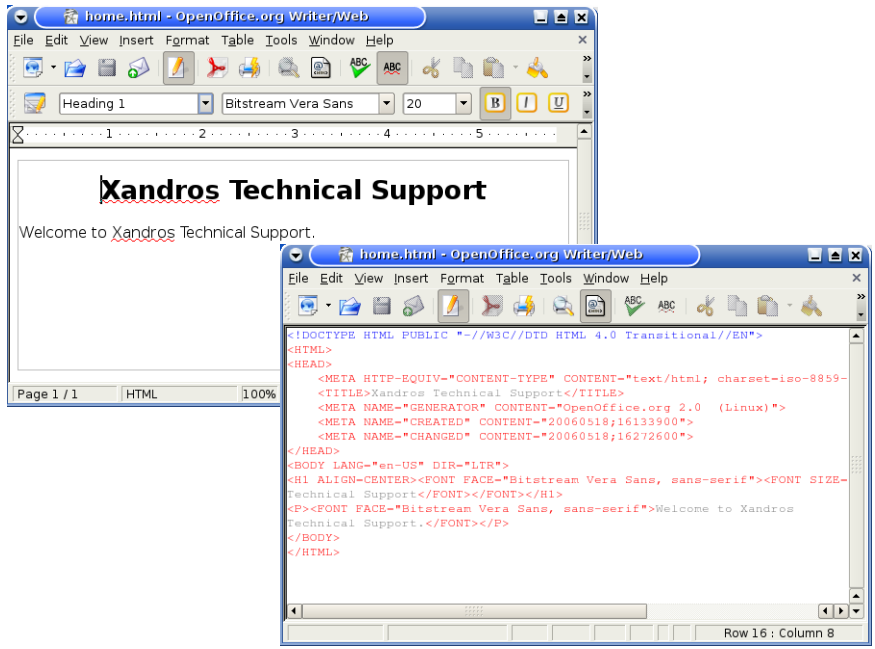
OpenOffice.org Web is designed specifically for writing and editing Web pages. You can work on the HTML source code directly or work on the page in a user-friendly interface. You can also save the files as OpenOffice.org Word Processor files. Similarly, the OpenOffice.org Word Processor lets you save your work as a Web page and produces an HTML file.

With the Text Editor you can code in HTML. Tags can be color-coded.

To use OpenOffice.org

1. Click **Launch ▶ Applications ▶ OpenOffice.org ▶ Tools ▶ Web**. If OpenOffice.org is not installed, install it from the Applications CD or Xandros Networks.
2. Type your content and save the file. You do not need to type tags, only content.
3. To view the HTML source code, click **View ▶ HTML Source**.

See the online help in the OpenOffice.org for more information.

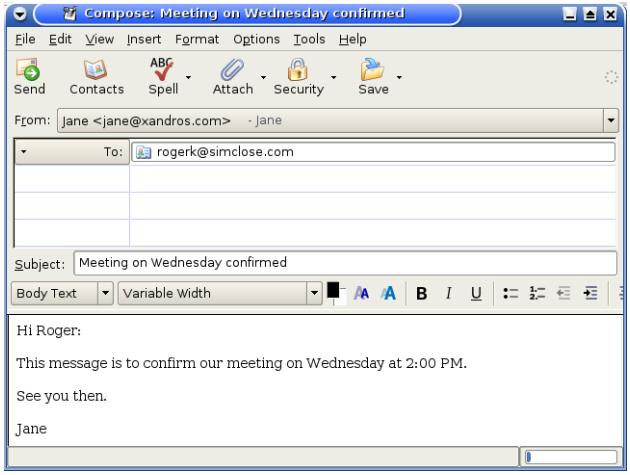


Adding content (left) and viewing HTML source code (right) in OpenOffice.org

Sending and receiving e-mail with Thunderbird Mail

Thunderbird Mail is usually the default e-mail application for Xandros Desktop. Configure and/or use KDE Mail instead if you will use the Personal Information Manager or the Organizer to send e-mail notification of a meeting to attendees, for example.

You can send and receive e-mail using Thunderbird Mail, and you can set parameters to filter unwanted e-mail, referred to as spam or junk mail. You need to have an Internet connection and an existing e-mail account before you can send and receive e-mail; see "Configuring Internet connections" on page 57, "Connecting to the Internet" on page 195, and "To set up an e-mail account for Thunderbird Mail" on page 66.


Compose: Meeting on Wednesday confirmed
File Edit View Insert Format Options Tools Help
Send Contacts Spell Attach Security Save
From: Jane <jane@xandros.com> - Jane
To: rogerk@simclose.com
Subject: Meeting on Wednesday confirmed
Body Text Variable Width
Hi Roger:
This message is to confirm our meeting on Wednesday at 2:00 PM.
See you then.
Jane

Sending an e-mail in Thunderbird Mail

To receive e-mail

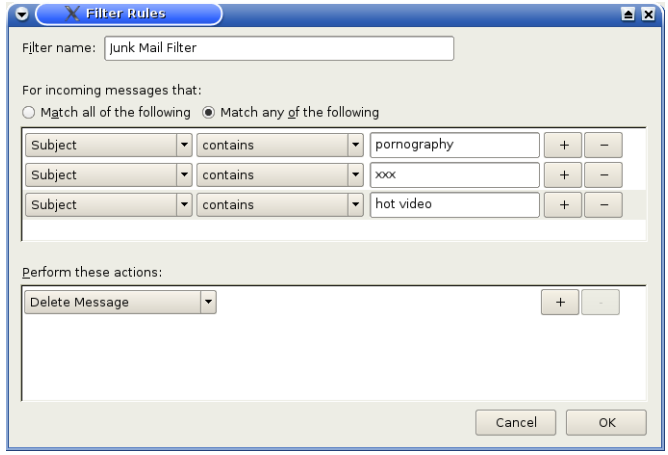
1. Click **Launch** ▶ **Applications** ▶ **Internet** ▶ **Thunderbird Mail**. When you are on a network and require passwords to receive and/or send e-mail, you are prompted to provide the passwords.
2. When you have mail, it appears under the **Subject** column. Click on the entry to view the message in the window portion below it.
3. Otherwise, click the **Get Mail** button to download mail from the mail server. A message appears at the bottom of the window when there are no new messages. If you cannot receive e-mail and you ran the Firewall Wizard, ensure that IMAP or POP, as appropriate, was allowed.

To send e-mail

1 Click **Launch** ▶ **Applications** ▶ **Internet** ▶ **Thunderbird Mail**.
2 Click the **Write** button.
3 Type the recipient's e-mail address in the **To** box. An example is rogerk@simclose.com
4 Type the title of the message in the **Subject** box.
5 Type your message in the blank space.
6 To send files with the message, click the **Attach** button.
7 Click the **Send** button.

Filtering unwanted messages

You can filter incoming e-mail by subject, sender, date, and other categories. For example, you can delete messages from specified senders without ever viewing the messages. The filtering mechanism can also be applied to newsgroup postings.



Setting a filter to delete certain e-mail messages

To filter unwanted messages

1 Click **Launch** ▶ **Applications** ▶ **Internet** ▶ **Thunderbird Mail**.
2 Click **Tools** ▶ **Message Filters**.
3 If you have multiple e-mail accounts, from the **Filters for** drop-down list, select the e-mail account to which filters will apply.
4 Click **New**.
5 Type a **Filter name**.
6 Enable the check box of the match to apply:

- **Match all of the following** — Match every filter specified by you before filtering the e-mail message
- **Match any of the following** — If any filter specified by you is matched, filter the e-mail message

7 Click the **Subject** box to select the object to which the filter applies, such as subject or sender of the message.

8 Click the **contains** box to select the filter type.

9 Click the box to the right of the **Contains** box, and type the words to search for. For example, you can filter all messages with the word “pornography” in the Subject field.

10 To add a second filter, click **+**. For example, you can further specify that you want messages containing “xxx” to be filtered.

11 Select the options from the **Perform these actions** area to determine what happens to the filtered mail. For example, you can delete the message directly.

12 Click **OK** to save the filter.

13 Close the Message Filters window.

14 In Thunderbird Mail, click **Tools ▶ Junk Mail Controls** and click **OK** when a pop-up window appears.

15 Activate additional options and click **OK**.

These filters block only a portion of unwanted messages. Some ISPs automatically provide filters that prevent spam from being downloaded to your computer. You can also download or purchase third-party applications to block or filter additional unwanted messages.

Sending and receiving e-mail with KDE Mail

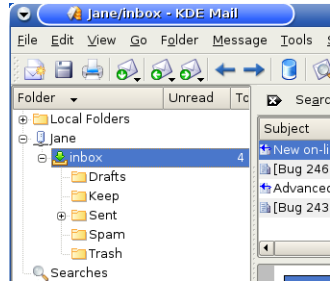
While Thunderbird Mail is the default e-mail application in most editions of Xandros Desktop, you can also configure and/or use KDE Mail, which will allow you to integrate functions, such as meeting scheduling, in a hybrid network of Windows and Linux computers.

You need to have an Internet connection and an existing e-mail account before you can send and receive e-mail; see “Configuring Internet connections” on page 57, “Connecting to the Internet” on page 195, and “To set up an e-mail account for KDE Mail” on page 68.

To receive e-mail

1 Click **Launch ▶ Applications ▶ Internet ▶ KDE Mail**.

2 Click **File ▶ Check Mail**. Be sure to expand your e-mail account to view your mail (not **Local Folders**). If you cannot receive e-mail and you ran the Firewall Wizard, ensure that IMAP or POP, as appropriate, was allowed.



Accessing mail in KDE Mail

To send e-mail

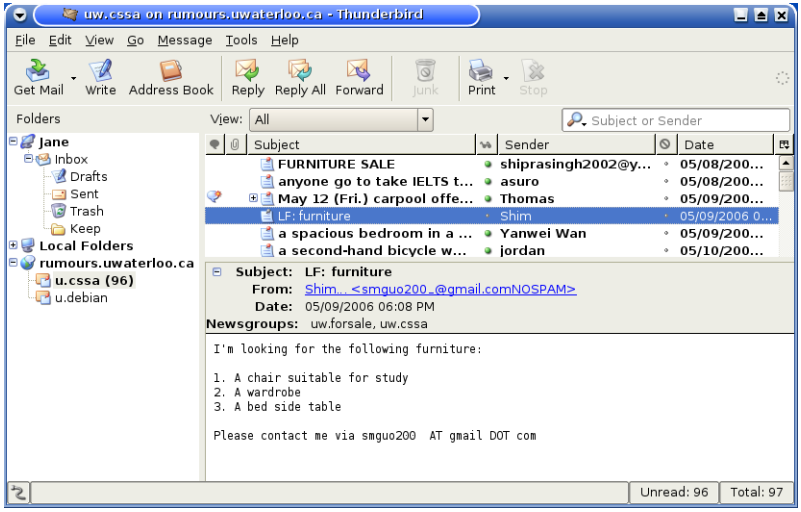
- In KDE Mail, click **Message ▶ New Message**.

Connecting to newsgroups

You can access newsgroups over the Internet. Newsgroups are online information and discussion groups, for example job postings, real estate notices, and travel bargains. You can read and post text messages to newsgroups.

You can also filter messages. See “Filtering unwanted messages” on page 209.

You need the address of the newsgroup that you want to view. Examples are news.example.net and rumours.uwaterloo.ca Your ISP may host newsgroups, and you can view lists of newsgroups at www.newzbot.com

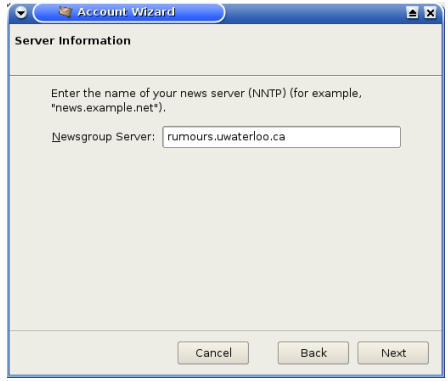


Accessing a newsgroup in Thunderbird Mail

To connect to newsgroups

1 Click **Launch ▶ Applications ▶ Internet ▶ Thunderbird Mail**.

2 If you have not set up an e-mail or newsgroup account, an Account Wizard is displayed. If the wizard is not shown and you want to set up a newsgroup account, click **Edit ▶ Account Settings**, and click **Add Account**. Enable the **Newsgroup account** option, and complete the Account Wizard.



Configuring the account wizard to access the rumours.uwaterloo.ca newsgroup

3 In Thunderbird Mail, click the newsgroup folder on the left side of the window, for example **news** or **rumours.uwaterloo.ca**.

4 Click **File ▶ Subscribe**. (You need to be connected to the Internet to view the list of newsgroups.)

5 Expand the list, enable the check box of the required newsgroup, and click **Subscribe**.

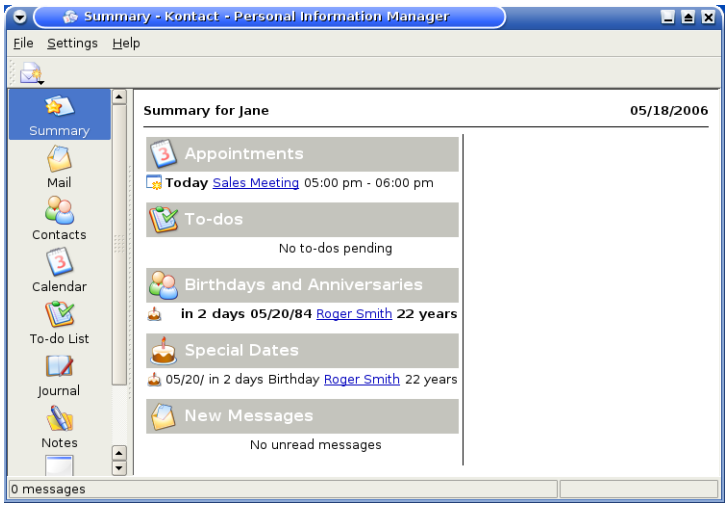
6 Click **OK** to exit from the window.

7 Click the newsgroup folder on the left side of the window to display the postings.

8 Click a posting to read it.

Using the Personal Information Manager

The Personal Information Manager provides e-mail, address book, scheduling, and other functions. It is integrated with the Organizer calendar, KDE Mail, Address Book, Palm Pilot Tool, and weather applet.



Summary window of the Personal Information Manager

To launch the Personal Information Manager

- Click **Launch ▶ Applications ▶ Accessories ▶ Personal Information Manager.** When you already have an e-mail account set up in KDE Mail and it requires authentication, you are prompted for the password. The view last open appears. In the Summary window, to-do tasks and appointments for the current day are shown, as well as birthdays for a week.

To set up mail

- Click the **Mail** icon. If you have a KDE Mail account set up, it appears. Otherwise, click **Settings ▶ Configure KMail** and follow the instructions in "To set up an e-mail account for KDE Mail" on page 68.

To get mail

1. Click the **Mail** icon.
2. Click **File ▶ Check Mail.** Be sure to expand your e-mail account to view your mail (not **Local Folders**).

To send mail

1. Click the **Mail** icon.
2. Click **Message ▶ New Message.**

To set the weather station

1. Click **Settings** ▶ **Configure Kontact**.
2. Click **Weather Service**.
3. Expand the **Available stations** lists and select the required weather location.
4. Click **Add**.
5. You can view weather information for more than one location; add the rest.
6. Click **Update All**.
7. Click **OK** to exit from the window.
8. The weather information may not load immediately. Exit, then relaunch the application to test if it works. The weather information appears in the Summary window.
9. To display the weather information in metric units, change them in the **Other** tab of the **Regional Settings** panel in the Control Center.

To use the address book

1. Click the **Contacts** icon.
2. To add a new entry, click **File** ▶ **New Contact**.
3. To import an address book from another application, export the book from that application, then click **File** ▶ **Import** here and select the format. You may need to click on the column headings to specify what each column is.
4. To send an e-mail to the contact, select the contact entry and click **File** ▶ **Send Email to Contact**.

To set birthdays

1. Under **Contacts**, double-click an entry to edit it, click the **Details** tab, and specify the birth date (for example June 1, 1960) in the **Birthdate** field.
2. Click **OK**. Birthdays for the next week appear in the Summary window.

To create a to-do list

1. Click the **To-do List** icon.
2. Click **File** ▶ **New To-do**.
3. Type an action for the task in the **Title** box, for example “Prepare for Sales meeting”.
4. Select when you want to start or finish the task by enabling the **Start** or **Due** check box. Further specify the time to start or finish by enabling the **Time associated** check box and specifying the time. A Start or Due date must coincide with the current date for the task to appear in the Summary window.
5. Click **OK** to exit from the window.

To schedule a meeting

1 Click the **Calendar** icon.

2 Click **File** ▶ **New Event**.

3 In the **General** tab, specify the following information:

- **Title** — Name of meeting
- **Location** — Room or address of meeting
- **Start** — Date and time the meeting starts
- **End** — Date and time the meeting ends
- **Reminder** — Enable to be reminded of the meeting; leaving the **Show time as** box with **Busy** means that no else can schedule a meeting with you for the same time
- Text box — Text for attendees to read
- **Select Categories** — Indicate the purpose of the meeting (optional)
- **Access** — Indicate if you want others to be able to view the meeting details

4 In the **Attendees** tab, specify the following information:

- Click **New**.
- Type the e-mail address of the attendee in the **Name** box.
- Add any other attendees.
- The **Request response** option does not work at this time; attendees are notified of the meeting only.

5 If you want the meeting to recur, set this in the **Recurrence** tab.

6 To include an attachment with the e-mail to be sent to attendees, add it in the **Attachments** tab.

7 When finished, click **OK**.

8 If you set up an event with other attendees, ensure that KDE Mail has been configured (see "To set up an e-mail account for KDE Mail" on page 68), select the event in your calendar, click **Schedule** ▶ **Publish**. An e-mail is sent to the attendee with the details of the meeting.

When attempting to schedule a meeting, you may not be able to view the schedule of an invited attendee in the **Free/Busy** tab. Use Evolution instead.

See "Using the scheduler" on page 322 for more information about using Organizer.

To change the calendar view

- Click **View** and select the required time period.

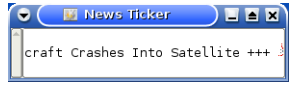
Using the News Ticker

The News Ticker scrolls news on your desktop in the form of a ticker.

You can resize the window and place it anywhere on your desktop. You can view news from multiple sources, set an update interval, and scrolling speed. You can view a complete news story by clicking its link.

Some news sources are preconfigured by default. If you want to add a news source, for example your local newspaper, you need to know the .rdf or .rss Web site address for that newspaper. To find the address, contact the newspaper or search on the Web for a site that lets you search for them.

You need to be connected to the Internet for the News Ticker to scroll current news.



News Ticker on the desktop

You can also place a news ticker applet on the Panel. See “Using applets” on page 40. The application and applet are integrated; changes made to one are reflected in the other after they are relaunched.

To start the News Ticker

1. Click **Launch** ▶ **Applications** ▶ **Internet** ▶ **News Ticker**. News items from the default news sources scroll. If the application is not included in the menu, install it from Xandros Networks or the Applications CD.
2. Click and drag the edge of the window border to resize the window.
3. To change the font, right-click within the window, select **Configure KNewsTicker**, click the **Scroller** tab, and click **Choose Font**.

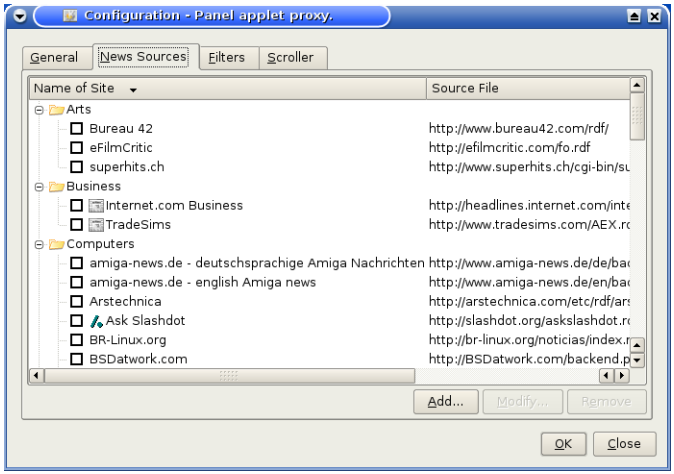
To view a complete news story

- Click the required news headline as it scrolls in the News Ticker. The default Web browser launches and displays the story.

You can also view and access news stories by clicking the arrow on the left side of the News Ticker.

To add a news source

1. Click the arrow on the left side of the News Ticker. The default news sources are listed at the top of the menu. Note that you can access the news stories from the Web sites using this menu.
2. Select **Configure KNewsTicker**.
3. Click the **News Sources** tab.



Identifying news sites for the News Ticker

4 Click **Add**.

5 Complete the information required for the source by providing a Web site address ending with .rdf or .rss in the **Source file** box. An example is http://linu.com/mrn/front_page.rss for the Linux.com news source. **Icon** files (optional) are indicated with a .ico suffix. Note that not all news sources have ticker content, even if you can set it as a default.

6 Click **OK** to add the source.

7 Click **OK** to return to the News Ticker.

To remove a news source

1 Click the arrow on the left side of the News Ticker.

2 Select **Configure KNewsTicker**.

3 Click the **News Sources** tab.

4 Disable the check boxes of the sources that you do not want to view. You can also remove it completely from the list by clicking **Remove**.

5 Click **OK** to exit from the window.

To set the update interval

1 Click the arrow on the left side of the News Ticker.

2 Select **Configure KNewsTicker**.

3 Move the **News query interval** slider to set the update interval.

4 Click **OK** to exit from the window.

To set scroll speed

1. Click the arrow on the left side of the news ticker.
2. Select **Configure KNewsTicker**.
3. Click the **Scroller** tab.
4. Move the **Scrolling speed** slider to the left to decrease speed or to the right to increase speed.
5. Click **OK** to exit from the window.

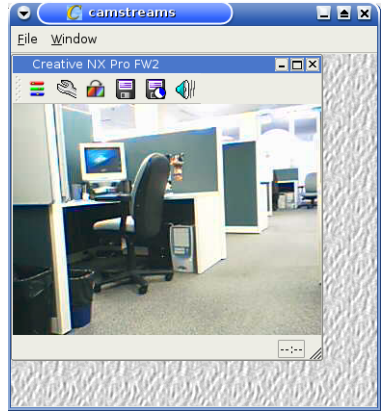
Using a Webcam

A Webcam can be used for video conferencing, security monitoring, and taking photographs, for example. Support in Linux is inconsistent.

To view camera output and take snapshots, try camstreams. Install it as camstream from the Applications CD or Xandros Networks; see "Installing applications from the Applications CD" on page 33. With the Webcam connected to the computer, start the application with **Launch ▶ Run Command** and entering `camstream`

Other applications that you can try from Xandros Networks (from the Debian unsupported site) are camorama and GnomeMeeting.

While Webcams are known to work with Xandros Desktop, please note that use is not officially supported.



Viewing output from a Creative Technology Webcam

To use a Webcam

1. Install camstreams.
2. Connect the Webcam to the computer.
3. Launch camstreams by clicking **Launch ▶ Run Command** and entering `camstream`
4. Click **File ▶ Open viewer**.
5. With the Webcam auto-detected in the **Device** drop-down list, leave the **Use current size** option enabled, and click **OK**. The camera image is displayed.

Making phone calls with Skype Internet Calling

You can make phone calls and send instant messages over the Internet. The destination can be a computer or a telephone, depending on the options you choose.

You need a headset with a microphone or a microphone and speakers. The headset can be a two-plug type or a USB plug, and it connects to the computer. You need a Skype account, which allows you to call other Skype accounts. If you want to call regular telephones or mobile phones, meaning users without Skype accounts, you need SkypeOut (not included). You can make conference calls with Skype users and using SkypeOut. The application works behind most firewalls, and it is available in several languages. You can also send instant messages with the application.

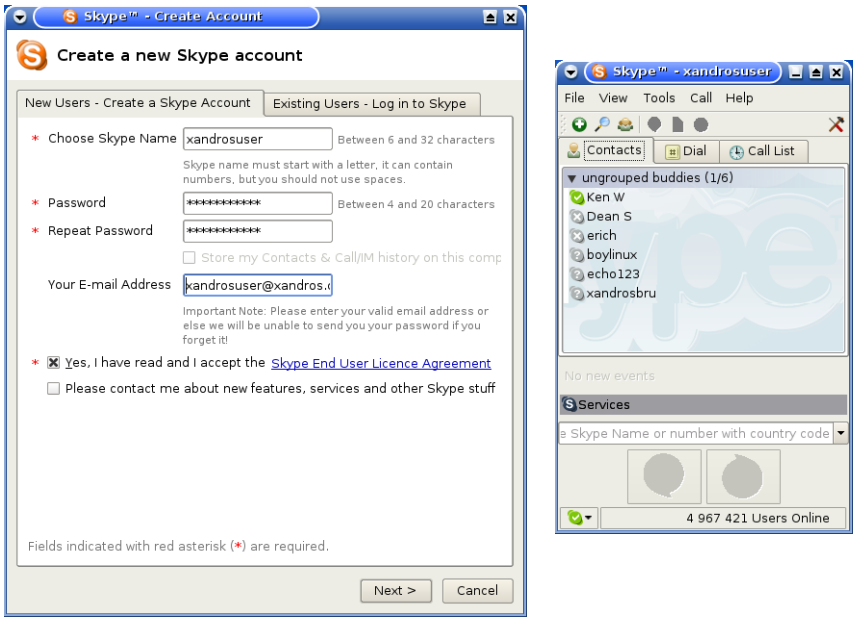
You can send instant text messages.

When using a headset with a USB plug, configuration of the application and sound mixer is required. Start with that procedure before attempting to make a phone call.

To make a phone call

1. While connected to the Internet, click **Launch ▶ Applications ▶ Internet ▶ Skype Internet Calling**. If the application is not in the menu, install it with Xandros Networks.

2 Click the **New Users - Create a Skype Account** tab to create a Skype account, or enter your Skype user name and password. Then click **Next** to log in and launch Skype.


Skype™ - Create Account
Create a new Skype account
New Users - Create a Skype Account
Existing Users - Log in to Skype
Choose Skype Name
xandrosuser
Between 6 and 32 characters
Skype name must start with a letter, it can contain numbers, but you should not use spaces.
Password
Between 4 and 20 characters
Repeat Password
Store my Contacts & Call/IM history on this comp
Your E-mail Address
xandrosuser@xandros.
Important Note: Please enter your valid email address or else we will be unable to send you your password if you forget it!
Yes, I have read and I accept the Skype End User Licence Agreement
Please contact me about new features, services and other Skype stuff
Fields indicated with red asterisk (*) are required.
Next >
Cancel
Skype™ - xandrosuser
File View Tools Call Help
Contacts
Dial
Call List
ungrouped buddies (1/6)
Ken W
Dean S
erich
boylinux
echo123
xandrosbru
No new events
Services
e Skype Name or number with country code
4 967 421 Users Online

Creating a Skype account (left) and main window of Skype Internet Calling (right)

3 In the Skype window, add a contact by clicking the **Contacts** tab, then **Tools ▶ Search for Skype Users** and search for the Skype account. Be specific, for example when searching for victork, search on victork because searching on victor may not display the entry for victork. Users currently logged in are shown. When you find the account, right-click it and select **Add to Contacts**. You can also add a contact without doing a search first, and offline, by clicking **Tools ▶ Add a Contact**. After prompting for authorization, the Skype account is added to the **Contacts** tab, and the person is notified that you have done so.

At this step, you can verify that the application works correctly by adding **echo123** as a contact. After adding it, select it, then click the small green phone icon. You will be able to record a message for 10 seconds and it will be played back to you. If you cannot hear the instructions or hear your message, see the troubleshooting section later in this section and try again. If the connection seems slow or is not made, for example because it says user not found, you may have changed the Firewall Wizard; enable the **Instant Messaging** option in the Firewall Wizard.

4 To make a connection, select the Skype account from the **Contacts** tab or type the account name in the empty box, then click the large green phone icon. The Skype user is notified of the call and may or may not answer. Computer-to-computer calls are encrypted.

5 To disconnect from a call, click the large red phone icon.

6 When someone adds your Skype account to their contact list, a window appears and you can allow or deny their attempts to phone you. You also have the option to add their Skype account to your contacts list.

7 To make a connection to a regular telephone or mobile phone, you use SkypeOut with a voucher or buy credits with your credit card then enter the phone number:

- In the **Dial** tab, click the **Use the Dialpad and SkypeOut...** link. A Web browser launches.
- Sign in to your Skype account.
- If you have a voucher, click the **Redeem Voucher** link. Otherwise, click a **Buy this** button.
- Complete the voucher or billing information. You will be billed in Euros.
- In Skype, type the area code and phone number that you want to call in the box near the bottom of the window, or use the key pad in the **Dial** tab. Include the country code even for local calls. Examples are +1 555 555-1234 and 00 1 555 555 1234 for making a call to the United States, which has a country code of 1. The first time, you may need to log out and log in again to place such a call. You are charged by the minute, and calls are rounded up to the minute.
- Press **Enter** or click the large green phone icon to connect.

Credit balances on Skype accounts that are inactive for 180 days are eliminated by Skype.

If you are unable to type keyboard input, exit the application, including from the Panel, then relaunch it. If that does not work, log out and then in.

To respond to a phone call

1 When you are connected to the Internet and Skype is open, you are notified of an incoming call with sound and on-screen. Click the large green phone icon to answer the call.

2 Hang up by clicking the large red phone icon.

To send an instant message

1 In the **Contacts** tab, right-click the contact entry and select **Start Chat**.

2 Type in the white box at the bottom of the window and press **Enter**.

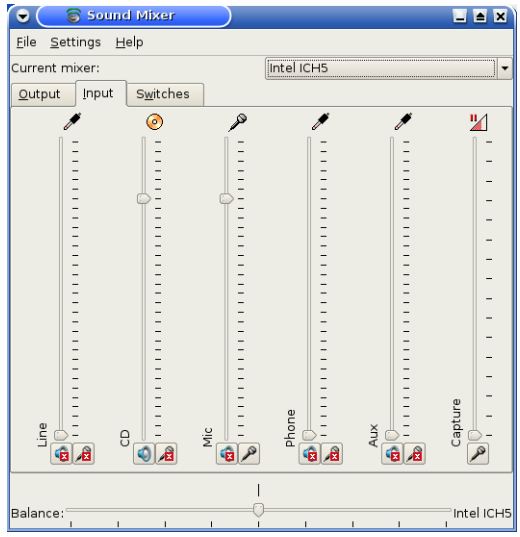
3 When the contact sends you a message, it appears in the window and a sound plays.

To configure for a USB headset

1 With the USB headset connected, access the application to configure it. Click **Launch** ▶ **Applications** ▶ **Internet** ▶ **Skype Internet Calling**. Login. Click **Tools** ▶ **Options**, then the **Hand/Headsets** icon, set it to the USB headset (for example **/dev/dsp1**), and click **Save**.

2 Configure the sound card and headset input/output as follows. Click **Launch** ▶ **Applications** ▶ **Multimedia** ▶ **Sound Mixer**. The sound mixer launches and its display is specific to your computer. If the **Current mixer** field is not displayed, try exiting from the application by right-clicking the speaker icon on the Panel, then relaunching the Sound Mixer.

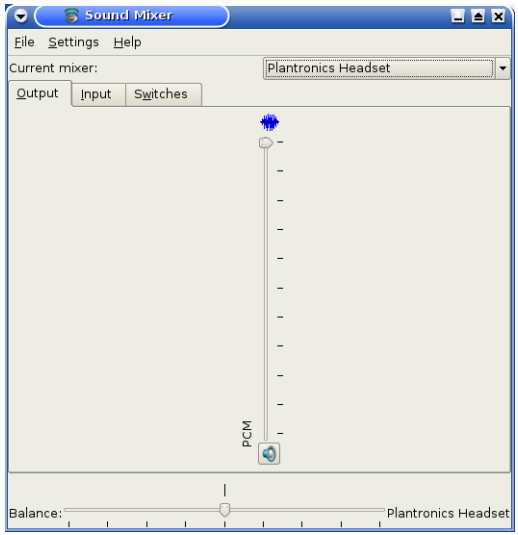
3 In the **Input** tab, for the default sound card (meaning not the USB headset), mute **Mic** input by clicking so that a red x shows on the speaker icon.



Input tab of the Sound Mixer

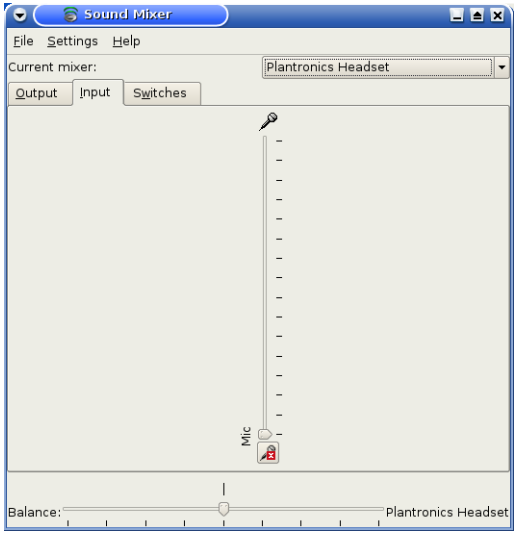
4 From the **Current mixer** drop-down list, select the USB headset, for example the **Plantronics Headset** entry.

5 In the **Output** tab, ensure that the **PCM** slider is up and that it is not muted. The slider increases the sound volume that you hear.



Output tab of the Sound Mixer

6 In the **Input** tab, ensure that the **Mic** slider is up and it is not muted. This ensures that your voice is input.



Input tab of the Sound Mixer

7 Try the application by calling **echo123**.

Also, in the **Switches** tab, you can optionally enable the **Auto Gain Control** check box, which automatically controls volume, for example it lowers volume minimally.

Troubleshooting sound

Try each of the following steps independently. See the previous procedure if you have a USB headset.

To troubleshoot Skype Internet Calling

- Close other sound applications, such as the CD Player and Video Player, including from the Panel.
- If you are using a USB headset, click **Tools** ▶ **Options**, click the **Hand/Headsets** tab, set it to the USB headset, for example **/dev/dsp1** or another path, and click **Save**.

  USB may not work on an IBM Thinkpad. Skype locks up unless you use artsdsp (I810 sound or some USB sound). Some systems do not always work, for example they work a few times and then fail. Try the next suggestion.
- In a console window, launch the application by typing
  `artsdsp -m skype`

  If the application works, set Skype Internet Calling to always launch with that command. Click **Launch** ▶ **Applications** ▶ **System** ▶ **Menu Editor**. Expand the **Applications**, then **Internet** categories to select **Skype Internet Calling**. Modify the **Command** box to read `artsdsp -m skype` then click **File** ▶ **Save**.
- Test that sound is working, for example, try recording and playback in the Sound Recorder. Ensure other sound applications are closed first.
- Check the following settings in the Sound Mixer:
  - In the **Output** tab, that the **PCM** slider is up and not muted.
  - In the **Input** tab, that the **Mic** and **Capture** sliders are up and not muted.

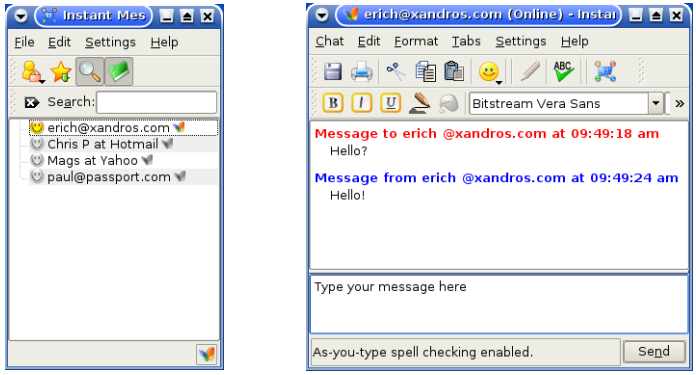
Sound Mixer settings for Skype Internet Calling

- Open the Control Center, click **Sound & Multimedia**, click **Sound System**, click the **Hardware** tab, enable the **Full duplex** option, and click **Apply**. This item does not apply to a USB headset. It can apply when you see a "Problem with sound device" message.
- If the person you are calling cannot hear you, open the Control Center, click **Sound & Multimedia**, click **Sound System**, click the **Hardware** tab, select the **Open Sound System** option from the drop-down list, and click **Apply**.

Sending instant messages

Xandros Desktop lets you send instant text messages. Protocols supported are AOL Instant Messenger (AIM), MSN Messenger, Yahoo Messenger, Gadu-Gadu, ICQ, IRC, Jabber, Novell GroupWise, and SMS.

An Internet connection and instant messaging account are required. You can mix MSN Messenger, Yahoo Messenger, and other account types.



Main window of Instant Messaging application (left) and text messages (right)

You can also send instant messages with Skype Internet Calling (previous section).

To set up the instant messaging application

1. Click **Launch** ▶ **Applications** ▶ **Internet** ▶ **Instant Messaging**. If the application does not launch, click the **Instant Messaging** icon on the Panel.
2. If the Configure window does not display, click **Settings** ▶ **Configure Kopete**.
3. Click **New** and complete the Add Account Wizard. You can register for a new account in the wizard. At the end of the wizard, click **Finish** to set up the account.
4. You are prompted to set up a KDE Wallet. Cancel out of the window.
5. You can be prompted to enter the password for your account.

6 Click **OK** to exit the configuration window.

7 Click the **Instant Messaging** icon on the Panel to access the application.

8 You can set up additional accounts, for example add a Yahoo Messenger account after you have added an MSN Messenger account.

To add a contact

1 Click **File** ▶ **Add Contact**. The Contact Addition Wizard appears.

2 Click **Next**.

3 In the **Select Display Name and Group** box, type the contact's name as you want it to appear in the application, then click **Next**.

4 When you have more than one account set up, for example your MSN Messenger and Yahoo Messenger accounts, you select the protocol in the Select Instant Messaging Accounts window. Then click **Next**.

5 Type the address of contact, the format of which depends on the protocol. For example, for an MSN Messenger account, the format can be joe@passport.com or joe@hotmail.com. Then click **Next**.

6 Click **Finish**. The contact is added to the main window.

To connect and go online

1 Click **Launch** ▶ **Applications** ▶ **Internet** ▶ **Instant Messaging**.

2 If the window does not display, click the **Instant Messaging** icon on the Panel.

3 Right-click the icon at the bottom-right of the window and select an option, for example **Online**.

4 When prompted, type your **Password**, and click **OK**.

5 To disconnect, right-click the icon and select an option, for example **Offline**.

To chat with a contact or to send a text message to a contact

1 Double-click the name of the person that you want to contact. Depending on the interface, the person may or may not be required to be online for you to type a message. If the person is online, they view the message in real time as a chat message.

2 Type your message in the box at the bottom of the window.

3 Press **Enter** or click **Send**.

To change default settings

1 Click **Settings** ▶ **Configure Kopete**.

2 Click the **Behavior** icon.

3 In the **General** tab, the options include:

- **Show the system tray icon** — Enabled to show the **Instant Messaging** icon on the Panel, providing easy access

4 In the **Away Settings** tab, the options include:

- **Use auto away** — Enable to indicate to other online users that you are away from your desk after a specified period of inactivity
- **Become available when detecting activity again** — Enable to indicate to other online users that you are online again after a period of inactivity

5 Click the **Appearance** icon to view other options available for use.

6 Click **Settings** ▶ **Configure Plugins** to view other options.

7 Click **Settings** and note the ability to display or hide contacts in the main window depending on their online status (**Show/Hide Offline Users**).

Using the weather monitor

You can monitor weather conditions at an airport or weather station. The following weather information can be displayed on the Panel:

- Icon — Graphical display of current conditions, for example a sun for sunny or clear conditions
- Temperature
- Wind speed
- Air pressure

The weather monitor is updated only when you are connected to the Internet. You can log the periodic updates to a file and switch between metric and imperial units.

To start the weather monitor

1 On the Panel, right-click in the taskbar.

2 Select **Add to Panel** ▶ **Applet** ▶ **Weather Report**. A configuration panel launches. If it does not, right-click the applet on the Panel and select **Configure KWeather**.

3 Click the **Weather Service** icon on the left side.

4 Expand the station lists and select an entry.

5 Click **Add**.

6 Click the **Display** icon on the left side.

7 From the **Location** drop-down list, select the default weather station.

8 Enable the **Show icon and temperature** or the **Show icon only** option. If you want to use the **Show icon, temperature, wind and pressure information** option, you need to increase the Panel size.

9 To save weather information to a file automatically, enable the **Enable logging** check box, and type a file name or browse to locate the file. The file is saved as a text file and is updated each time new data is obtained.

10 Click **OK**. The applet appears on the Panel and checks for updates every 30 minutes.

11 To display more weather information for the station, click the image on the Panel icon (or right-click the icon on the Panel and select **Show Report**).

Values can be displayed in metric or imperial units. In the Control Center, access **General Settings**, then **Regional Settings**. In the **Other** tab, change the **Units of measurement** option. This changes the settings for the computer, not just the weather applet.

To access the configuration panel

- Right-click the icon on the Panel and select **Configure KWeather**.

To close the weather monitor

1 On the Panel, right-click the taskbar.

2 Select **Remove From Panel ▶ Applet ▶ Weather Report**. This action removes the application from the Panel.

Using the Stock Ticker

The Stock Ticker provides stock quotes. It is an applet that scrolls quotes on the Panel. Stocks, indices, mutual funds, and exchange traded funds (ETFs) can be quoted for exchanges around the world. The following information displays by default: price, price change from previous close, and percent change. Based on informal testing by Xandros, quotes are delayed 15 minutes. When not connected to the Internet, the ticker is blank or the last available quotes are displayed.

Configuration options include scroll speed, update frequency (five minutes by default), information displayed, fonts, and colors.

To display the stock ticker on the Panel

- Right-click an empty area on the Panel and select **Add to Panel ▶ Applet ▶ Stock Ticker**. The ticker is added to the Panel. It displays three indices by default: the Dow Jones Industrial Average (^DJI), the Nasdaq Composite index (^IXIC), and S&P 500 Index (^GSPC). You can click a link in the ticker window to launch the Web browser and obtain a detailed quote from Yahoo! Finance.

To specify stocks quoted

1. With the applet open on the Panel, right-click it and select **Configure Stock Ticker**.
2. To determine the symbol for a stock, click **Find Symbol**, type the name of the company, for example, and click **OK**. Select the stock from the list that appears and click **OK** to add it to the list.
3. To add a symbol to the list, click **Add**, type the symbol, and click **OK**. Examples of symbols are NT.TO for Nortel Networks on the Toronto exchange, GOOG for Google on the Nasdaq, and BOS.L for the Body Shop on the London exchange. Index symbols are generally preceded with ^, for example ^DJI for the Dow Jones Industrial Average. Not all mutual funds have symbols, but an example is TCWBX for Templeton China World B.
4. To remove a symbol, select it and click **Remove**.
5. To change the order of the quotes, select a symbol and click **Move Up** or **Move Down**.
6. Click **OK** to exit from the configuration window. The changes are applied.

To configure ticker behavior

1. With the applet open on the Panel, right-click it and select **Configure Stock Ticker**.
2. Click the **Settings** tab.
3. To change the speed at which stocks scroll, select an option from the drop-down list: **Slow**, **Normal** (default), or **Fast**.
4. To change how often quotes are obtained, set it in the **Update frequency** field. The default is five minutes.
5. To change the information displayed, enable or disable the options: **High** price for the day, **Low** price for the day, **Volume** for the day, **% Change** from the previous close (enabled by default), and **Opening** price.
6. Click **OK** to exit from the configuration window.

To configure fonts and colors

1. With the applet open on the Panel, right-click it and select **Configure Stock Ticker**.
2. Click the **Appearance** tab.
3. To change the font, click **Choose**, select the font and size, then click **OK** to exit from the window.
4. To change the color of the ticker symbol and price, click the **Text** color box and set it. To change the up and down price movement text color, click the **Positive change** or **Negative change** color box and set it.
5. Click **OK** to exit from the configuration window.

Additional Internet applications

The following applications can be installed from the Applications CD and/or Xandros Networks:

Web Server — Application that allows the computer to function as an Apache Web server

ProFTPD — Application that allows the computer to function as an FTP server

gFTP — Application for downloading files to a Web server by FTP (download from the Debian unsupported site)

Konqueror — Web browser; type `konqueror` in the **Run Command** window to launch it

Evolution — Allows you to manage e-mail and contacts, schedule meetings, and set up a calendar. Evolution provides functions similar to Microsoft Outlook. It also provides Microsoft Exchange Server compatibility so users connect to the same Exchange Server facilities as Windows users, for example so that all users access the same e-mail server and can arrange meetings with users of Windows or Linux (included with Professional edition and otherwise downloaded).

News Reader — Newsgroups

Nvu — Web-page authoring

smtm — Stock quotes (download from the Debian unsupported site)

Gaim — Instant messaging

Check Xandros Networks for additional applications.

Working with text 10

Text editors and word processors enable you to write letters, reports, and other text-based files. Xandros Desktop lets you run popular word processors, such as Microsoft Word and OpenOffice.org Writer. The following table outlines the text-related applications.

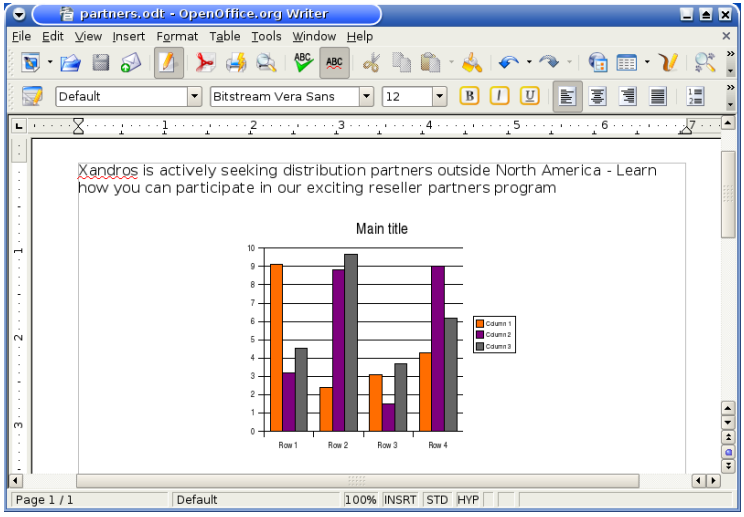
Application	Function	Page
OpenOffice.org Writer	Lets you write and edit text files and save as OpenOffice.org, Microsoft Word, text, Web pages, and so on	234
CrossOver Office	Lets you use Microsoft Word and other Windows-based applications compatible with CrossOver Office	235
Text Editor	Lets you write and edit plain-text files	236
OpenOffice.org Math	Lets you create formulas	241
Adobe Reader and PDF generation	Allows you to view PDF files and to generate PDF documents	313 354
DVI Viewer	Lets you view DVI files	242

table continued

Application	Function	Page
Fax Viewer and Print a Fax	Let you view and send faxes	361
PostScript Viewer	Lets you view and print PostScript and PDF documents	243
Font Installer	Lets you view and install fonts	246
Font Viewer	Lets you view and install fonts	247
Character Selector	Provides special characters and symbols for use in text and graphics applications	320
Online Dictionary	Allows you to look up definitions of words in several online dictionaries	333
Spell checker dictionaries	Let you check spelling in some applications using several languages	97

Using the OpenOffice.org Writer

OpenOffice.org Writer allows you to open and save files in OpenOffice.org (.odt), Microsoft Word (.doc), text (.txt), Web page (.html), and other formats. A spell checker is integrated. If you save a file in the Microsoft Word format, you are able to use the file in OpenOffice.org and Microsoft Word.



OpenOffice.org Writer

The Professional edition of Xandros Desktop includes the StarOffice version instead of OpenOffice.org.

To start OpenOffice.org Writer

1 Install it from the Applications CD or Xandros Networks. See “Installing applications from the Applications CD” on page 33.

2 Click **Launch ▶ Applications ▶ OpenOffice.org ▶ Writer**.

See the online help for more information.

Install more fonts by installing the **msttcorefonts** file from the Debian unsupported site in Xandros Networks.

You can download and install the OpenOffice.org suite of software in over 35 languages from www.openoffice.org.

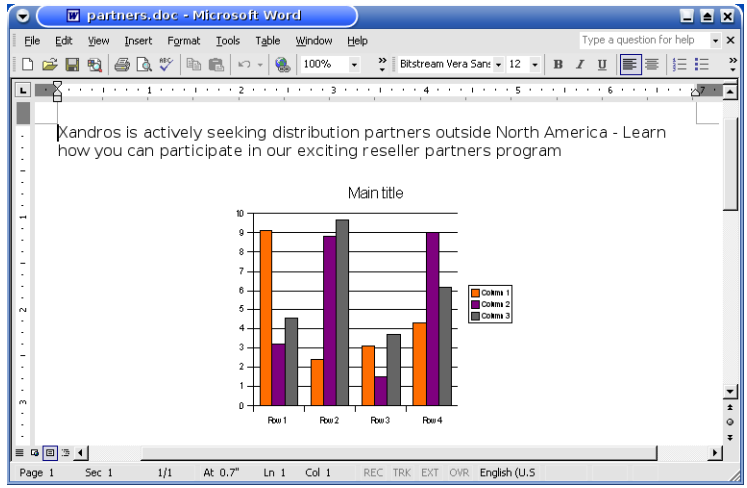
Using Microsoft Word

Microsoft Word can be installed and used on Xandros Desktop without having Microsoft Windows installed. Xandros Desktop includes an application called CodeWeavers CrossOver Office for this purpose. CrossOver Office helps you to install and configure your Windows applications.

CrossOver Office runs automatically unless it is disabled. You install Word and open a Word file.

Another option is to install Microsoft Word Viewer included with CrossOver Office (not documented here). With this approach, you do not need to install Word and you can view but not edit Word documents.

The following figure shows the file created in OpenOffice.org and saved as a .doc file.


partners.doc - Microsoft Word
File Edit View Insert Format Tools Table Window Help
Type a question for help
100%
Bitstream Vera Sans 12
Xandros is actively seeking distribution partners outside North America - Learn how you can participate in our exciting reseller partners program
Main title
Row 1
Row 2
Row 3
Row 4
Page 1 Sec 1 1/1 At 0.7" Ln 1 Col 1 REC TRK EXT OVR English (U.S

Using Microsoft Word XP

To install Word

- See “Installing Windows-based applications” on page 33.

  To uninstall select Microsoft applications installed without your knowledge, click **Launch ▶ Applications ▶ CrossOver ▶ Configuration**.

To use Word

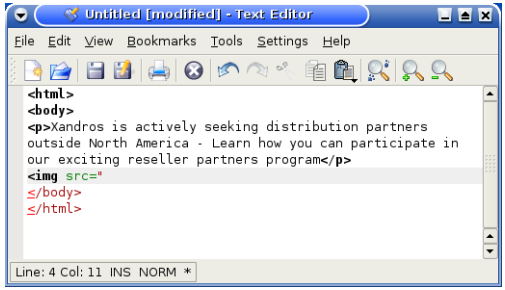
1. Click **Launch ▶ Windows Applications ▶ Programs ▶ Microsoft Word**.
2. In Word, click **File ▶ Open**, and select the Word file to open. To access your Xandros home folder, navigate up to **My Computer**.

Install more fonts by installing the **msttcorefonts** file from the Debian unsupported site in Xandros Networks.

Using the Text Editor

The Text Editor lets you create and edit ASCII text files. It is a word processor to create plain text documents and a programmer’s tool to write and edit code. You can save files in any format, including .txt and .html. For a text editor, the application is powerful.

The programming syntax for several programming languages can be displayed in color, including shell scripts, C, C++, JavaScript, HTML, MySQL, XML, Python, and Perl. Each programming language has its own distinct set of colors for syntax items. You can also select the colors.


Untitled [modified] - Text Editor
File Edit View Bookmarks Tools Settings Help
<html>
<body>
Xandros is actively seeking distribution partners
outside North America - Learn how you can participate in
our exciting reseller partners program
<img src="
</body>
</html>
Line: 4 Col: 11 INS NORM *

Text Editor showing color coding for programming

Creating text files

You can create a text file with Text Editor.

To create a text file

1. Click **Launch ▶ Applications ▶ Accessories ▶ Text Editor**. Or, in the application, click **File ▶ New**.
2. Type your text.

To set highlight mode

- Click **Tools ▶ Highlighting**, and select the mode, such as **Markup ▶ HTML** to color-code HTML tags.

Saving and closing text files

You can save a file as .txt or .html, and you can use other extensions, such as .sh for a script.

To save a text file for the first time

1. Click **File ▶ Save** to save as a .txt file or **File ▶ Export** to save as a .html file.
2. Select the folder where you want to save the file.
3. Type a name in the **File name** box. The .txt files are saved without an extension unless you specify it.
4. Click **Save**.

To close a text file

- Click **File ▶ Close**. If you have not saved the text file, a message displays asking you if you would like to save the file before closing it.

Opening text files

Text files open into a new window. You can also open recently edited text files.

Opening a new window allows you to open and work with multiple text files.

Xandros Desktop lets you open text files saved on your computer or on the network. You can also open text files from other applications, such as Microsoft Windows text files.

To open a text file

1. Click **File ▶ Open**.
2. Select the folder where the file is stored.
3. Double-click the file name.

To open a new window

- Click **File ▶ New**.

To open a recently edited file

- Click **File ▶ Open Recent** and select the file.

Finding and replacing text

Editing features include performing searches for phrases, words, or characters. You can perform a search and replace function.

To find text

1. Click **Edit** ▶ **Find**.
2. In the **Text to find** box, type the text you want to find.
3. Click **Find**.
4. Click **Edit** ▶ **Find Next** to find the next occurrence of the text.

You can also press **F3** to find the next occurrence of the text.

To find and replace text

1. Click **Edit** ▶ **Replace**.
2. In the **Text to find** box, type the text you want to find.
3. Type the replacement text in the **Replacement text** box.
4. Click **Replace**.

Navigating in text files

You can navigate to a specific location in a text file using the Go To Line and Bookmarks. The Go To Line lets you move to a specific line in a text file. The Bookmarks feature lets you mark important lines in a text file so that you can return to those locations quickly. Both features are useful if you are working with a lengthy text file. For example, if you are at the end of a long file and need to return to the beginning of the file quickly, you can indicate that you want to move to line one using the Go To Line feature.

To move to a specific line

1. Click **Edit** ▶ **Go to Line**.
2. Type a line number in the **Go to line** box or use the slider.
3. Click **OK**.

To add a bookmark

1. Click in the text where you want to add a bookmark.
2. Click **Bookmarks** ▶ **Set Bookmark**. The background color of the text changes to indicate the bookmark.

When you add bookmarks, they appear as paper clip icons when the **View** ▶ **Show Icon Border** option is enabled.

To navigate bookmarks

- Click **Bookmarks** and select the bookmark.

To clear all bookmarks

- Click **Bookmarks** ▶ **Clear All Bookmarks**.

Formatting text files

You can set the margin size and use the brackets feature.

You set margins by specifying the number of characters and spaces that a line contains. For example, you can specify that a line contain 50 characters. When you have more than 50 characters or spaces in a line, the next character or word automatically wraps to the line below. This feature allows you to start a new line without having to use a hard return each time. It works for text files, not when you have set the code to be highlighted, for example when coding HTML.

You can automatically insert a set of curly { } , square [ ] , or round ( ) brackets in a text file. When you press a bracket key on the keyboard, both brackets appear and the cursor automatically appears between the brackets.

To set margin size

1. Click **Settings** ▶ **Configure Editor**.
2. Click the **Editing** icon.
3. Enable the **Enable static word wrap** check box.
4. Type the number of characters in the **Wrap words at** box.
5. Click **OK** to exit from the window.

To insert brackets automatically

1. Click **Settings** ▶ **Configure Editor**.
2. Click the **Editing** icon.
3. Enable the **Auto brackets** check box.
4. Click **OK** to exit from the window.

Customizing fonts and text

Text Editor lets you customize the appearance of fonts, including the font type and size. You can choose colors for text, selected text, and background, for example.

You can also select different colors for different programming language syntax items. For example, if you are working with C++ code, different colors are available for C++ normal text, keywords, numbers, and quoted string. You

can differentiate between selected and unselected syntax items by choosing different colors for the selected items.

To change the font

1. Click **Settings** ▶ **Configure Editor**.
2. Click the **Font** tab.
3. Select a font from the **Font** list box and set the **Size**.
4. Click **OK** to exit from the window.

To change text and syntax color

1. Click **Settings** ▶ **Configure Editor**.
2. Click the **Normal Text Styles** tab.
3. Click the color that you want to change.
4. Select a color for the selection. When clicking in the Select Color window to set the color, you may have to click in both boxes shown. Then click **OK** to exit from that window.
5. Repeat the process in the **Highlighting Text Styles** tab, for HTML code for example.
6. Click **OK** to exit from the window.

To change the background color

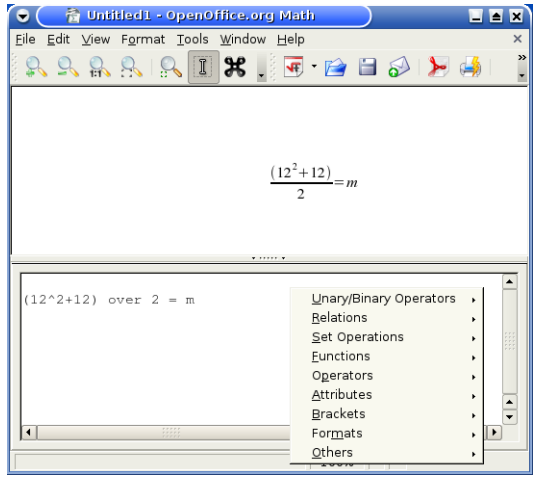
1. Click **Settings** ▶ **Configure Editor**.
2. In the **Colors** tab, click the **Background** color that you want to change.
3. Select a color for the selection. When clicking in the Select Color window to set the color, you may have to click in both boxes shown. Then click **OK** to exit from that window.
4. Click **OK** to exit from the window.

Printing text files

When you print a file using Text Editor, you can print to a printer, save as a PDF file, print to a file (PostScript), or send as a fax. Text Editor uses the same Print window used for some other Xandros Desktop applications. For instructions on printing, see “Printing” on page 352.

Creating formulas

OpenOffice.org Math facilitates the creation of equations. The files are saved in the .odf format.



OpenOffice.org formula editor

To start OpenOffice.org Math

1 Click **Launch ▶ Applications ▶ OpenOffice.org ▶ Tools ▶ Math**.

2 Type your formula in the lower window. For symbols such as the not equal to sign, click **Tools ▶ Catalog**. Also right-click in the window to display a menu of mathematical functions that can be added (as shown).

See the online help for more information.

To insert a formula in OpenOffice.org Writer, click **Insert ▶ Object ▶ Formula**.

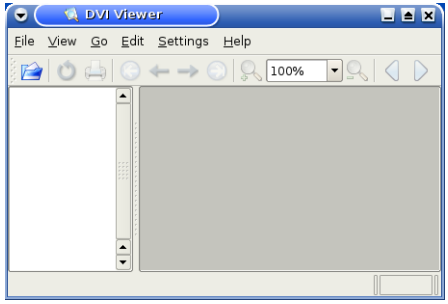
Reading and generating PDF files

You can view documents in the Portable Document Format (PDF), and you can generate PDF files in many applications. See “Using Adobe Reader to view PDF files” on page 313 and “Printing files” on page 353.

Viewing DVI files

Device independent (DVI) files can be viewed. DVI is a file format output by TeX and LaTeX, which are ways of typesetting and documenting technical and scientific material. The DVI Viewer is included with Xandros Desktop. A user-supplied DVI file-generating application, such as TeX, also needs to be installed in order to view a DVI file with DVI Viewer.

When you print a file using the DVI Viewer, you can print to a printer, save as a PDF file, print to a file (PostScript), or send as a fax. The DVI Viewer uses the common Xandros Desktop Print window, such as used for the Text Editor. For instructions on printing, see "Printing" on page 352.



DVI Viewer for TeX and LaTeX files

To open a DVI file

1. Click **Launch** ▶ **Applications** ▶ **Accessories** ▶ **Viewers** ▶ **DVI Viewer**.
2. Click **File** ▶ **Open**, and select the file to open.

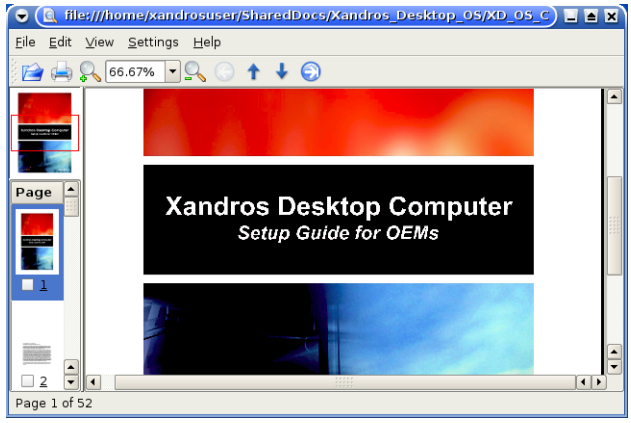
Viewing and sending faxes

Faxes can be viewed and sent with Xandros Desktop using the Fax Viewer and Print a Fax functions found in the Accessories menu. See "Viewing and sending faxes" on page 361.

Working with PostScript Viewer

PostScript Viewer lets you view documents prepared using the PostScript page description language, having a .ps extension, and to view .eps and .pdf files.

PostScript Viewer provides tools to help you navigate the document. You can mark pages to print or use for future reference. You can print the file.



PostScript Viewer displaying a PDF file

To start PostScript Viewer

- Click **Launch ▶ Applications ▶ Accessories ▶ Viewers ▶ PostScript Viewer**.

To open a file

1. Click **File ▶ Open**.
2. Select the folder where the file is stored. Files with .ps, .eps, and .pdf extensions are shown.
3. Double-click the file name. It takes a few seconds for a .ps file to load.

To open a previously viewed file

- Click **File ▶ Open Recent** and select the file to open.

To change paper size

- Click **View ▶ Paper Size** and select a paper size.

To change page orientation

- Click **View ▶ Orientation**, and select one of the following options:
  - **Auto** — Assumes the orientation of the source file (default)
  - **Portrait** — Displays content across the width of the paper

- **Landscape** — Displays content sideways across the length of the paper
- **Upside Down** — Flips the portrait orientation vertically and horizontally
- **Seascape** — Flips the landscape orientation vertically and horizontally

To increase the zoom level

- Click **View** ▶ **Zoom In**.

You can also zoom in by clicking the **Zoom In** button on the tool bar.

To decrease the zoom level

- Click **View** ▶ **Zoom Out**.

You can also zoom out by clicking the **Zoom Out** button on the tool bar.

Navigating a document

PostScript Viewer provides tools to navigate a document.

Go to Page lets you specify the section and page number that you want to view. When you finish reading or viewing a page, you can use the Next Page command to see the next page in the document. PostScript Viewer lets you navigate quickly to the beginning or end of your document.

You can quickly read a document using the **Page Up** and **Page Down** keys, as well as clicking and pushing the page.

As you read a document, you can mark pages for future reference. Marking pages is also useful when you want to print only certain sections of a document. You can add and remove page marks. You can also switch page marks so that previously marked pages become unmarked and previously unmarked pages become marked.

Toggling page marks lets you mark and unmark pages. The Toggle Page Marks command lets you invert marked and unmarked pages. For example, you can print 97 pages of a 100-page document without marking all 97 pages. Instead, you can mark only the three pages you do not want to print, and then toggle the page marks. Similarly, if you previously marked all even pages, you can use the Toggle Page Marks command to invert the page marks and mark all odd pages instead.

To view a specific page

1. Click **View** ▶ **Go to Page**.
2. Type the page number to go to.
3. Click **OK**.

To move to the next portion

- Press the **Page Down** key or click in the window and drag the page up.

To move to the previous portion

- Press the **Page Up** key or click in the window and drag the page down.

To move to the beginning

- Click **View** ▶ **First Page**.

To move to the end

- Click **View** ▶ **Last Page**.

To mark pages

- Click **Edit** and select one of the following settings:
  - **Mark Current Page**
  - **Mark All Pages**
  - **Mark Even Pages**
  - **Mark Odd Pages**

To remove a page mark

- In the **Page** list on the left side of the window, disable the checked box.

To remove all page marks

- Click **Edit** ▶ **Remove Page Marks**.

To toggle page marks

1. Select the pages you want to mark.
2. Click **Edit** ▶ **Toggle Page Marks**.

Printing a document

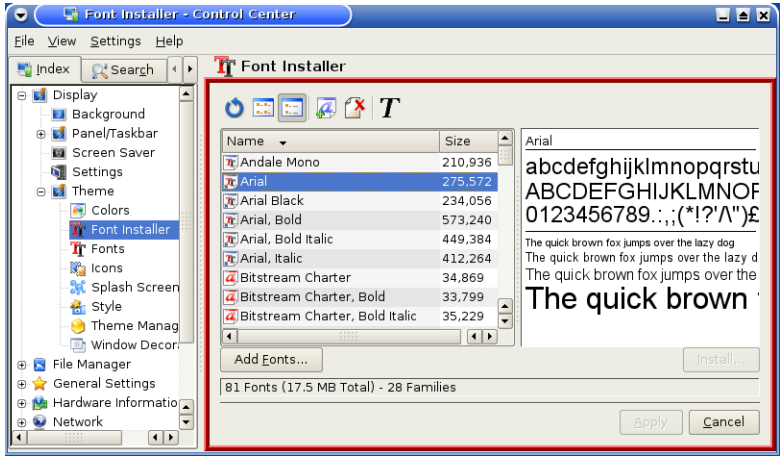
When you print a file using PostScript Viewer, you can print to a printer, save as a PDF file, print to a file (PostScript), or send as a fax. PostScript Viewer uses the common Xandros Desktop Print window. For instructions on printing, see “Printing” on page 352.

Installing fonts

You can view and install fonts on your computer, for example downloaded or from a CD. There are two ways: Font Installer and Font Viewer. Font Installer is good for installing multiple fonts. Font Viewer lets you install them in Xandros File Manager and is good for installing individual fonts. In addition, you can also install fonts in Xandros Networks.

Viewing and installing fonts with Font Installer

The Font Installer panel of the Control Center lets you manage fonts.



Font Installer panel for viewing and installing fonts

To view and install fonts

1. If applicable, insert the font CD into the drive. Close Xandros File Manager if it appears.
2. Click **Launch** ▶ **Control Center**.
3. Click **Display**, then **Theme**, then **Font Installer**.
4. Click **Administrator** and provide the password. Also click **Continue** when a Warning window appears.
5. Click **Add Fonts**.
6. If applicable, from the **Look in** drop-down list, select the CD drive, such as **CD-RW** or **Removable Disk**. If you have or had another removable device connected to the computer, you may need to unplug and log in again in order to access the drive.
7. Navigate to and select the files or folders that you want to add.
8. Click **Open**. The fonts are installed. If you receive an error message, click **Auto Skip** to continue with the installation.

You can also install MS True Type fonts, such as Arial and Times New Roman, using Xandros Networks. Click **Edit ▶ Set Application Sources**, set the source to the **Debian unsupported site**, search for **msttcorefonts**, and install the fonts by clicking **Enter** to accept the defaults. The additional fonts will automatically be available in applications, such as Text Editor, OpenOffice.org, and Microsoft Word.

If you are moving from Windows to Linux, you may also need to copy fonts from your Windows computer to your Xandros computer, for example from **C:\WINDOWS\Fonts** to **/usr/lib/staroffice7/share/fonts/truetype** in the case of StarOffice or to **/usr/share/fonts** in the case of OpenOffice.org. Perform this action as Administrator.

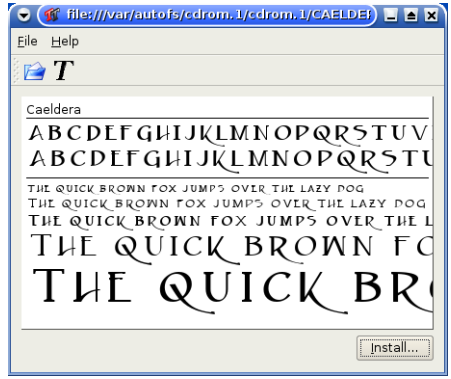
If you are using Konqueror, see the online help in the **Font Installer** panel for information.

Viewing and installing fonts with Font Viewer

You can manage fonts with the Font Viewer, including in Xandros File Manager. The Font Viewer is a good application for individual fonts.

To view and install fonts (example using CD)

1. Insert the font CD into the drive. Close Xandros File Manager if it appears.
2. Click **Launch ▶ Applications ▶ Accessories ▶ Viewers ▶ Font Viewer**.
3. Click **File ▶ Open**.
4. From the **Look in** drop-down list, select the CD drive, such as **CD-RW** or **Removable Disk**.
5. Navigate to and select the file that you want to view.
6. Click **Open**. The font is previewed.



Viewing and installing fonts with Font Viewer

7 Click the **Change Text** icon on the tool bar to change the "quick brown fox..." preview text to another phrase. This action changes the default text for all previews.

8 To install the font, click **Install**. You are prompted to specify if you want to install the font for the current user account (**Personal**) or for all user accounts (**System**) on the computer. If you receive an error message during installation, click **Auto Skip** to continue with the installation. The font is installed and available for use in applications, such as Text Editor, Word, and OpenOffice.org.

You can also view individual fonts in Xandros File Manager. Double-click the font file and the window similar to Font Viewer appears. You can then click **Install**.

Using special characters and symbols

A Character Selector utility is provided so that you can insert special characters and symbols, such as accents and mathematical symbols, in text and other types of documents. See "Using special characters and symbols" on page 320.

Using the online dictionary

Using an Internet connection, you can look up words using the dictionary application supplied with Xandros Desktop. See "Using the Online Dictionary" on page 333.

Using spell checkers

Xandros Desktop is installed with an English dictionary as the default spell checker dictionary. If you are preparing documents in another language, you can use the following dictionaries provided on Xandros Networks and on the Applications CD: Brazilian Portuguese, Danish, French, German, Italian, Polish, Portuguese, Russian, Spanish, and UK English. See "Adding and using spell checkers" on page 97. The spell checker is used by some applications, such as the Text Editor. Other applications have their own spell checkers, such as Thunderbird Mail and OpenOffice.org Write.

Additional text applications

The following applications can be downloaded from the Applications CD and/or Xandros Networks:

Kate — Text editor (already installed); type `kate` in the **Run Command** window to launch it

Emacs — Text editor

AbiWord — Word processor similar to Word

KWord — Word processor and thesaurus

Tux Typing — Educational program that teaches typing

Check Xandros Networks for additional applications.

11 Working with graphics

You can use the graphics applications provided with Xandros Desktop to create, view, and edit image files, presentations, and screen captures, including images from a digital camera. The following table outlines the graphics applications available.

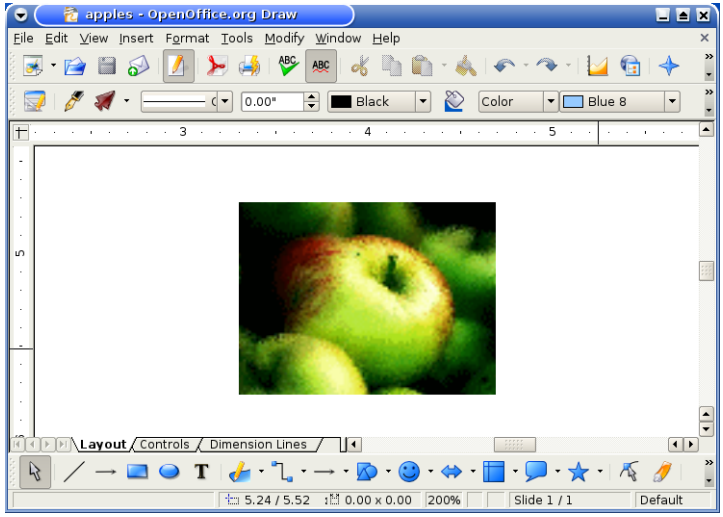
Application	Function	Page
OpenOffice.org Draw	Lets you create simple diagrams, three-dimensional diagrams, flow charts, and organizational charts	252
CrossOver Office	Lets you use Microsoft PowerPoint, Microsoft Visio, Adobe Photoshop, and other Windows-based applications compatible with CrossOver Office	253
Paint	Lets you create simple graphics and convert between file types	254
OpenOffice.org Impress	Lets you create slide presentations; includes templates and wizard	255
Image Viewer	Lets you view and manipulate image files and set up a slide show	256

table continued

Application	Function	Page
Xandros Photo Manager	Lets you view, organize, and edit your digital photos	259
Xandros File Manager	Lets you view images, including from a digital camera	264
Scanner	Lets you scan images with a scanner	265
Screen Capture	Lets you capture desktop images	266

Creating images with OpenOffice.org Draw

OpenOffice.org Draw allows you to create simple diagrams, three-dimensional diagrams, flow charts, organizational charts, and other drawings. Importable image formats include BMP, GIF, JPEG, PNG, TIFF, and WMF drawings. You can insert spreadsheets and charts, for example. Colors can be specified with RGB, CMYK, and other palettes. You can use special characters, such as accents. Your work is saved as an OpenOffice.org drawing (.odg) and can be exported in various formats, including Web pages, PDF, Macromedia Flash, BMP, GIF, JPEG, PNG, TIFF, and WMF.



OpenOffice.org Draw

The Professional edition of Xandros Desktop includes the StarOffice version instead of OpenOffice.org.

To create an image with OpenOffice.org Draw

1. Click **Launch** ▶ **Applications** ▶ **OpenOffice.org** ▶ **Tools** ▶ **Draw**.
2. If required, to enlarge the image area, click **View** ▶ **Zoom**, select a zoom factor, and click **OK**.
3. Select a color from the drop-down list on the tool bar.
4. Select a graphics tool from the bottom tool bar, such as rectangle or text symbol.
5. Click and drag your mouse pointer in the image area to create an object, or click in the image area to create text.
6. To change the properties of the object or text, with the object or text selected, click **Format** and select the property to change. Some properties, such as font type and size are changed using the features available on the tool bar.
7. To save your work, click **File** ▶ **Save**, type a **File name**, and click **OK**. This saves the image in the OpenOffice.org Draw format and allows you to modify the image.
8. To export your file in another format, click **File** ▶ **Export**, type a **File name**, select the file type from the **Filter** drop-down list, and click **OK**.

To insert an image

1. Click **Insert** ▶ **Picture** ▶ **From File**. Sample images are found in **/usr/lib/openoffice/share/gallery/**

See the online help file for more information.

Using Microsoft PowerPoint, Visio, Photoshop, and other diagrams

Microsoft PowerPoint, Microsoft Visio, and Adobe Photoshop can be installed and used on Xandros Desktop without having Microsoft Windows installed. Xandros Desktop includes an application called CodeWeavers CrossOver Office for this purpose. CrossOver Office helps you to install and configure your Windows applications.

CrossOver Office runs automatically unless it is disabled. You install the graphics software and open the graphics file.

To install the graphics software

- See “Installing Windows-based applications” on page 33.

  To uninstall select Microsoft applications installed without your knowledge, click **Launch** ▶ **Applications** ▶ **CrossOver** ▶ **Configuration**.

To install Adobe software

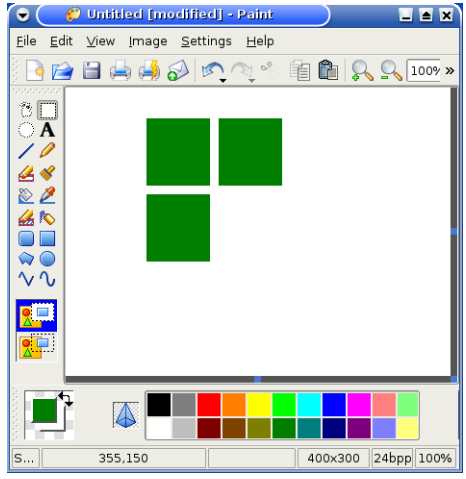
1. With the Adobe CD in the drive, exit from CrossOver.
2. Open Xandros File Manager.
3. Navigate to the folder containing the application, for example an Adobe Illustrator folder.
4. Double-click the **setup.exe** file.

To open a graphics file

1. Click **Launch** ▶ **Windows Applications** ▶ **Programs**, and select the application.
2. In the application, click **File** ▶ **Open**, and select the image file to open. To access your Xandros home folder, navigate up to **My Computer**.

Creating images with Paint

Paint lets you draw simple images and convert between file formats. You can set colors with several palettes, with HSV, RGB, and HTML codes, or by creating a custom color. The images can be saved in various formats, including JPEG, PNG, and BMP.



Paint

To create an image with Paint

1. Click **Launch** ▶ **Applications** ▶ **Graphics** ▶ **Paint**.
2. Click **Image** ▶ **Resize / Scale** to set the size of the image. Size is in number of pixels.
3. Select an action from the left menu bar, for example the rectangle to draw a rectangle.

4 You can select from the colors at the bottom of the window or create your own. To view a color palette, double-click the colored box at the bottom left of the window, after which there are several options. You can select a palette, such as **40 Colors** or **Web**, from the drop-down list. You can copy a color by clicking the eyedropper then the color you want to copy. You can create a color with the HSV or RGB boxes. And you can select one by selecting from the two color boxes at the top left of the window.

   You can select the fill pattern from the left side of the main window.

5 Click and drag your mouse pointer in the image area to draw the shape or line, or click and type your text.

6 You can skew the drawing by clicking **Image** ▶ **Skew**.

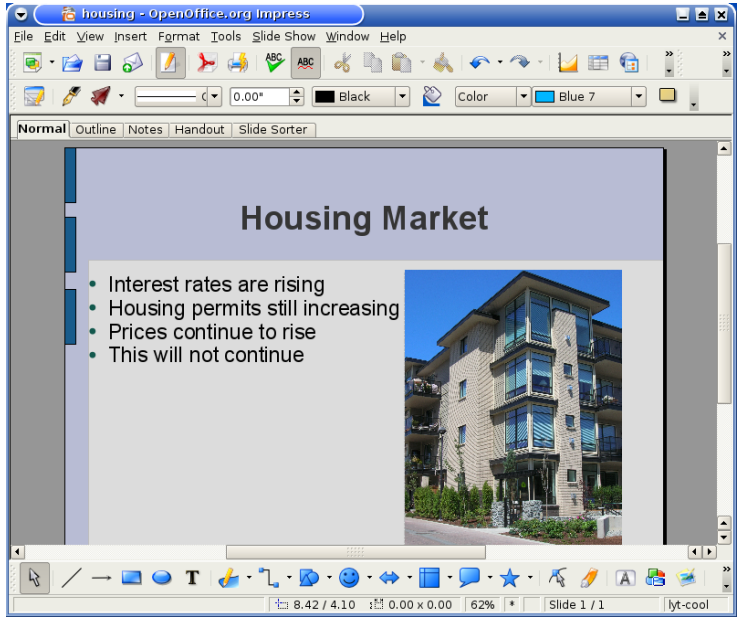
7 To save your work, click **File** ▶ **Save**, type a **File name**, select the file type from the **Filter** list, and click **Save**.

To insert an image

- Click **Edit** ▶ **Paste From File**.

Creating slide presentations

OpenOffice.org Impress allows you to create presentations and slide shows. The OpenOffice.org package includes a presentation creation wizard. You can create effects, such as fading between slides. The files are saved in the .odp format. You can also save them as Microsoft PowerPoint slides.


housing - OpenOffice.org Impress
File Edit View Insert Format Tools Slide Show Window Help
Normal Outline Notes Handout Slide Sorter
Housing Market
Interest rates are rising
Housing permits still increasing
Prices continue to rise
This will not continue
Slide 1 / 1

OpenOffice.org Impress

The Professional edition of Xandros Desktop includes the StarOffice version instead of OpenOffice.org.

Another option is to install the Microsoft PowerPoint Viewer included with CrossOver Office (not documented here). With this approach, you do not need to install PowerPoint and you can view but not edit PowerPoint presentations.

To start OpenOffice.org Impress

- Click **Launch** ▶ **Applications** ▶ **OpenOffice.org** ▶ **Impress**.

To add notes to your slide

1. Click the **Notes** tab.
2. Return to the regular slide view by clicking the **Normal** tab.

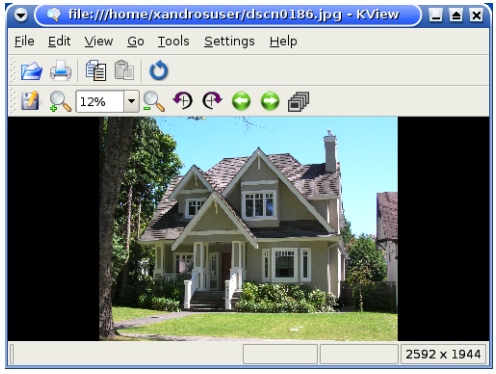
To view as a slide show

1. Go to the first slide.
2. Click **Slide Show** ▶ **Slide Show**.
3. Use the right arrow key to go to the next slide.

See the online help for more information.

Viewing images in Image Viewer

Image Viewer lets you view and manipulate image files, including photos of a digital camera. It is a good tool to view many images as a slide show. Other features include cropping and rotating. Image Viewer supports many file formats, including EPS, GIF, JPEG, ICO, PNG, BMP, and TIFF. When you finish working with an image, you can save it in several formats and/or print the file.



Viewing an image from a digital camera in Image Viewer

Opening files in Image Viewer

You can use Image Viewer to open images from an FTP or Web server, from a local disk, a digital camera, or from an archive on a remote server. You can create a slide show.

To open an image file

1. Click **Launch** ▶ **Applications** ▶ **Graphics** ▶ **Image Viewer**.
2. Click **File** ▶ **Open**.
3. Select the folder where the file is stored. To access images on a digital camera, click **My Linux**, then **All File Systems**, then **/**, then **disks**, then **Removable**.
4. Double-click the file name.

If you have more than one image in the same folder, you can cycle through them by clicking the **Forward** button repeatedly or the **Slideshow** button.

If you cannot open the file as outlined, find the file in the Xandros File Manager and double-click it.

If you open an image from the Web, ensure that you include the entire address in the **File name** box, for example http://home.xandros.com/images/navbar/1.gif

To view a slide show

1. Click **Tools** ▶ **Slideshow**.
2. To change the speed, click **Go** ▶ **Image List** and drag the slider. The speed changes automatically. Close the window.
3. To stop the slideshow, click **Tools** ▶ **Slideshow** again or click the **s** key.

You can also use the **Slideshow** button on the tool bar.

To create a slide show

1. Place the required images in a folder.
2. Open one of the images in Image Viewer.
3. Click the **Slideshow** button.
4. Click **Go** ▶ **Image List**.
5. Click **Save List** and name the slide show. Note the **Load List** button that allows you to view the slide show.

Saving image files in Image Viewer

You can save an image file with a new file name, however if a file already exists in your working folder with that file name, it will be overwritten with the new image file if you have write permission on the original file.

To save an image file

1 Click **File** ▶ **Save As**.

2 Select the folder where you want to save the file.

3 Type a name in the **File name** box.

4 Select a file type from the **Filter** list box.

5 Click **Save**.

Printing image files in Image Viewer

When you print a file using the Image Viewer, you can print to a printer, save as a PDF file, print to a file (PostScript), or send as a fax. Image Viewer uses the common Xandros Desktop print window. For instructions on printing, see "Printing" on page 352.

Zooming images in Image Viewer

Use the zoom feature to enlarge or reduce the viewing size of images. Image Viewer lets you change the magnification level, or you can use preset magnification levels. A zoom factor of 100 is the actual size of the image.

To zoom

- Click **View** and select a zoom option.

You can also use the **Zoom In** and **Zoom Out** buttons on the tool bar.

Editing images in Image Viewer

Image Viewer lets you transform images by rotating, flipping, and cropping them. You can rotate images counterclockwise at 90-degree intervals. You can flip images vertically or horizontally. You can crop images to remove areas of the image without affecting the resolution of the information that remains.

To rotate an image

- Click **Edit** ▶ **Rotate Counter-Clockwise** or **Rotate Clockwise**.

To flip an image

- Click **Edit ▶ Flip**, and select an option:
  - **Vertical**
  - **Horizontal**

You can reset the image to its original orientation by clicking **Edit ▶ Reload**.

To crop an image

1. Click and drag the pointer to select the area of the image that you want to keep.
2. Click **Edit ▶ Crop**. To undo the change, reload the image using **Edit ▶ Reload**.

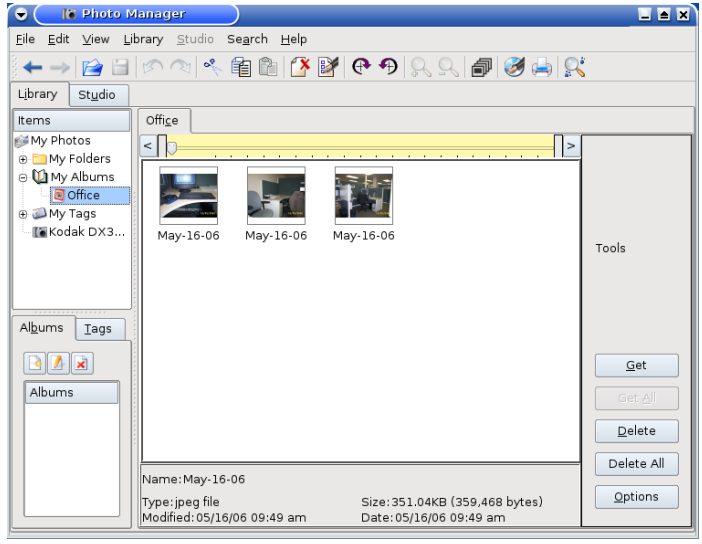
Managing multimedia in Xandros Photo Manager

Xandros Photo Manager lets you view, organize, and edit your digital photos. You can organize, touch up, and edit images as well as output photos to a printer or CD. Formats supported are JPEG, GIF, PNG, and TIFF.

You can create discrete albums or view all images.

Editing possible includes cropping, resizing, fixing red-eye, tinting, brightness, and contrast. You can use an external editor, such as GIMP or Paint.

When searching for images, a dozen variables are possible, such as keyword, date, and media types.



Viewing images downloaded from a Kodak DX3215 camera

Accessing photos

This section outlines how to download photos from a digital camera, delete a photo, and add an existing photo (located in a file folder, for example) to a new album.

To access photos from a camera

1. Connect the camera to the computer.
2. Turn on the camera.
3. Launch Xandros Photo Manager by clicking **Launch** ▶ **Applications** ▶ **Graphics** ▶ **Xandros Photo Manager**.
4. To specify the location to download files to, click **Options**.
5. Click **File** ▶ **Get From** ▶ **Camera**. Wait for the connection to be established. If your camera is not recognized, try Xandros File Manager, Image Viewer, or Digikam.
6. Click **Get All**. An Add Files To Album window appears.
7. Type a name for a new album or select an existing album from the drop-down list, then click **OK**. The photos are added to the album.
8. Click **My Albums**, then your album to view the images. You can turn off your camera.
9. To change the size of images displayed or view the image number instead of date, click **View** ▶ **Thumbnail Sizes** or **View** ▶ **Image Details** and enable the appropriate option.

To delete an image from Xandros Photo Manager

- Right-click the image and select **Delete From Library**.

To delete an image from the camera

- Right-click the image and select **Delete**.

To add an existing image to an album

1. When you have an image already on your computer, click **Get From** ▶ **Files and Folders** and add the image to Xandros File Manager.
2. Select the image.
3. Click **Library** ▶ **Add Image(s) to Album**.
4. Type a **Name** to add the image to a new library.
5. Click **OK**. The image is added to a new album, which can be accessed under **My Albums**.

Editing images

Editing options include changing the date, adding a caption, lightening, darkening, tinting, cropping, resizing, and eliminating red-eye. Tags can be added, which is a way of categorizing images, for example identifying all photos of Family or Real Estate.

To view or edit an image

- Double-click the image to view it in Xandros Photo Manager. The image appears in the **Fix** tab, where the properties that can be changed include: brightness, contrast, cropping/size, and red eye. Or right-click the image, select **Open With** and an application, such as Paint or Image Viewer.

To change the date

1. Select the image.
2. Click **Edit** ▶ **Date/Time**.

To add a caption

1. Select the image.
2. Click **File** ▶ **Properties**.
3. Click the **Image** tab.
4. Type a title, description, or name of the image in the **Caption** box.
5. Click **OK**.

To lighten, darken, or tint an image

1. Double-click the image. The image appears in the **Fix** tab.
2. Click **Brightness**.
3. To tint an image with red, green, or blue, select a color from the drop-down list.
4. Drag the slider to the right to darken an image or increase the color.
5. Click **OK** to apply or **Cancel** to undo the changes.

To crop and resize an image

1. Double-click the image. The image appears in the **Fix** tab.
2. Click **Crop**.
3. Select an area of the photo by clicking and dragging the mouse.
4. Select a size from the drop-down list. The options include 3x4, 4x6, 5x7, 8x10 inches in portrait or landscape orientation.
5. Click **Apply**.
6. Click **OK**.

To eliminate red-eye

1 Double-click the image. The image appears in the **Fix** tab.
2 Click **Red Eye**.
3 Select the area of the photo by clicking and dragging the mouse.
4 Click **Apply**.
5 Click **OK**.

To create tags

1 Select the image.
2 Click **Library ▶ Add Tag to Image**.
3 Type a **Name** for the tag.
4 Click **OK**.

Outputting images

Output possible includes printing to a printer, copying to a CD, and using as a desktop wallpaper. For printing, the options include: contact sheets (thumbnails), multiple images, full size.

To print to a printer

1 Select the images.
2 Click **File ▶ Print**.
3 Select the printer from the **Name** drop-down list.
4 Click the **Image Settings** tab, select if you want individual prints, a contact sheet (small images on one page), or a picture package (various sizes on one page). Set the other options, such as number of images per page, as appropriate.
5 Click **Print**.

To copy to a CD

1 Insert a blank CD in the drive.
2 Select the image or click **Edit ▶ Select All**.
3 Click **File ▶ Burn CD**. A Create Disc window opens.
4 Select the CD drive from the **Device** drop-down list.
5 Click **OK**. The images are copied to the CD.

To use an image as desktop wallpaper

1. Right-click the image and select **Set As Desktop Wallpaper**. Only part of the image is used as the desktop background.
2. To return to the default, click **Launch** ▶ **Control Center**, click **Display**, then **Background**. Select the background from the **Picture** drop-down list, for example **XandrosBlue**, then click **Apply**.

Searching for images

You can search by various criteria, including file name, folder name, album, tag, date, and media/file type, and caption.

To search for an image

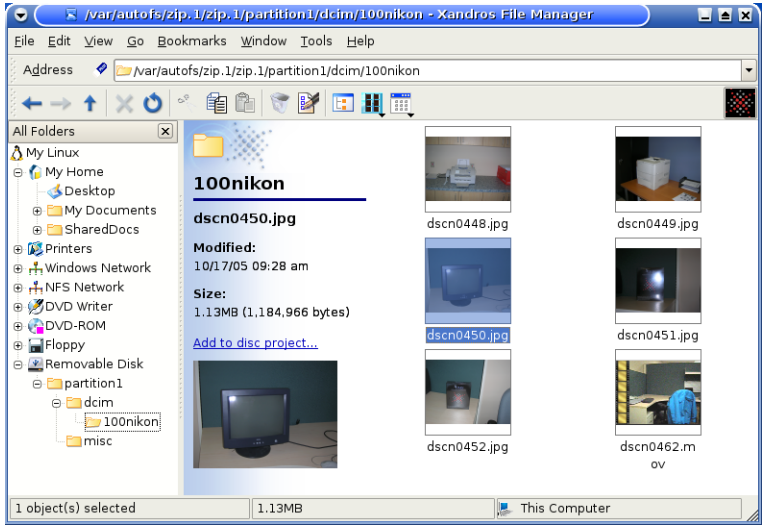
1. Click **Search** and select an option. The applicable images are displayed in a new tab.
2. To close the tab, right-click the tab title and select **Close Tab**.

Viewing images in Xandros File Manager

You can connect a digital camera to your computer and download images with Xandros File Manager, which works for newer cameras. For older cameras, try Xandros Photo Manager or Digikam. Xandros File Manager also includes a slide show function.

To view images in Xandros File Manager

1. Connect the camera to your computer, for example with a USB cable.
2. Turn on the camera.
3. Click **Launch** ▶ **Xandros File Manager**.
4. Click **View** and enable **Thumbnails**.
5. Click **View** ▶ **Thumbnail Size** and select the size of the images.
6. Double-click the **Removable Disk** folder from the list on the left side of the Xandros File Manager window. If there is no Removable Disk folder, then try Xandros Photo Manager or Digikam.
7. Select the camera folder. Images from recent camera models will be loaded for viewing. If you click on an image, a larger view of it appears in Xandros File Manager. If you double-click an image, it assumes the entire view, after which you can click the **Slideshow** button to view all images in sequence.



Viewing images from a Nikon 5600 digital camera in Xandros File Manager

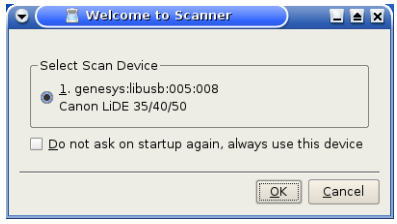
Scanning images

The Scanner application allows you to scan images and photos with a scanner. Support for devices is inconsistent in Linux, so try the procedure here and if that does not work, search the user forums for help with your specific device or try XSane, which you can install from Xandros Networks.

For the Professional edition, you may have to install the application from Xandros Networks.

To scan images

1. If the scanner is part of an all-in-one printing device, ensure that it has been added to the computer. Use the printer wizard in the Control Center.
2. With the scanner connected to the computer, click **Launch** ▶ **Applications** ▶ **Graphics** ▶ **Scanner**. The system detects the scanners connected. If yours is not detected, you may need to install another driver for it.

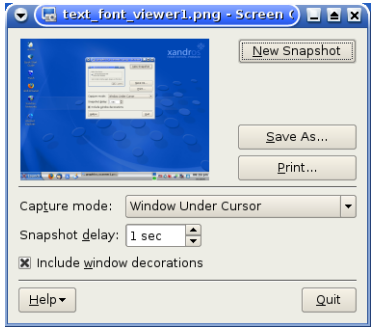


Scanner detection

3. Select the scanner from the list of devices detected. To use this device every time you launch the application, enable the **Do not ask on startup again...** check box. Click **OK** to launch the application with your scanner settings or **Cancel** to launch the application.
4. Select the settings, such as **Color** for the **Scan mode** and **Resolution**, for example 300 dpi.
5. Click **Preview Scan**. A scan is performed.
6. Drag the edge of the image outline to size the scan properly.
7. When you are satisfied with the image, click **Final Scan**. You may or may not be able to rotate the image. A scan is performed and a window prompts you for the format to save in. Select a format, such as PNG, and click **OK**.
8. If you make changes to the image, click **File** ▶ **Save Image** to save the image again.

Performing screen captures

Screen Capture lets you capture images of the entire desktop, a single window, or a region. You can save screen captures in several file formats, including JPEG, PNG, and BMP. You can set a delay time so that you can open a menu before the screen capture is done.



Screen capture application

When you open Screen Capture, it automatically takes a picture of your desktop and the open windows on it. You can save this screen capture or create a new one.

You can capture the desktop, a specific window with or without the borders, or a region. By selecting a region, you take a screen capture of only the part of the window or desktop that you want. You can also specify a time delay so that you can activate the window or open a menu before the screen capture is taken. This action is similar to setting a timer on a camera.

To capture the entire desktop and contents

- Click **Launch ▶ Applications ▶ Graphics ▶ Screen Capture**. The screen capture is taken and you can save or print the image.

To capture a specific window

1. Open and size the window for which you want a screen capture.
2. Click **Launch ▶ Applications ▶ Graphics ▶ Screen Capture**.
3. From the drop-down list, select **Window Under Cursor**. The **Include window decorations** check box is enabled by default to include the borders of the window.
4. Click **New Snapshot**.
5. Click the window you want to capture.

To capture a region

1 Follow the previous procedure, selecting **Region** from the drop-down list then clicking **New Snapshot**.

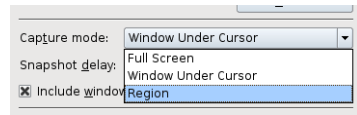
2 Click, drag, and release the mouse on the window or desktop area that you want to capture.

To capture a screen after a time delay

1 Click the up or down arrow of the **Snapshot delay** box to specify a time delay between when you trigger Screen Capture and when it takes the capture.

2 Click **New Snapshot**.

3 Click the window you want to capture. After the delay specified, the snapshot is captured. In the example shown, both a region and a drop-down menu was captured using a five-second delay.



To save a screen capture

1 Click **Save As**.

2 Type the path and file name of the screen capture in the **File name** box.

3 Select the file type from the **Filter** drop-down list.

4 Click **Save**.

Additional graphics applications

The following applications can be installed from the Applications CD and/or Xandros Networks:

Digikam — Lets you download and view images from a camera to your computer, as well as catalog them

Flow Chart — Lets you create flow charts

GIMP — Allows you to create and edit images and photos

Gwenview — Lets you view images, including from a digital camera

ImageMagick — Image editing tool; after installing it type `display` in a console window to launch it

Screen Ruler — Ruler display lets you measure objects on the screen, such as icons

Scribus — Page layout application lets you do desktop publishing (download from Debian unsupported site)

Tux Paint — A fun graphics program for children

XSane — Scanner application

12 Working with data

You can view, create, and edit data files, such as spreadsheets and databases. The following table outlines the data applications available with Xandros Desktop.

Application	Function	Page
OpenOffice.org Base Database	Lets you use databases	270
OpenOffice.org Calc Spreadsheet	Lets you create spreadsheets	271
CrossOver Office	Lets you use Microsoft Access, Excel, and other Windows-based applications compatible with CrossOver Office	272
Calculator	Lets you perform mathematical functions	318

Using the OpenOffice.org database

OpenOffice.org Base Database allows you to use databases. You can create new databases or use existing ones, specifically tables, queries, forms, and reports in a database format. Files are saved in the .odb format.

To start OpenOffice.org Base Database

1. Install it from the Applications CD or Xandros Networks. See "Installing applications from the Applications CD" on page 33.
2. Click **Launch** ▶ **Applications** ▶ **OpenOffice.org** ▶ **Base Database**.

You can download and install the OpenOffice.org suite of software in over 35 languages from www.openoffice.org.

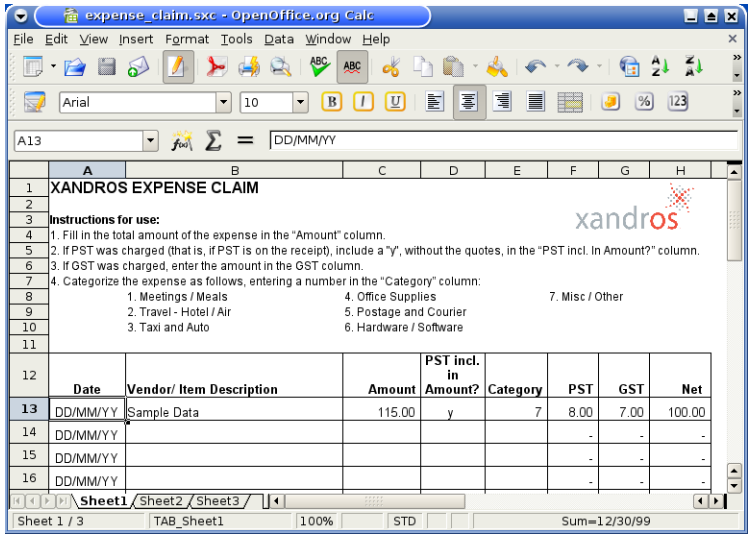
To create a form

1. Launch **Base Database**.
2. With the **Create a new database** option enabled, click **Finish**.
3. Type a name for the form, then click **OK**. A new database is created.
4. Click **Create Form in Design View**. An OpenOffice.org Writer window appears.
5. To insert a form field such as a text box or bullet option, select it from the floating tool bar, then click and drag in the window to create it.
6. Save the document and exit from OpenOffice.org Writer.
7. To try the form, right-click the form in OpenOffice.org Base Database and select **Open**, then complete the form fields, such as typing in the text box or selecting a bullet option.

See the online help for more information.

Using the OpenOffice.org spreadsheet

OpenOffice.org Calc Spreadsheet allows you to create spreadsheets. Files are saved in the .ods format. You can also save your files as Microsoft Excel, dBASE, HTML, and other file types.



OpenOffice.org spreadsheet

The Professional edition of Xandros Desktop includes a StarOffice version instead of OpenOffice.org.

To start OpenOffice.org Calc Spreadsheet

1. Install it from the Applications CD or Xandros Networks. See "Installing applications from the Applications CD" on page 33.
2. Click **Launch ▶ Applications ▶ OpenOffice.org ▶ Calc Spreadsheet**.

See the online help for more information.

Using Microsoft Access or Excel

Microsoft Access and Excel can be installed and used on Xandros Desktop without having Microsoft Windows installed. Xandros Desktop includes an application called CodeWeavers CrossOver Office for this purpose. CrossOver Office helps you to install and configure your Windows applications.

CrossOver Office runs automatically unless it is disabled. You install Access and/or Excel and open the file.

Another option is to install the Microsoft Excel Viewer included with CrossOver Office (not documented here). With this approach, you do not need to install Excel and you can view but not edit Excel documents.

To install Access and/or Excel

- See "Installing Windows-based applications" on page 33.

  To uninstall select Microsoft applications installed without your knowledge, click **Launch ▶ Applications ▶ CrossOver ▶ Configuration**.

To use Access and/or Excel

1. Click **Launch ▶ Windows Applications ▶ Programs ▶ Microsoft Word**.
2. Click **File ▶ Open**, and select the file to open. To access your Xandros home folder, navigate up to **My Computer**.

Using the Calculator

See "Using the Calculator" on page 318.

Additional data applications

The following applications can be downloaded from the Applications CD and/or Xandros Networks:

MySQL Database and Navigator — Database applications

GnuCash — Personal finance application for bank accounts, stocks, income, and expenses

KMyMoney — Personal finance application for income, expenses, assets, liabilities, bills (download from the Debian unsupported site; run as kmymoney2)

Gnumeric — Spreadsheet application (download from the Debian unsupported site)

KSpread — Spreadsheet application

Check Xandros Networks for additional applications.

Using multimedia applications 13

Xandros Desktop multimedia applications let you play audio and video files, and record sound. While Xandros Desktop includes applications that play DVDs, please note that they do not play encrypted DVDs, such as commercial movies. The following table lists multimedia applications provided.

Application	Function	Page
Audio Builder	Lets you synthesize sound and music	275
Sound Server Control	Lets you control volume output for Audio Builder	277
CD Player	Lets you play music CDs	278
DVD Writer	Lets you create and copy music and data CDs and to write data DVDs	283
Media Player	Lets you play audio and video files, including WAV and AVI files	288
MIDI Player	Lets you play MIDI files and do karaoke	290
MIDI panel	Lets you select a MIDI device	292
MP3 Player	Lets you play CD, MP3, and other audio files	293

table continued

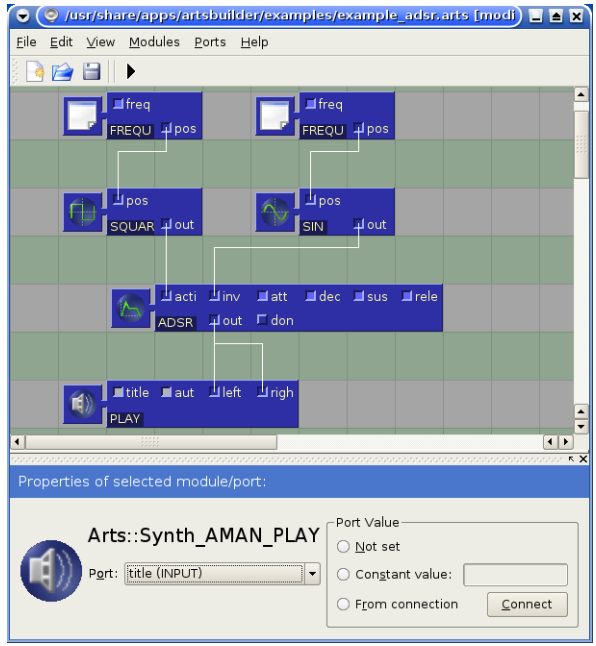
Application	Function	Page
Music Manager	Lets you play music; includes iPod support	298
RealPlayer 10	Lets you play RealAudio, RealVideo, MP3, MIDI, WAV, and other audio and video files	301
Sound Mixer	Lets you adjust volume for your computer and control sound input and output	302
Sound Recorder	Lets you record from a microphone or other input device	304
Video Player	Lets you watch video CDs, digital television, audio CDs, and unencrypted DVDs	305

For most of the multimedia applications, a sound card and speakers or headphones are required.

With an iPod, you can also install iTunes using CrossOver Office. iTunes plays MP3 and AAC files. Simply launch CrossOver Office to install it. When prompted about the restart, it is simulated not actual.

Using the Audio Builder

Audio Builder is an analog real-time synthesizer, or aRts. It lets you synthesize sound and music on a digital computer using analog building blocks, such as sequencers and mixers. You can string sounds together using Audio Builder.



Playing a sample file in Audio Builder

To start Audio Builder

- Click **Launch ▶ Applications ▶ Multimedia ▶ Audio Builder.**

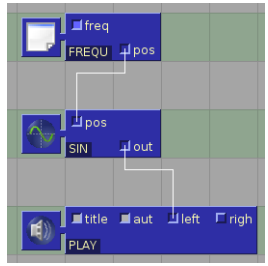
To view/play an example

1. In Audio Builder, click **File ▶ Open Example**, select a file, such as example_adsr.arts, and click **Open.**
2. Start the Sound Server Control by clicking **Launch ▶ Applications ▶ Multimedia ▶ Sound Server Control.** You can control the volume by clicking and dragging the bar on the right side. Or you can reduce the volume by clicking the volume icon on the Panel.
3. Click **File ▶ Execute Structure.** An execution window is displayed, the sound begins to play, and the **Sound Server Control** bars oscillate depending on the example chosen.
4. To stop the sound, click **OK** in the execution window. The sound stops playing and the Audio Builder window reappears.

To build a sound

1 Click **File ▶ New**.

2 Create a frequency module. Click **Modules ▶ Synthesis ▶ Oscillation & Modulation ▶ Synth_FREQUENCY**, then click in the line at the top of the window to add the module. Click the **freq** check box, enable the **Constant value** option, and type `440` to give a frequency of 440, click **Connect**, then enable the **Constant value** option again.



3 Create a waveform module. Click **Modules ▶ Synthesis ▶ WaveForms ▶ Synth_WAVE_SIN**, then click in the line two rows below the frequency module to add the module.

4 Connect the two modules. Click the **pos** check box on the frequency module, and drag and release on the **pos** check box on the SIN waveform module. The input and output of the two modules are connected.

5 Create a play module so that you can play the sound. Click **Modules ▶ Synthesis ▶ Sound IO ▶ AMAN_PLAY**, then click the line two rows below the SIN waveform module to add the module.

6 Connect the two modules. Click the **out** check box on the SIN waveform module, and drag and release on the **left** check box on the play module. The input and output of the two modules are connected.

7 Play the sound. Click the **Execute Structure** icon on the tool bar. If the sound does not play, ensure the Constant value of the frequency module is set to 440.

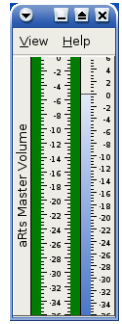
8 To stop the sound, click **OK** in the execution window.

9 Change the frequency, for example from 440 to 100 and play the sound.

10 Save your file, for example to the desktop as a .arts file (type the extension).

Using Sound Server Control

Sound Server Control allows you to control volume for Audio Builder output.



Volume control for Audio Builder

The default view shows two volume indicators for input from the Audio Builder (left side) and a slider to control volume (right side). The view can be changed. In the example shown, a sound is being played, as indicated by the yellow bars.

To start Sound Server Control

1 Click **Launch ▶ Applications ▶ Multimedia ▶ Sound Server Control**.

2 To change volume, click and drag the slider on the right side when using Audio Builder.

Using the CD Player

The CD Player (Kscd) lets you play audio CDs.

With Internet access, you can use CD Database (CDDB) to display track and artist information of the CD being played. CDDB uses an online database of music called freedb, which contains information such as a CD title, artist name, and song title. This information is displayed in the CD Player window.

You can customize CD Player, including colors, to announce the next track, disable the icon on the Panel, and have the CD eject when it is finished playing.

Listening to a music CD with the CD Player

Using CD Player

CD Player lets you play, pause, move forward and backward, stop, and eject.

To play a CD

1 Insert a CD into the CD drive.

2 Click **Launch** ▶ **Applications** ▶ **Multimedia** ▶ **CD Player**. You can also access the application from its Panel icon.

3 Click **Play**. Use the volume icon on the Panel to control volume. If you have problems, see "Troubleshooting CD Player" on page 282.

To pause or resume

- Click **Play** or **Pause**.

To move backward in the same track

- Click and drag the slider to the left.

To move forward in the same track

- Click and drag the slider to the right.

To move to the next track

- Click **Next**.

To stop playing a CD

- Click **Stop**.

To eject a CD

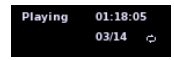
- Click **Eject**. If that does not work, right-click the device in Xandros File Manager and select **Eject Disc**. You can also click **Eject** again to close the CD drive.

Specifying the play order of CD tracks

You can play tracks continuously in a loop or in random order.

To play CD tracks in a continuous loop

1. Click **Loop**. A loop indicator appears at the right of the window.



2. To stop the loop, click **Loop** again. The loop indicator disappears from the window.

To play CD tracks in random order

1. Click **Random**. "Random" appears in the window.

2. To stop random play, click **Random** again. "Random" disappears from the window.

Displaying CD information

You can configure how CD Player retrieves CD information, for example so that it retrieves information from your computer and not over the Internet when you are connected. You can set CDDB to search for the CD identification code on the Internet, add and remove CDDB sites, and specify the CDDB folder on the hard disk. You can also view track lists. You can view the following in the CD Player window: artist name, CD name, and track list. It is enabled by default.

You can also set multimedia inputs for your computer. See "Changing multimedia information retrieval" on page 48.

To set CDDB lookup source (local or remote)

1. Click **Extras** ▶ **Configure CD Player**.
2. Click the **CDDB** icon.
3. In the **Lookup** tab, enable one of the following options:
   - **Cache only** — To retrieve CD information stored on your computer
   - **Remote only** — To retrieve CD information from the Internet
   - **Cache and remote** — Use both (default)

4 Click **OK** to exit from the configuration window.

Changing CDDB server access

You can select the servers that the CD Player uses to obtain audio track information. By adding CDDB servers you increase the likelihood of finding your CD track information. You can also remove a CDDB server.

To change the CDDB server

1 Click **Extras** ▶ **Configure CD Player**.

2 Click the **CDDB** icon.

3 In the **Lookup** tab, ensure that the **Cache and remote** or **Remote only** option is enabled.

4 Type the address of the server in the **CDDB server** box. An example is cddb.kagomi.com on port 80. Not all servers work. The default is freedb.freedb.org on port 80. Click **Show Mirror List** to select from a list of servers around the world.

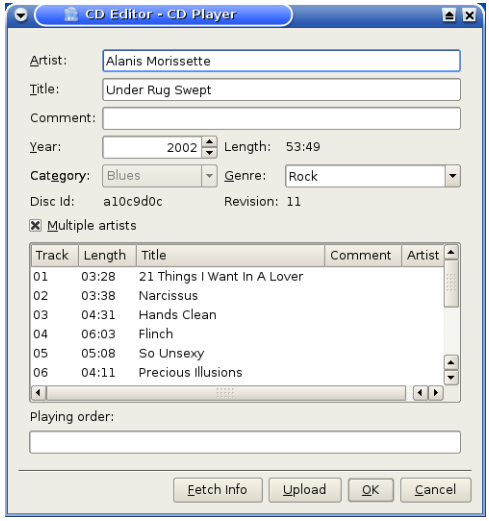
5 Click **OK** to exit from the configuration window.

Viewing CD playlists

You can view the CD playlist in CD Player. The playlist window includes the following: year, length, track number, track length, and track title.

To view a CD playlist

- Click the **CDDB** button. The information loads when available. Clicking on a track plays the track.



CD information displayed in the playlist window

To view more information on a CD title and artist

- Click **Extras ▶ Artist Information**, and select a site to access (Internet service required).

Customizing CD Player

You can customize the appearance of the CD Player. You can change colors, announce the next track, disable the icon on the Panel, play a CD automatically when inserted, and eject the CD when it is finished playing. When you use the track announcement feature, at the beginning of a song, information flashes briefly by the Panel.

To change the text display color

1. Click **Extras ▶ Configure CD Player**.
2. Click the **CD Player** icon.
3. Click the **LCD color** button.
4. Select a color, and click **OK** to exit from the color selection window. If you select from the color box in the top left, you may also have to select from the color box to the right of it.
5. Click **OK** to exit from the configuration window.

To change the text background color

1. Click **Extras ▶ Configure CD Player**.
2. Click the **CD Player** icon.
3. Click the **Background color** button.
4. Select a color, and click **OK** to exit from the color selection window. If you select from the color box in the top left, you may also have to select from the color box to the right of it.
5. Click **OK** to exit from the configuration window.

To announce new tracks

1. Click **Extras ▶ Configure CD Player**.
2. Click the **CD Player** icon.
3. Enable the **Show track announcement** check box.
4. Click **OK** to exit from the configuration window.

To disable the CD Player icon on the Panel

1 Click **Extras ▶ Configure CD Player**.
2 Click the **CD Player** icon.
3 Disable the **Show icon in system tray** check box. This action also disables track announcement.
4 Click **OK** to exit from the configuration window.

To automatically play a CD

1 Click **Extras ▶ Configure CD Player**.
2 Click the **CD Player** icon.
3 Enable the **Autoplay when CD inserted** check box.
1 Click **OK** to exit from the configuration window.

To eject a CD once it is finished

1 Click **Extras ▶ Configure CD Player**.
2 Click the **CD Player** icon.
3 Enable the **Eject CD when finished playing** check box.
4 Click **OK** to exit from the configuration window.

Troubleshooting CD Player

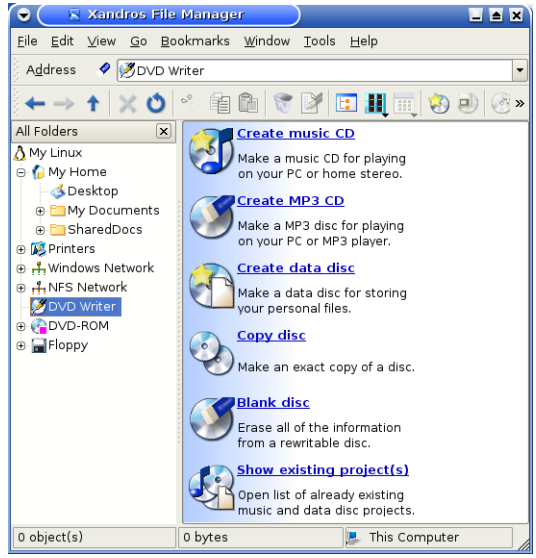
Try these steps if you have trouble playing music with the CD Player.

To get sound

- Download updates to your computer from Xandros Networks.
- Digital playback is enabled by default. If the music skips, stop playing the music, access the configuration panel, and disable the **Use direct digital playback option**.
- If you have no sound because you disabled the digital playback in the previous step, stop playing any music, access the configuration panel, and click **Defaults**.
- Check that the **Master** volume output in the Sound Mixer is active and the volume is turned up.

Using the DVD Writer

The DVD Writer enables you to write, or “burn”, CDs and DVDs, copy them, erase DVDs, and create images of the contents, for example for installing software. You can use it to back up your files onto a CD or DVD. Currently, the application can read and write a DVD, but it can only write data DVDs.



DVD Writer in Xandros File Manager

To create an audio or data CD, your computer must support CD recording. For example, you must have a writable CD drive (CD-RW) and writable CD (CD-R). You can use DVD Writer to determine if your device is writable.

If you want to write files or audio tracks from different locations to a CD, you create a project. The project allows you to selectively add and remove files and folders or audio tracks and to save the layout of the disc for later burning.

To set up DVD Writer for the first time and determine if device is writable

1. Click **Launch** ▶ **Applications** ▶ **Multimedia** ▶ **DVD Writer**.
2. Click **Tools** ▶ **Configure DVD Writer**.
3. In the **Path** field, type a folder path to save files in or click **...** and select a folder (for example, **My Music** in the **My Documents** folder in your **home** folder).
4. To determine if your CD/DVD device is writable, click the **Recorder** tab and view the **Capabilities**.
5. Click **OK** to finish and exit.

Creating a project and writing it to a CD or DVD

You can save files before writing them and return to them at a later date. See the next procedure when you want to copy from one CD to another CD, for example copy the CD contents to your computer first.

To create a project and write it

1. Click **Launch** ▶ **Applications** ▶ **Multimedia** ▶ **DVD Writer**.
2. Click **Show existing projects**.
3. Click **New project**.
4. Type a name for the CD or DVD in the **Volume ID** box.
5. Enable the **Music CD** or **MP3 CD** or **Data disc** option to indicate the type of files to be copied to the CD or DVD.
6. Open another Xandros File Manager window and drag-and-drop or copy the files into the project window. Some music CDs, for example, that contain executable files, do not allow you to copy and paste the contents.
7. Click **File** ▶ **Save Project** to save the project. You will then be able to return to the project another time to add files, and so on.
8. To create the disc, click **File** ▶ **Write files to disc** and follow the prompts. For example if you are copying from one CD onto another CD and you have only one CD drive, you are prompted to insert the source disc, then the new disc.

Copying a CD or DVD

You can copy a CD or DVD to a hard disk, copy a CD to a CD, and create an image of the CD, for example.

If you want to listen to music on your computer, copy the music from a CD to your computer using the first procedure that follows. Only a single track can be played at a time. To copy an entire disc, follow the online help for the **Audio CDs** panel in the Control Center.

When you copy a CD as a disc image file, called an ISO, it copies the CD as one file to a location on your computer specified by you, and it allows you to then create CDs with that image file.

When you burn an ISO file to a disc, it expands all the directories and copies them onto the disc for use instead of just copying the single ISO file. It allows you to install software from the disc.

If you want to copy software on a CD to another CD, you first copy the CD as an ISO/disc image file to your computer, then burn the ISO file to a CD. Use the third procedure.

To copy music from a CD for listening on your computer

1. Click **Launch ▶ Xandros File Manager**, and locate the folder in which you want to copy files to.
2. Insert the CD to be copied in the CD drive. If it launches another application, like the CD Player, exit that application.
3. In another Xandros File Manager window, click the **CD** (or **CD-RW**) drive to access the tracks.
4. Select the tracks to be copied and drag them into the folder in which you want to copy files to. You may be prompted to select the format (WAV, CDA, and Ogg Vorbis) and if you want to use song title or track number to name the tracks. Do not select the CDA format because no player is configured to play CDA tracks. A progress window displays during copying.

   CDs that contain executable files let you copy the executable file only, not the tracks.
5. To play a track copied in the WAV or Ogg format, simply double-click it.

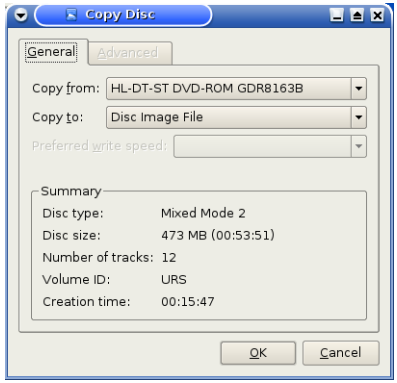
To copy a CD to another CD drive

1. Click **Launch ▶ Applications ▶ Multimedia ▶ DVD Writer**.
2. Place the CD to be copied into the CD drive. If it launches another application, like the CD Player, exit that application.
3. Click **Copy disc**.
4. Close all other applications and click **OK** to exit from this prompt.
5. Select the device to read from in the **Copy from** drop-down list.
6. Select the device or location to read to the **Copy to** list, copying to another CD drive.
7. Note the disc and copy time outlined in the **Summary** area.
8. Click **OK** and follow the prompts. Insert the destination disc when prompted. A progress bar appears during copying.

To copy a CD to a CD (using a single drive)

1. Click **Launch ▶ Applications ▶ Multimedia ▶ DVD Writer**.
2. Place the CD to be copied into the CD drive. If it launches another application, like the CD Player, exit that application.
3. Click **Copy disc**.
4. Close all other applications and click **OK** to exit from this prompt.
5. Select the device to read from in the **Copy from** drop-down list.
6. From the **Copy to** drop-down list, select **Disc Image File**. When you copy as a disc image file, it copies the CD as one file to a location on your

computer specified by you, and it allows you to then create a CD with that image file.



Copying from a CD to the computer

7 Note the disc and copy time outlined in the **Summary** area.

8 Click **OK**.

9 When prompted, specify a file name and location. If you are trying to copy a music CD, it creates a .xdi file, not a .iso file. A progress bar appears during copying.

If you try to create a disc image file for a CD that contains an executable file, the process may stall, for example when about 90 percent complete.

10 When creating a music CD, double-click the .xdi file to create the CD, following the prompts.

To create a music or data CD or DVD

1 Click **Launch** ▶ **Applications** ▶ **Multimedia** ▶ **DVD Writer**.

2 Insert the blank CD or DVD in the applicable drive.

3 Click **Create music CD** or **Create MP3 CD** or **Create data disc**.

4 Open a Xandros File Manager window, navigate to the file or folder that you want to copy to the CD, then drag and drop that file into the **DVD Writer** window.

5 Click **Write files to disc**.

6 Close all other applications and click **OK** to exit from this prompt.

7 In the **General** tab, select the **Device** to copy to.

8 Click **OK**. A progress window appears during copying.

To burn an ISO file to a CD as multiple files

1. Click **Launch** ▶ **Applications** ▶ **Multimedia** ▶ **DVD Writer**.
2. Click **File** ▶ **Create Disc from Image**.
3. Select the ISO file, and click **Open**.
4. In the **Create Disc** window, check that the **Device** is the destination drive, and click **OK**. When you burn an ISO file to the disc, it expands all the folders and copies them onto the disc for use instead of just copying the single ISO file. It allows you to install software from the disc.

You can also double-click the ISO file to burn the file to a CD.

Erasing a DVD

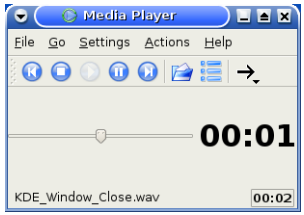
If you have rewritable media, all information on the disc can be removed using DVD Writer.

To erase a DVD

1. Click **Launch** ▶ **Applications** ▶ **Multimedia** ▶ **DVD Writer**.
2. Insert the DVD into the drive.
3. Click **Blank disc**. A Blank Disc window opens.
4. To start a quick erase, click **OK** and follow the prompts.

Using the Media Player

The Media Player lets you play audio and video files, including MPEG, Ogg, WAV, AVI, Windows media, QuickTime, and Real formats. You can select files from a cumulative playlist, loop the playlist or a single file, play files randomly, display volume control, and select which equalizer to use. You can change the default display settings.



Listening to a file in Media Player

To play a file

1. Click **Launch** ▶ **Applications** ▶ **Multimedia** ▶ **Media Player**. If the application does not launch, click its icon on the Panel.
2. Click **File** ▶ **Open**, and navigate to the folder where the file is located. For example, a file on an iPod can be located by clicking **My Linux**, **All File Systems**, then **/media/ipod/iPod_Control/Music**.
3. Select the file, and click **Open**. The file plays.

To play a file from a playlist

1. Click **Settings** ▶ **Show Playlist**. The list of files previously played appears.
2. Double-click a file from the list of available files. You can also save the playlist.

To pause a file

- Click **Pause** (⏸). To resume, click **Play** (▶).

To move to the next file

- Click **Forward**.

To move to the previous file

- Click **Back**.

To stop a file

- Click **Stop** (■).

To set looping and random play

- Click **Settings** ▶ **Loop** and select an option: **None** (no looping), **Song**, **Playlist**, and **Random**.

To increase or decrease the volume of an audio file

1. Click **Settings** ▶ **Show Volume Control**. The volume control appears on the right side of the window.
2. Move the slider up to increase the volume or down to decrease the volume. You can also use the sound icon on the Panel.

To select an equalizer

1. While playing a track, click **Settings** ▶ **Equalizer**.
2. Enable the **Enabled** check box.
3. Click an equalizer type from the **Presets** column: dance, jazz, metal, trance, and zero. The sound changes immediately, so you can experiment by clicking the equalizer options.
4. Click **Close**.

To change default settings

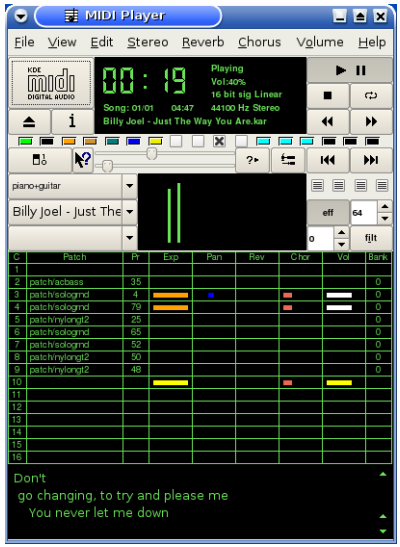
1. Click **Settings** ▶ **Configure Media Player**.
2. To change the look, click **Plugins**, enable a second interface in the **Interfaces** tab, click **Apply**, and **OK**. The Media Player is displayed in two windows and you can then disable the interface that you do not want.

To turn off track announcement

1. Click **Settings** ▶ **Configure Media Player**.
2. Click **System Tray**.
3. Disable the **Announce tracks with a popup window** check box.
4. Click **OK**.

Using the MIDI Player

The MIDI Player lets you play Musical Instrument Digital Interface (MIDI) files using instrument patches and software emulation. It also includes karaoke capability.



MIDI Player

The application plays .mid and .kar files. The lyrics are displayed, as shown. For sample files, try www.karaokebash.com

Three instrument patches are included by default (piano, guitar, and piano with guitar). You can download more than 100 other patches. Normally a patchset contains a folder of files and a configuration file.

To start the MIDI Player

1. Click **Launch** ▶ **Applications** ▶ **Multimedia** ▶ **MIDI Player**.
2. Click **File** ▶ **Open**, select the file that you want to play, click **Play**, then **Close** to exit from the selection window.
3. Select the filter from the **Select Patch Set** drop-down list, which is set to **piano+guitar** by default.
4. Click **Play/Pause** (▶ ⏸). Missing patches are displayed at the bottom of the window before the song starts.
5. To stop playing, click **Stop** (■).

To obtain patches

1. Log in as the Administrator.

2 In the application, click **Help** ▶ **KMidi Handbook**, then click **Where to get a full set of patches**. Patches can be downloaded from the sites outlined (requires Internet connection). For example, open **www.anime.net/~goemon/timidity**, download the file, and extract the file by clicking it and selecting **Extract all**. Do not type a file name for it.

3 For more patches, in the application click the **Configure KMidi** button, then click the **Patchsets** tab. Patches can be downloaded from the sites outlined (requires Internet connection).

To use patches

1 Log in as the Administrator.

2 Move the downloaded patches to the following folder, for example move the **goemon** folder and **goemon.cfg** file to it:

/usr/share/apps/kmidi/config

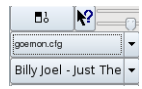
3 Open the **timidity.cfg** file in that folder (for example, double-click it then click **Edit** ▶ **Text Editor**) and add the following lines before the first occurrence of "else":

```
if N
source fileName.cfg
```

where N is the following number and fileName is the name of the file you added to the folder. For example, here is what the file looks like with the goemon.cfg file added from the previous procedure:

bank 0 standard
if 1
source piano
if 2
source guitar
if 3
source goemon.cfg
else
source piano+guitar

After you move the files and update the timidity file, the patchset (goemon.cfg) is added and available for selection from the drop-down list in the MIDI Player the next time the application is launched.



Using a patch

Selecting MIDI devices

MIDI devices can be connected to your computer. MIDI is a standard that allows computers, musical instruments, and synthesizers to properly record and play digital sound. MIDI files contain instructions for the devices on how to interpret musical notes and tempo, similar to sheet music.

You can use a MIDI mapper, which is a file that makes it easy for software to communicate between your sound card and MIDI device. It allows you to customize your MIDI settings.

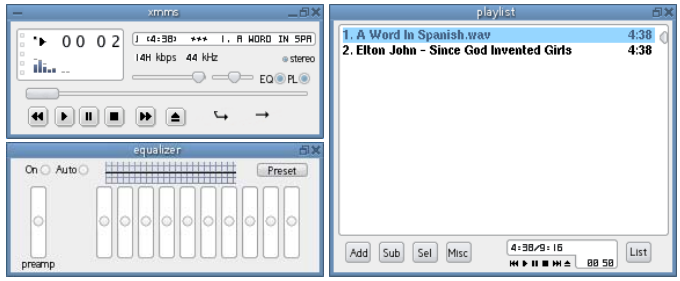
Sound System panel for selecting a MIDI device connected to the computer

To select a MIDI device

1. Click **Launch ▶ Control Center**.
2. Click **Sound & Multimedia**, then **Sound System**.
3. Click the **Hardware** tab.
4. **Select the MIDI device** from the drop-down list. The device must be connected to the computer.
5. If you want to apply a MIDI mapper, enable the **Use MIDI mapper** check box and specify the file to use.
6. Click **Apply**.

Using the MP3 Player

The XMMS MP3 Player lets you play audio files (such as MP3, MPEG, Ogg, and WAV files) and audio CDs containing files in the MP3 format. There are three views: Main Window, Playlist, and Equalizer.



MP3 Player with playlist and equalizer

You can shuffle and repeat tracks and manage audio files by creating a file folder.

The volume and balance tools let you increase or decrease the playback volume and change the volume distribution between the left and right speakers.

Creating a playlist lets you specify the audio files or CD tracks you want to play. You can add, remove, and arrange tracks in any order. You can create and save multiple playlists or load a saved playlist to play.

The Equalizer does not function at this time.

MP3 Player also provides options and preferences that let you change the appearance and placement of the windows. You can apply a new skin, or appearance, and change the read-out display.

Starting and exiting MP3 Player

To start MP3 Player

1 Click **Launch** ▶ **Applications** ▶ **Multimedia** ▶ **MP3 Player**.

2 To display the **Playlist** window, right-click in the MP3 Player window and enable the **Playlist Editor** option.

3 To display the **Equalizer**, right-click in the MP3 Player window and enable the **Graphical EQ** option.

You can also use the **PL** and **EQ** buttons to launch the playlist and equalizer windows.

To exit MP3 Player

- In the MP3 Player window, click the **Close** button, which is an X button at the top right of the Main Window.

Playing files

You can play a single audio file or a selection of audio files. To play multiple files, the files need to be located in one folder or loaded into a playlist. For information about creating and editing a playlist of files, see "Creating and editing a playlist for audio files" on page 296.

To play audio files

1. In the MP3 Player window, right-click in the window, and click **Play File**. To find files located in your folder, click into **/home**. To find files located on a CD, click into **/media/cdrom0**, for example. To find files located on an iPod, click into **/media/ipod/iPod_Control/Music**.
2. Double-click the audio file you want to play. If the file is already in the playlist, simply double-click it. Or select multiple files to play by holding down **Ctrl**, clicking the rest of the files. Or click **Add all files in directory**. The files are added to the Playlist window.

If the file is located on the computer, drag and drop it from Xandros File Manager into the **Playlist** window.

You can also select multiple files in the playlist and click **Play**.

To play audio files from a folder

1. In the MP3 Player window, right-click in the window, and click **Play Directory**. To find files located on an iPod, click into **/media/ipod/iPod_Control/Music**.
2. Double-click the folder that you want to play.

To play a CD

1. In the MP3 Player window, right-click and select **Play Location**.
2. Select the drive from drop-down list, for example **/media/cdrom0**.
3. Click **OK**. The CD begins to play.

To stop play

- In the MP3 Player window, click the **Stop** button (■).

You can also stop playing an audio file or CD track by pressing **v**.

To move to the beginning of an audio file or CD

- In the MP3 Player window, click the **Play** button (▶).

To pause or resume playing an audio file or CD

- In the MP3 Player window, click the **Pause** button (⏸) or press **c**.

To move to the next audio file or CD track

- In the MP3 Player window, click the **Forward** button (⏭) or press **b**.

To move to the previous audio file or CD track

- In the MP3 Player window, click the **Backward** button (⏮) or press **z**.

To stop a CD

- In the MP3 Player window, click the **Stop** button (■) or press **v**.

Specifying the play order of audio files and CD tracks

You can play the audio files on a playlist and the tracks on a CD in random order or from beginning to end in a continuous loop.

To play audio files or CD tracks in random order

- In the MP3 Player window, right-click and enable **Options** ▶ **Shuffle** or press **s**.

To play audio files or CD tracks in a continuous loop

- In the MP3 Player window, right-click and enable **Options** ▶ **Repeat** or press **r**.

Increasing and decreasing the volume of audio files

You can increase and decrease the volume.

To increase and decrease the volume of an audio file or CD

- In the MP3 Player window, move the volume slider to the right to increase the volume and to the left to decrease the volume.

Specifying the balance between speakers

You can change the balance between the left and right speaker.

To change balance between speakers

- In the MP3 Player window, move the Balance slider to the left to make sound come only from the left speaker, and to the right to make sound come only from the right speaker.

Creating and editing a playlist for audio files

Creating a playlist lets you select one or more audio files to play. You can add audio files to a playlist, remove audio files, and arrange the playing order of the files in the list.

The track number is displayed when you add files from a CD. To display the name of the track instead, save the file to your computer with it then play the file from the computer instead of the CD.

To add an audio file to the playlist

1. In the **Playlist** window, click **+ File**.
2. From the **Directories** list, select the folder where the audio files are located. To find files located in your folder, click into **/home**. To find files located on a CD, click into **/media/cdrom0**, for example.
3. From the **Files** list, select the audio file you want to add to the playlist.
4. Click **Add**. The file is added to the playlist.

To add multiple audio files to the playlist

1. Follow the first two steps in the previous procedure.
2. From the **Files** list, select multiple audio files by holding down **Ctrl** and clicking the files you want to add. To find files located in your folder, click into **/home**. To find files located on a CD, click into **/media/cdrom0**, for example.
3. Click **Add selected files**. Or click **Add all files in directory**. The files are added to the playlist.
4. Click **Close**.

To remove audio files from the playlist

- In the **Playlist** window, select the audio file you want to remove and click **- File**.

You can also right-click on a track in the playlist to remove it.

To sort the playlist

1. In the **Playlist** window, right-click and select **Sort**.
2. From the menu that appears, select one of the following options:
   - **Sort List, By Title/By Filename/By Path + Filename/By Date/By Playlength** — Sorts the audio files alphabetically according to title, file name, path and file name, date, or longest time
   - **Sort Selection, By Title/By Filename/By Path + Filename/By Date/By Playlength** — Sorts the audio files that you have selected in the list

alphabetically according to title, file name, path and file name, or date. You must first select files from the list by holding **Ctrl** and clicking them.

- **Randomize List** — Sorts the audio files in random order
- **Reverse List** — Sorts the audio files in reverse order from the current order

Changing options and preferences

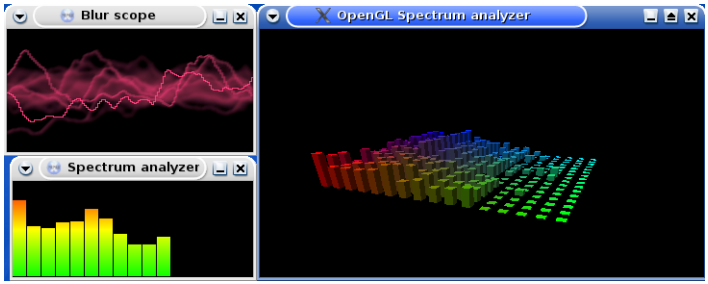
The MP3 Player provides options and preferences that let you change the appearance and placement of the window. You can customize the appearance of the Visualization window, which provides a graphical display of sound as it plays. You can also add Visualization plug-ins.

To change MP3 Player options and preferences

1. In the MP3 Player window, right-click, select **Options**, and enable one or more of the following options. Selected letters displayed on the left side of the MP3 Player window indicate the active options.
   - **Always On Top** — Lets you keep the MP3 Player on top of all open windows when enabled
   - **Show on all desktops** — To display the MP3 Player on all virtual desktops
   - **WindowShade Mode** — Reduces the Main Window so that only a title bar shows
   - **Playlist WindowShade Mode** — Reduces the Playlist window so that only a title bar shows
   - **Equalizer WindowShade Mode** — Reduces the Equalizer window so that only a title bar shows
   - **DoubleSize** — Lets you enlarge or reduce the size of the window
   - **Easy Move** — Lets you move the application on the desktop
2. In the MP3 Player window, right-click, select **Visualization**, and select a visualization mode.
3. To add a Visualization window, add a plug-in as follows. Right-click, select **Visualization ▶ Visualization plugins**, select a plug-in, and enable the **Enable plugin** check box. The window opens with a display. The three options are shown here.

To change MP3 Player skin

1. In the MP3 Player window, right-click, select **Options ▶ Skin Browser**.
2. Select a skin. The appearance changes immediately. (The default is plastik.)
3. Click **Close**.



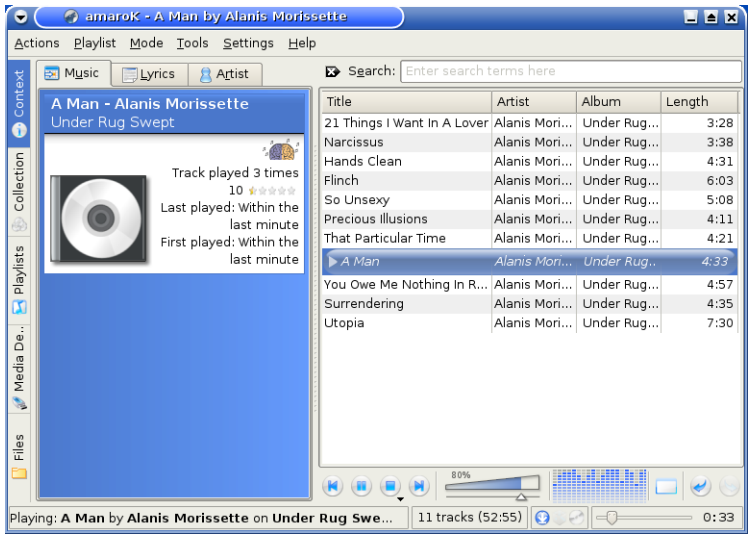
Visualization plug-ins for MP3 Player

Using the Music Manager

The Music Manager (Amarok) lets you play CDs, play radio streams, play files located on your computer. When you connect an iPod, the application is launched with the device mounted in the media player tab. From a CD, you can rip the music into MP3 format for iPod use. iPods and other music devices are auto-detected.

Formats supported include MP3, WMA, OGG, FLACC, AIFF, ATA3. You can convert music CDs, ACC files, and WMA files to MP3s.

For radio streams, you can play from the defaults provided, such as Virgin Radio in the UK.


amaroK - A Man by Alanis Morissette
Actions Playlist Mode Tools Settings Help
Context Collection Playlists Media De... Files
Music Lyrics Artist
Search: Enter search terms here
A Man - Alanis Morissette
Under Rug Swept
Track played 3 times
10
Last played: Within the last minute
First played: Within the last minute
Title Artist Album Length
21 Things I Want In A Lover Alanis Mori... Under Rug... 3:28
Narcissus Alanis Mori... Under Rug... 3:38
Hands Clean Alanis Mori... Under Rug... 4:31
Flinch Alanis Mori... Under Rug... 6:03
So Unsexy Alanis Mori... Under Rug... 5:08
Precious Illusions Alanis Mori... Under Rug... 4:11
That Particular Time Alanis Mori... Under Rug... 4:21
A Man Alanis Mori... Under Rug... 4:33
You Owe Me Nothing In R... Alanis Mori... Under Rug... 4:57
Surrendering Alanis Mori... Under Rug... 4:35
Utopia Alanis Mori... Under Rug... 7:30
80%
Playing: A Man by Alanis Morissette on Under Rug Swe...
11 tracks (52:55)
0:33

Playing a CD in Music Manager

To play music from your computer collection

1 Click the **Collection** tab on the left side.

2 Double-click the album/song in the left side of the window.

3 Double-click a song in the right side of the window.

To play a CD

1 Insert the CD in a drive.

2 Click **Actions** ▶ **Play Audio CD**.

3 Click the **Play/Pause** button.

4 You have the option of creating a playlist so that the information is saved to the **Playlist** tab by clicking **Playlist** ▶ **Save Playlist As**. You still need to have the CD in the drive to play from the playlist.

To rip a CD to MP3 format for iPod use

1 Open Music Manager.

2 Insert the CD in a drive. Close the CD Player when it launches.

3 Click the **Files** tab on the left side, and double-click the **MP3** folder. If the folder is not displayed, enter `audiocd:/` in the box to view it.

4 Right-click the file that you want to rip, select **Copy to Collection**, and click **OK** in the window that appears. The file is copied to the computer, which takes several minutes.

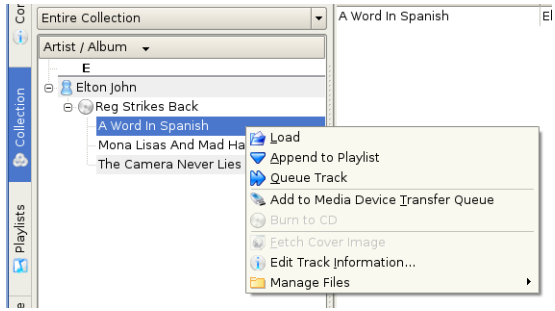
5 Transfer the file to the iPod using the next procedure.

The MP3 encoding settings can be personalized in the Control Center. Access **Sound & Multimedia**, **Audio CDs**, and click the **MP3 Encoder** tab.

To transfer a ripped track to an iPod

1 Connect the iPod.

2 In Music Manager, click the **Collection** tab on the left side, right-click the file to transfer and select **Add to Media Device Transfer Queue**.



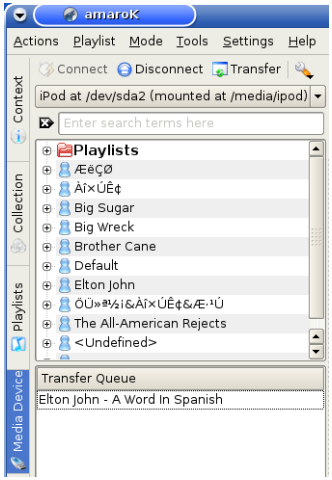
Copying a track

3 Click the **Media Device** tab on the left side. Note the file is in the **Transfer Queue** area at the bottom left.

4 Click **Connect** to connect to the iPod.

5 Click **Transfer** to transfer the file to the iPod.

6 Click **Disconnect** to disconnect from the iPod. The iPod is now ready for use.



File ready to transfer to iPod

To play a song located on an iPod

1 Connect the iPod.

2 Click the **Music Device** tab.

3 Click **Connect**.

4 Navigate to and double-click the file to play.

To play a radio stream

1 While connected to the Internet, click the **Playlists** tab on the left.

2 Expand the **Radio Streams** folder and the **Cool-Streams** folder.

3 Double-click an entry on the left side. The information loads.

4 Double-click an entry on the right side. The stream loads and plays.

Using the RealPlayer

RealPlayer 10 lets you play RealAudio, RealVideo, MP3, MIDI, WAV, and other audio and video file types. You can use the player to listen to or view files formatted for the RealPlayer as streaming content over the Internet, such as .ra, .rm, and .rms files.

To play a file (the easy way)

- Double-click the file. For files developed for Real players, such as .ra files, RealPlayer 10 is launched and the file begins to play. Other file types may launch other applications. To test the application, using a high-speed connection and a Web browser, go to **http://music.guide.real.com**, access the music video page, and play a music video.

To play a file located on your hard disk or iPod

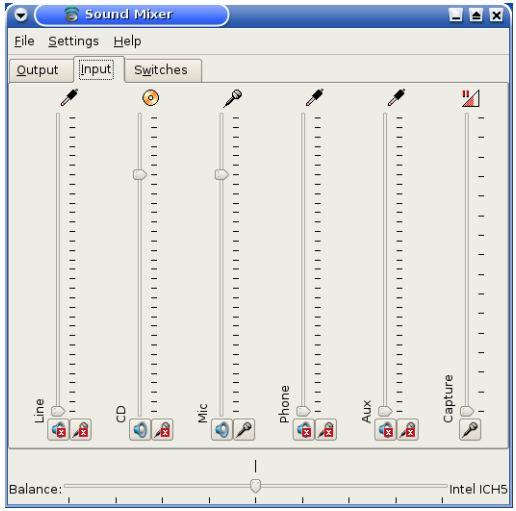
1. Click **Launch** ▶ **Applications** ▶ **Multimedia** ▶ **RealPlayer 10**.
2. Click **File** ▶ **Open File**.
3. Navigate to and select the file to play. For an iPod, click into **ipod/iPod_Control/Music**.
4. Click **Open**. The file begins to play.

To play a file on your hard disk or over the Internet

1. Click **Launch** ▶ **Applications** ▶ **Multimedia** ▶ **RealPlayer 10**.
2. Click **File** ▶ **Open Location**.
3. Type or select the file page of the file to play. Files located on your hard disk that have been played before are listed.
4. Click **OK**. The file begins to play.

Using the Sound Mixer

Sound Mixer lets you adjust the volume of sound devices, such as the microphone input and control which inputs and outputs are on and off.



Sound Mixer

You can adjust volumes for each channel shown using sliders. Mono devices have one slider per channel. Stereo devices have two sliders so that you can adjust the volume of the left and right sound channels independently. You can merge two stereo sliders into one to adjust the volume for each sound channel equally (shown). Sound Mixer also lets you adjust the balance between the left and right speakers.

To start Sound Mixer

- Click **Launch ▶ Applications ▶ Multimedia ▶ Sound Mixer**. The display varies with sound hardware detected.

You can also launch the Sound Mixer from the Panel. Click the speaker icon on the Panel and select **Mixer**.

To turn a channel on or off

- In the **Output** or **Input** tab, click the **Mute/Unmute** button, which looks like a speaker, at the bottom of a channel. The icon has a red x beside it when input/output is off. The **Master** slider controls the volume of your speakers and headset, for example when you play a CD. In the example shown, for recording sound, the input of the CD device is off.

To adjust the volume on a channel

- In the **Output** or **Input** tab, move a mixer channel slider up to increase the volume or down to decrease the volume. The sliders presented vary by the sound hardware on the computer. The **Master** slider controls the volume of your speakers and headset.

You can split a slider to adjust the volume on left and right channels independently. Right-click on the slider and enable **Split Channels**.

To change the balance between speakers

- Move the **Balance** slider at the bottom of the window in one of the following directions:
  - Right — To redistribute the volume to the right speaker
  - Center — To distribute the volume equally between speakers
  - Left — To redistribute the volume to the left speaker

Customizing Sound Mixer

You can customize Sound Mixer by displaying and hiding channels and tick marks on the sliders.

If you are recording, you can change the channel to be used as the recording source, such as a microphone. Some sound cards let you set multiple channels as the recording source.

To hide a channel

- Right-click a channel, and enable **Hide**.

To display a channel

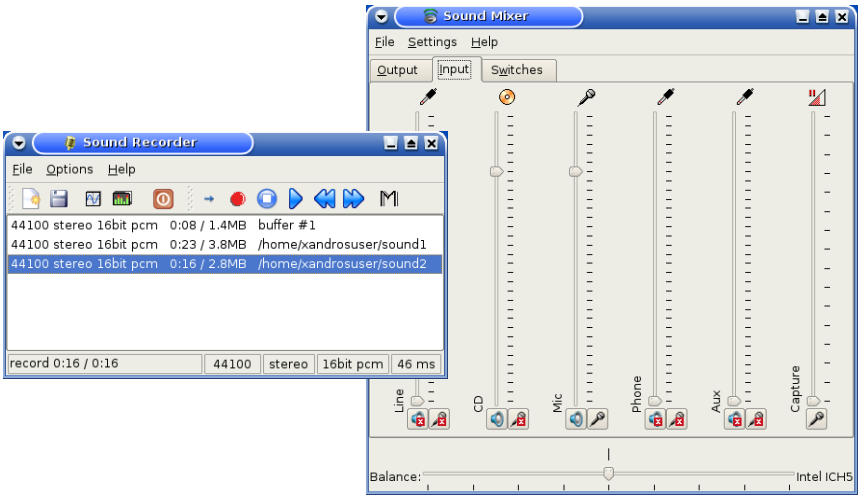
1. Right-click a channel, and select **Channels**.
2. Enable the disabled channel, and click **OK**.

To set the recording source

- In the **Input** tab, click the microphone button below a slider for the channel that you want to be the recording source. When enabled, no red x shows. Disable the other sources.

Using the Sound Recorder

The Sound Recorder lets you record sound using a microphone. The recordings are saved as .wav files. You cannot edit the file in Sound Recorder; try Audacity or Kwave.



Sound Recorder (left) with Sound Mixer defaults (right)

To record and play

1. Click **Launch ▶ Applications ▶ Multimedia ▶ Sound Mixer** and in the **Input** tab ensure that the microphone or other source is turned on (no x on the microphone) and that its volume is on (the slider is up). Your Sound Mixer window may vary from the one shown.
2. Click **Launch ▶ Applications ▶ Multimedia ▶ Sound Recorder.**
3. Click **File ▶ New file buffer**, and create a new file for the recording, adding the .wav extension. You can also press the space bar to create a new file and record.
4. Click the **Start Record** icon on the tool bar. You can also press **r** to start recording.

   You can view if sound is being input by clicking **Options ▶ Freq Spectrum** and enabling the **Log** option.
5. To stop recording, click the **Stop Record** icon on the tool bar. You can also press **Esc** to stop recording.
6. To play the file, click the **Start Playback** icon. You cannot modify the files later with Sound Recorder. You can play them in other applications, such as Media Player and RealPlayer 10.

The menu options are explained in the online help file.

Using the Video Player

You can play audio and video CDs, watch digital television, and play multimedia files on your computer using the xine Video Player. You can play some DVDs, but not encrypted files such as commercial movie DVDs. You can create playlists and mute the sound.

Video Player for DVDs, VCDs, television input, and music and video CDs

To start the Video Player

1 Click **Launch** ▶ **Applications** ▶ **Multimedia** ▶ **Video Player**. Three windows appear the first time you launch the application: the Video Player window (shown), a xine video output window, and a setup window. The xine video output window is the large window with the word "xine" in it that shows the images when a DVD or video CD is played or a graphical display when an audio CD is played.

2 To play from a CD or DVD, load the media into the appropriate drive.

3 To play media from a drive, click one of the following buttons. A CD, for example, starts playing.

- **VCDO** — Video CD
- **VCD** — Video CD for VCD, SVCD, HQVCD, CVD
- **DVD** — Unencrypted DVD
- **DVB** — Digital television input
- **CD** — Audio CD

To open a file on your computer, for example a movie, click **Open Location**, which is a button located in the middle of the round dial (■).

Navigate to and double-click the file. The file begins to play.

To stop the Video Player

- In the **Video Player** window, click the **Stop** button (■).

To hide the display

1 In the **xine video output** window, double-click the title bar.

2 To view the display, double-click the title bar again.

To create a playlist

1 In the **Video Player** window, click **Playlist**, which is a button located at the top left of the window.

2 Click the source for the playlist: **CD**, **DVB**, **DVD**, or **VCD**.

3 Click **Save**.

4 If the location shown to save the playlist is acceptable, click **Save**.

To load a playlist

1 In the **Video Player** window, click **Playlist**, which is a button located at the top left of the window.

2 Click **Load**.

3 Click the .tox playlist file to load, and click **Load**.

4 Double-click the track to play.

To mute sound

- In the **Video Player** window, click **Mute**, which is a speaker icon located near the bottom right of the window.

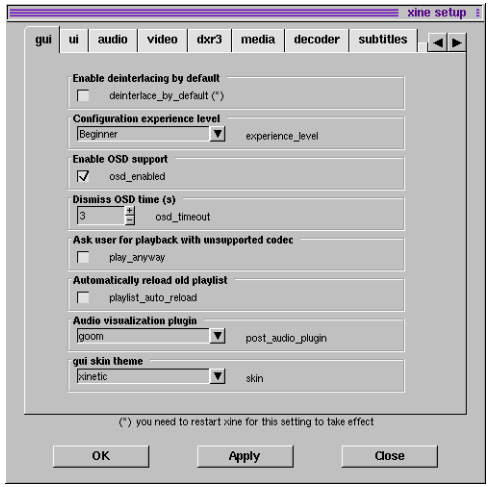
To change volume

- Use the volume icon on the Panel or the speaker lines in the application.

To configure the Video Player

1 Click **Setup window**, for which the button appears on the left side of the window.

2 In the **gui** tab, set the following options:



Video Player configuration window

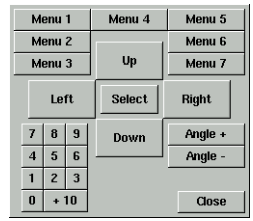
- **Configuration experience level** — Determines the contents of each tab window
- **Audio visualization plugin** — Changes the display of the **xine video output** window as a CD plays, for example
- **gui skin theme** — Changes the look of all windows in Video Player (one skin available by default)

3 Change the options in the other tabs, as set by the experience level.

4 Click **Apply**, then **OK**.

Using the Navigator

A navigation window can be opened for use when you are watching videos. A DVD can also include embedded navigation buttons, providing a second way to navigate. The **Navigator** window can be used instead of the other buttons. For example, you can use it to toggle between the main menu and the material currently playing.



Navigator for Video Player

To use the Navigator

1 Load the video media, such as a DVD.

2 In the Video Player window, click **Navigator** on the right side of the window. The **Navigator** button is the **N** button.

3 The Navigator window changes based on the current media. For example, Menu 1 in the window shown here changes to Menu toggle when a DVD is played. This button allows you to toggle between what is currently playing and the main menu. Options include:

- **Menu toggle** — Toggles window display between what is currently playing and main menu
- **Title** — Returns window display to main menu
- **Root** — Returns window display to main menu
- **Up, Down, Left, Right** — Moves the active selection up, down, left, or right in the menu
- **Select** — Plays the active selection
- **Close** — Closes the Navigator window

Additional multimedia applications

The following applications can be installed from the Applications CD and/or Xandros Networks:

Audacity — Popular sound recorder, player, and editor (available from Debian unsupported site)

Gnomad — Lets you play and transfer music to an iPod or jukebox

Kwave — Sound recorder, player, and editor (available from Debian unsupported site)

TV Time — Supports television, video game, and DVD input on your computer monitor or a projector

Check Xandros Networks for additional applications.

14 Playing games

Xandros Desktop includes the games outlined in the following table. For the Professional edition, some are installed from the Applications CD.

Application	Function
Arcade	
Asteroids	Space game where you dodge and destroy asteroids with a rocket ship; uses arrow keys
Miniature Golf	Miniature golf game; up to 10 people can play at one time; uses mouse or arrow keys
XGalaga	Space game where you dodge and destroy flying objects with a rocket ship; uses arrow keys and space bar
Board games	
Backgammon	Backgammon game; the object is to move your checkers off the board before your opponent does
Mahjongg	Tile game where you match cards laid out on five levels
Reversi	Click squares until you control the majority of squares on the board with your stones

table continued

Application	Function
Shisen-Sho	Tile game where you match cards; similar to Mahjongg but there is only one level of cards
Card games	
Solitaire	Variations of the card game solitaire; includes 15 game types and ability to choose front and back card designs
Video Poker	Video poker game for one or more players
Strategy games	
Atomic	Build chemical molecules by moving elements around a board; uses arrow keys
Minesweeper	Minesweeper game where you uncover squares while trying to avoid uncovering a mine; uses mouse

Accessing games

The games provided are categorized under the following menus: Arcade, Board, Cards, and Strategy. Additional categories are added as more games are installed, such as Action and Puzzles.

To play a game

- Click **Launch** ▶ **Applications** ▶ **Games** and select the appropriate menu and the game that you want to play.

For information on how to play the game, see the online help in the game.

Additional games, educational applications, and toys

The following applications can be installed from the Applications CD and/or Xandros Networks:

Games — More than 25 games, including Frozen Bubble, Tux Racer, Snake Race, Monopoly, Battleship, and Abalone; games are located in the **Shop** and **New Applications** sections of Xandros Networks

Educational applications — Numerous applications, including Linux information, Spanish language tools, mathematics tutors, periodic table of the elements, stars viewer, and typing tutors

Toys — More than five applications, including moon phase information, mouse odometer, and a world clock

Using accessories and utilities 15

Several accessories and utilities are included. The following table outlines the purpose of each application.

Application	Function	Page
Accessories		
Adobe Reader	Lets you view PDF files	313
DVI Viewer	Lets you view DVI files	242
Fax Viewer	Lets you view faxes	361
Font Viewer	Lets you view and install fonts	247
PostScript Viewer	Lets you view PostScript and PDF files	243
Address Book	Lets you store contact information, such as name, e-mail addresses, street addresses, and phone numbers	314
Calculator	Allows you to perform simple, trigonometric, and statistical calculations	318
Character Selector	Provides special characters and symbols for use in text and graphics applications	320

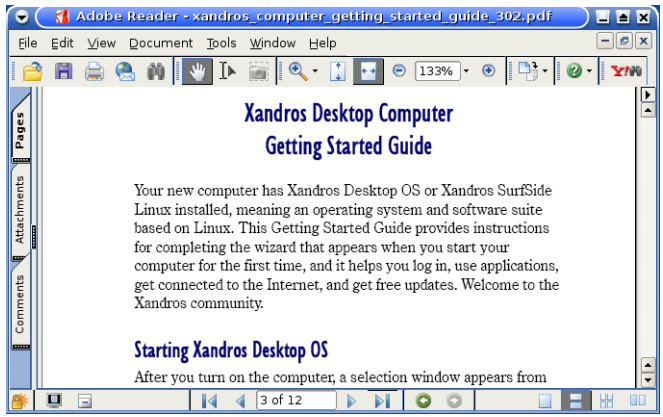
table continued

Application	Function	Page
Organizer	Provides a calendar, scheduler, meeting arranger, to-do-list, and journal	321
Personal Information Manager	Provides e-mail, address book, and scheduling functions	214
Personal Time Tracker	Lets you track use of your time	325
Popup Notes	Lets you post notes on the desktop, such as reminders	328
Print a Fax	Lets you send faxes	361
Print Jobs	Lets you monitor the print queue and cancel print jobs	360
Text Editor	Lets you write and edit ASCII text files	236
Utilities		
Cut and Paste Utility	Stores clipboard history, which lets you easily copy previous entries	331
Desktop Pager	Displays a snapshot of all virtual desktops, providing convenient access	46
Floppy Disk Formatter	Lets you format and erase floppy disks	332
Online Dictionary	Lets you look up definitions of words using several online dictionaries	333
Palm Document Converter	Lets you port documents to and from your Palm Pilot	334
Palm Pilot Tool	Provides an interface between your computer and a Palm Pilot	335
Reminder Message Scheduler	Lets you set up personal alarm/reminder messages	340
Task Scheduler	Lets you schedule applications to run	342

Using Adobe Reader to view PDF files

You can read Portable Document Format (PDF) files with the Adobe Reader.

You can also generate PDF files in several applications. See “Printing files” on page 353.


Adobe Reader - xandros_computer_getting_started_guide_302.pdf
File Edit View Document Tools Window Help
133%
Pages
Attachments
Comments
Xandros Desktop Computer
Getting Started Guide
Your new computer has Xandros Desktop OS or Xandros SurfSide Linux installed, meaning an operating system and software suite based on Linux. This Getting Started Guide provides instructions for completing the wizard that appears when you start your computer for the first time, and it helps you log in, use applications, get connected to the Internet, and get free updates. Welcome to the Xandros community.
Starting Xandros Desktop OS
After you turn on the computer, a selection window appears from
3 of 12

Viewing a PDF file in Adobe Reader

To open a PDF file

1 Click **Launch** ▶ **Applications** ▶ **Accessories** ▶ **Viewers** ▶ **Adobe Reader**. If it does not appear in the menu, install it from the Applications CD or Xandros Networks.

2 Click **File** ▶ **Open**, select the file to open, and click **Open**.

To search in a PDF file

1 Click **Edit** ▶ **Find**.

2 Type the text to search for and click **Find**.

3 To find the next entry, click **Next** or press **Enter**.

Viewing DVI files

Device independent (DVI) files are viewed with the DVI Viewer. See “Viewing DVI files” on page 242.

Viewing faxes

Faxes are viewed using the Fax Viewer. See “Viewing and sending faxes” on page 361.

Viewing fonts

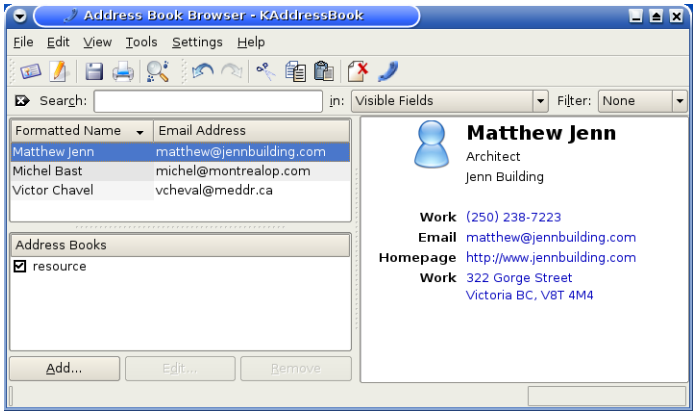
See “Installing fonts” on page 246.

Viewing PDF and PostScript files

The PostScript Viewer lets you preview documents prepared using the PostScript page description language, including .ps and .pdf files. See “Working with PostScript Viewer” on page 243.

Using the Address Book

The Address Book lets you store contact information, such as names, e-mail addresses, street addresses, Web site addresses, phone numbers, and birthdays. It is integrated with the Personal Information Manager, Organizer, Send to Fax, and KDE Mail (KMail), meaning contact entries you add in Address Book are accessible in the other applications. You can also import from an existing Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) server. You can easily send e-mails. You can customize the display of the main window. You can easily search for an entry using part of a name. You can sort the entries and import and export address books.



Address Book

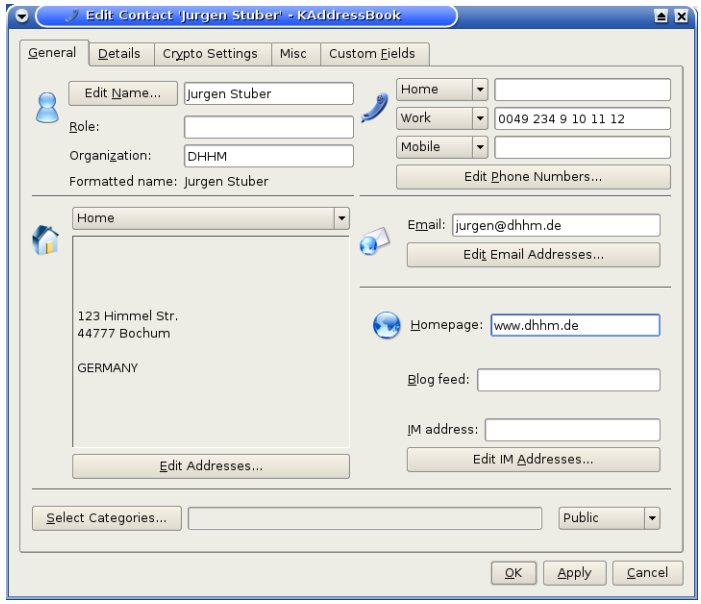
You can synchronize Address Book with a Palm Pilot or similar hand-held device. See “Using a Palm Pilot or hand-held device” on page 335. If you do not use the Personal Information Manager, which displays birthdays set here, you can set reminders for birthdays. See “Using the Reminder Message Scheduler” on page 340.

To start Address Book

- Click **Launch ▶ Applications ▶ Accessories ▶ Address Book**.

To create an address book entry

1 Click **File ▶ New Contact**.



Adding an entry to the Address Book

2 Complete the **Edit Contact** window that appears. Note that you can add detailed information by clicking on certain boxes, such as **Edit Addresses**. The contacts are listed alphabetically by first name; to instead have the name listed alphabetically by last name, click **Edit Name** and select **Reverse Name with Comma** from the drop-down list.

3 Click the **Details** tab, and complete relevant information, such as department, assistant's name, birthdate (not birth day), and nick name.

4 Click **OK**.

You can also click the **New Contact** button on the tool bar to add an entry.

To import contacts from an LDAP server

1 In the main window, click **Add** at the bottom left.

2 Enter the following information:

Name — A name for the LDAP server, for example Xandros LDAP

Host — The name of the LDAP server, for example smtp2

DN — LDAP server hierarchy fields. For example "ou=people, o=xandros" Options for the ou entry are people, groups, and computers.

3 Click **OK** to exit from the window. The entries load automatically on the left side of the window. If not, delete the LDAP server entry and try again.

To choose window content

1 Click **View** ▶ **Modify View**. This modifies the content on the left side of the window.

2 Select an entry from the left column that you want to appear in the window, and click the right arrow button.

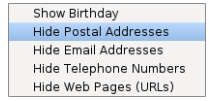
3 Click the entry in the right column, and click the up or down arrow to select column placement.

4 To remove an entry, select it from the list on the right side, and click the left arrow button.

5 Click **OK** to exit from the window.

6 In the main window, expand the window and/or resize the columns to view the additional columns.

7 To change the information displayed on the right side of the window, right-click in that area and select the appropriate option.



To change an address book entry

- Double-click the entry that you want to change.

You can also click the **Edit Contact** button on the tool bar.

To delete an address book entry

1 Select the entry that you want to delete.

2 Click **Edit** ▶ **Delete Contact**, and confirm the deletion

You can also click the **Delete Contact** button on the tool bar.

To find an address book entry

- In the **Search** box, type part of the name that you want to find. For example, when you type `John` , the first record with that name is automatically highlighted. Note the ability to search in select fields using the drop-down lists.

To sort address book entries

- Click the column heading on which you want to base the sort.

To save an address book

- Click **File ▶ Save**. (Address Books are saved automatically without saving.)

To import an address book

- Click **File ▶ Import** and select the type of address book to import. (At this time, importing an LDIF address book does not work.)

To export an address book

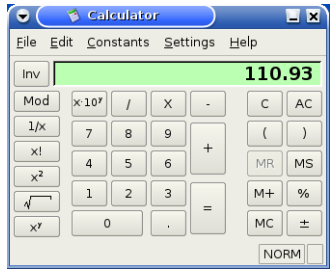
- Click **File ▶ Export** and select the type of address book to export. For use in Thunderbird Mail, use the LDIF format.

To send e-mail to a contact

1. Select the contact from the list.
2. Click the e-mail address at the right side of the window. The default e-mail application is launched, for example KDE Mail.

Using the Calculator

The Calculator lets you perform simple, trigonometric, statistical, and other calculations. You can specify the number of decimal places. By default, the number of decimal places used is the number that you use. You can change the colors and fonts used. Numbers frequently used can be programmed as constants (shown here as C buttons).



Calculator in default mode

To perform a simple calculation

1. Click **Launch** ▶ **Applications** ▶ **Accessories** ▶ **Calculator**.
2. Click or type the first number, for example click the 5 button and the 3 button.
3. Click one of the following operators:
   - Plus (+) to add
   - Minus (-) to subtract
   - Forward slash (/) to divide
   - **X** to multiply
4. Click or type the next number in the calculation.
5. Click the equal sign (=) to get the answer.

Clear the numbers in the calculator window by clicking **C** for clear or **AC** for clear all.

To set calculation mode

1. Click **Settings** and select the mode. The calculator window changes with each mode.
2. Deselect the other modes.

See the online help file for a description of the buttons.

To set the number of decimal places

1 Click **Settings** ▶ **Configure KCalc**.
2 Click the **General** icon.
3 Enable the **Set decimal precision** check box.
4 Specify the number of decimal places.
5 Click **OK** to exit from the configuration window.

When you disable the **Set decimal precision** check box, the number of decimal places becomes the number that you type.

The maximum number of decimal places is 10.

To change colors

1 Click **Settings** ▶ **Configure KCalc**.
2 Click the **Colors** icon.
3 Click one of the following colored boxes:
   - **Foreground**
   - **Background**
   - **Button Colors** (various)
4 Select a color for the selection, and click **OK**. If the color does not change, be sure to move the arrow in the **Select Color** window to another color.
5 Click **OK** to exit from the configuration window.

To change the font

1 Click **Settings** ▶ **Configure KCalc**.
2 Click the **Font** icon.
3 Select a font from the **Font** list box.
4 Select a font style from the **Font style** list box.
5 Select a font size from the **Size** list box.
6 Click **OK**. The font in the display window changes, not on the buttons.

To define frequently used numbers as constants

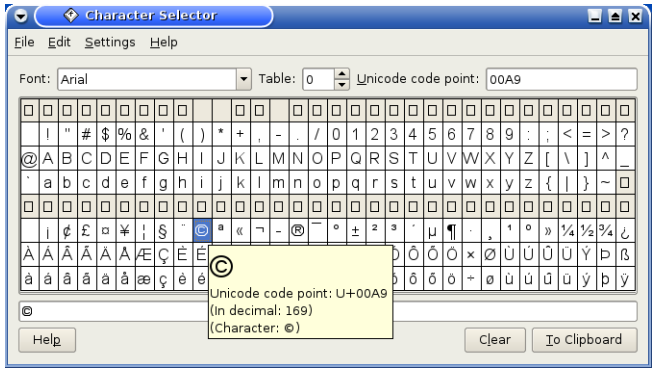
1 Click **Settings** and enable the **Constant Buttons** option.
2 Click **Settings** ▶ **Configure KCalc**.
3 Click the **Constants** icon.
4 Type a number in the box to the right of applicable button. Note that you can change the names of the buttons too and select a value from the **Predefined** drop-down list.

5 Click **OK**. The column of constant buttons appears in the calculator window. If you click the **Defaults** button in any of the panels, the constants are reset too.

6 In the calculator window, click the constant button to evoke the number saved.

Using special characters and symbols

The Character Selector provides special characters and symbols for use in text and graphics applications. The characters include accents, copyright, trademark, and mathematical symbols.



Character Selector

To use special characters and symbols

1 Open the application in which you want to paste a special character or symbol, such as the Text Editor.

2 Click **Launch** ▶ **Applications** ▶ **Accessories** ▶ **Character Selector**.

3 Select a character set from the **Font** drop-down list. You can add to this list by installing more fonts with the **Font Viewer** or the **Font Installer** panel in the Control Center (relaunch the Character Selector afterwards).

4 Select a character set from the **Table** list.

5 Click the required special character or symbol.

6 Click **To Clipboard**.

7 In the application in which you want to paste the special character or symbol, click the cursor where you want the character, and click **Edit** ▶ **Paste**. If you are using OpenOffice.org, the font in use in OpenOffice.org needs to coincide with the font type being pasted in, for example set the font to Dingbats if you are pasting in a Dingbats character.

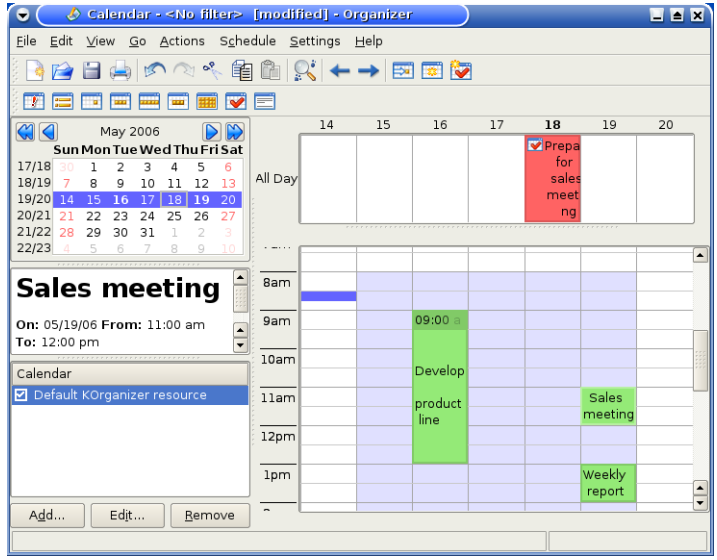
   The application does not work for all special characters and symbols, for example pasting Dingbats into the Text Editor. If the special character does

not paste into the document try inserting it within the document, for example with **Insert ▶ Special Character** in OpenOffice.org Writer.

8 To obtain a second special character, in the **Character Selector** window, click **Clear** and repeat steps 3 to 7.

Using the Organizer / scheduler

The Organizer provides a calendar, scheduler, meeting arranger, to-do list, and journal. You can view your schedule by day, next three days, work week, full week, or by the month. If you use KMail (KDE Mail) or Sendmail for e-mail, you can invite others to attend meetings. You can have more than one schedule, list, and so on by saving the files, which can also be exported to a Web page or other calendars. The application is integrated with the Address Book, making it easy to invite contacts to meetings.



Organizer

You can synchronize Organizer with a Palm Pilot or similar hand-held device, for example your to-do list. See “Using a Palm Pilot or hand-held device” on page 335.

A plug-in can be used to add compatibility with Microsoft Exchange 2000 that allows access to your calendar on a Microsoft Exchange Server. You need to have an account on that server. You cannot use the server to see the free/busy times of contacts when scheduling a meeting (use Evolution instead).

Using Organizer

To start Organizer

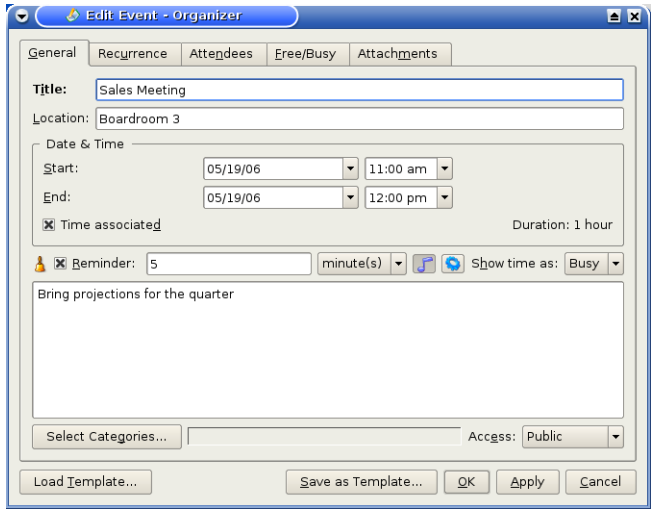
- Click **Launch** ▶ **Applications** ▶ **Accessories** ▶ **Organizer**.

To set view

- Click **View** and choose one of the following options:
  - **List** — Displays scheduled events instead of a calendar
  - **Day** — Displays a schedule for a single day
  - **Work Week** — Displays a Monday-to-Friday schedule
  - **Week** — Displays a Sunday-to-Saturday schedule (default)
  - **Next 3 Days** — Displays a schedule for the next three days, regardless of weekday or weekend
  - **Month** — Displays a schedule for a full month
  - **To-Do List** — Displays a task list only
  - **Journal** — Lets you type free-form, by day

Using the scheduler

You can create, edit, and delete appointments. You can set recurring events, and invite others using e-mail to attend an event. You can set an alarm to remind you of an appointment.



Adding an appointment to Organizer

To set an appointment

1. Click **Actions ▶ New Event**.
2. Complete the information for the appointment. You can set the appointment as a one-time or recurring event. You can set an alarm notification, for example a pop-up window five minutes before the event.
3. To set the event as a recurring one, click the **Recurrence** tab and set the interval.
4. To invite another person to the meeting, click the **Attendees** tab, click **Select Addressee** (to easily access e-mail addresses in the Address Book) or **New** and complete the form. The **Request response** option does not work at this time; attendees are notified of the meeting only.
5. When finished, click **OK** to exit from the configuration window.
6. To send the notification to the invited persons, select the event in the calendar, click **Schedule ▶ Publish**. Attendees are notified by e-mail, provided that your KDE Mail has been configured.

To change an appointment

1. Double-click the appointment in the schedule.
2. Change the appointment information as outlined in the previous procedure.

To delete an appointment

1. Click the appointment in the schedule.
2. Click **Actions ▶ Delete Event**. If the appointment is a recurring one, you are prompted to determine if you want to delete the current event or all of them.

You can also delete an appointment by right-clicking on the appointment and selecting **Delete**.

To save your schedule

- Click **File ▶ Save**. (Schedules are saved as .ics files without manually saving them.)

Using the to-do list

You can make a list of tasks you need to complete, set priority level, percent completed, deadlines, and reminder alarms.

To create a to-do list task

1. Click **Actions ▶ New To-do**.
2. Complete the information for the task.
3. Click **OK** to exit from the window.

To edit a to-do list task

1 Double-click the task in the list.
2 Edit the information for the task.
3 Click **OK** to exit from the window.

To mark a task as complete

- Enable the check box for the task in the list. This action sets the percentage to 100% complete.

To delete a to-do list task

1 Click the task in the list.
2 Click **Actions** ▶ **Delete To-do**.
3 Confirm the deletion.

You can also delete a task by right-clicking the task name and selecting **Delete**.

Using the journal

You can keep notes in a daily journal.

To use the journal

1 Click **View** ▶ **Journal**.
2 Click a date for the journal.
3 Click inside the main box and type your entry.

Configuring Organizer for Microsoft Exchange 2000

You can upload and download appointments from a Microsoft Exchange Server.

To configure and use the Microsoft Exchange 2000 plug-in

1 Click **Settings** ▶ **Configure Organizer**.
2 Click the **Plugins** icon.
3 Enable the **Microsoft Exchange 2000 Plugin for KOrganizer** check box.
4 Click **OK** to exit from the configuration window.
5 Click **Exchange** ▶ **Configure**.
6 Type the IP address or domain name of the server in the **Exchange server** box, for example the mail server name.
7 Type your Microsoft Exchange Server account information in the **User** and **Password** boxes.
8 Click **OK** to exit from the configuration window.

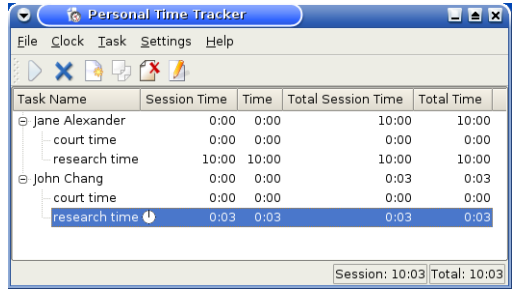
9 To download appointments from the server, click **Exchange ▶ Download**, set the time period for which you want information and click **OK**. Appointments appear in Organizer. You can also upload events by selecting the event and clicking **Exchange ▶ Upload Event**.

Using the Personal Information Manager

This application provides e-mail, address book, and scheduling functions and is integrated with Organizer, for example. See "Using the Personal Information Manager" on page 214.

Tracking personal time

The Personal Time Tracker allows you to track use of your time. It is a handy tool for professionals who need to bill clients by time or task. You can start and stop tracking, track multiple tasks simultaneously, edit time tracked, and save the files as text. You can set up multiple tasks and multiple sub-tasks. By default, the system stops tracking when an idle period of 15 minutes is detected.



Personal Time Tracker with two tasks and four sub-tasks

To launch the Personal Time Tracker

- Click **Launch ▶ Applications ▶ Accessories ▶ Personal Time Tracker**. If a message appears that another program is currently using the file, it means that you need to access the application from the Panel. Only one file is allowed, meaning you cannot create a file for Jane Alexander and John Chang and another file for other people.

To create a task for tracking

1 Click **Task ▶ New**.

2 Type a name for the task in the **Task name** box. If you intend to create sub-tasks, type a category name first. In the example shown, the task is the client's name, Jane Alexander.

3 Click **OK** to exit from the window.

You can also create a task by clicking the **Create new top level task** button on the tool bar.

To create a sub-task for tracking

1 Click the task for which you want to create a sub-task.

2 Click **Task ▶ New Subtask**.

3 Type a name for the sub-task to be tracked in the **Task name** box.

4 Click **OK** to exit from the window.

You can also create a sub-task by clicking the **New Subtask** button on the tool bar.

To track time

1 Click the task or sub-task for which you want to track time.

2 Click **Clock ▶ Start**. A clock appears to indicate tracking.

3 To stop tracking the time, click **Clock ▶ Stop**.

You can also start and stop tracking by clicking the buttons on the tool bar. You can track multiple tasks simultaneously.

The tracked tasks do not need to be saved. When you exit from the Personal Time Tracker then use it later, the previous tasks and times appear.

To edit task time

1 Select the task or sub-task that you want to change.

2 Click **Task ▶ Edit**.

3 To specify the time to use, enable the **Edit absolute** option and specify it. To add or subtract time, enable the **Edit relative** option, select + or - from the drop-down list, and specify the hours or minutes to add or subtract.

4 Click **OK** to exit from the window.

You can also reset time using **File ▶ Reset All Times**.

You can also edit a task by clicking the **Edit name or times for selected task** button on the tool bar.

To specify the columns to display

1 Click **Settings** ▶ **Configure KArm**.
2 Click the **Display** icon.
3 Enable or disable the columns to display.
4 Click **OK** to exit from the configuration window.

To change default idle time

1 Click **Settings** ▶ **Configure KArm**.
2 Click the **Behavior** icon.
3 With the **Detect desktop as idle after** check box enabled, set the time in the box.
4 Click **OK**. The change takes effect immediately. If you leave your computer idle for the period specified, for example 15 minutes, the time accumulated is not saved.

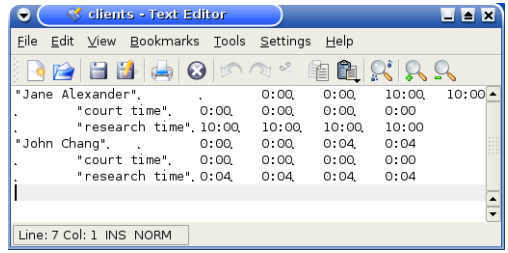
To delete a task

1 Click the task or sub-task that you want to delete.
2 Click **Task** ▶ **Delete**, and confirm the deletion.

You can also delete a task by clicking the **Delete selected task** button on the tool bar.

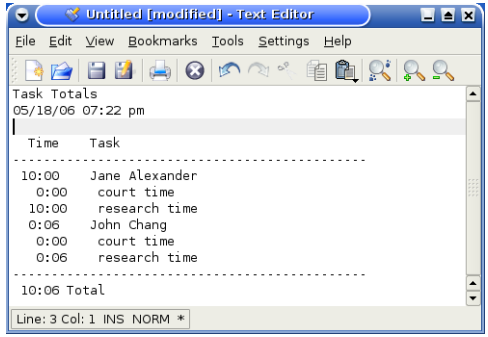
To save times to a text file

1 Click **File** ▶ **Import/Export** ▶ **Export to CSV File**.
2 Click the **Open file dialog** button on the right side of the window, select the folder to save to, type a file name, and click **OK**.
3 Enable the **Hours:Minutes** option.
4 Enable the **Tab** option.
5 Click **Export**.
6 Open the file, for example in Text Editor.


clients - Text Editor
File Edit View Bookmarks Tools Settings Help
"Jane Alexander", , 0:00, 0:00, 10:00, 10:00
, "court time", 0:00, 0:00, 0:00, 0:00
, "research time", 10:00, 10:00, 10:00, 10:00
"John Chang", , 0:00, 0:00, 0:04, 0:04
, "court time", 0:00, 0:00, 0:00, 0:00
, "research time", 0:04, 0:04, 0:04, 0:04
Line: 7 Col: 1 INS NORM

Tracked times exported and viewed in the Text Editor

You can also copy the total times to the clipboard and paste them elsewhere, for example into Text Editor. Select a top-level entry. Click **File ▶ Copy Totals to Clipboard**, click **Copy All Tasks** in the pop-up window, then paste them in Text Editor.



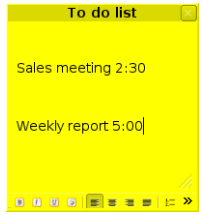
Tracked times copied and pasted from the clipboard into Text Editor

Using Popup Notes

Popup Notes are desktop notes, such as reminders.

You can edit, save, delete, print, and customize notes. For example, you can make urgent notes red and set them to remain on top of all open windows and even to appear on all virtual desktops.

The application is integrated with the Palm Pilot Tool; you can upload memos from a Palm Pilot device. See “Using Popup Notes” on page 328.



Popup Note with format menu displayed at bottom

To create a note

1 Click **Launch ▶ Applications ▶ Accessories ▶ Popup Notes.** A note appears on the desktop.

2 Type your note.

3 To name the note, double-click the title bar, type the name, and click **OK**.

You can also create a note by right-clicking the icon on the Panel and selecting **New Note**.

To save and close a note

- Click **Close** (×). The note remains accessible from the Panel.

To open a note

- Click the **Popup Notes** icon on the Panel and select the note you want to open.

To exit from Popup Notes

- Right-click the **Popup Notes** icon on the Panel and select **Quit**. Popup Notes are not deleted when you exit the application.

To rename a note

1. Right-click the title bar of a note and select **Rename**.
2. Type a new name for the note, and click **OK**.

To copy, cut, or paste text

1. Select the text.
2. Right-click and select the appropriate option.

To change text or background color of a note

1. Right-click the title bar of a note and select **Preferences**.
2. Click the **Display** icon.
3. Click the color box of one of the following:
   - **Text color** — Lets you select a color for the text in notes
   - **Background color** — Lets you select a background color for notes
4. Select a color and click **OK** to exit from the color selection window. If the color does not change, be sure to move the arrow in the Select Color window to another color.
5. Click **OK** to exit from the configuration window.

To select a font for a note

1. Right-click the title bar of a note and select **Preferences**.
2. Click the **Editor** icon.
3. Click the **Choose** button for **Title font** or **Text font**.
4. Select a new font setting for the note, and click **OK** to set the font.
5. Click **OK** to exit from configuration window.

To display a format menu at the bottom of a note

1. Right-click the title bar of a note and select **Preferences**.
2. Click the **Editor** icon.
3. Enable the **Rich text** check box.
4. Click **OK** to exit from the configuration window.
5. Click the note to view the format menu at the bottom of the note.

To insert the date into a note

1. Place your cursor where you want the date to appear in the note.
2. Right-click the title bar of the note and select **Insert Date**.

To move a note to a single virtual desktop

- Right-click the title bar of a note, select **To Desktop**, and select the name of the desktop.

To move a note to all virtual desktops

- Right-click the title bar of a note, select **To Desktop**, and select **All Desktops**.

To keep a note on top of all windows

- Right-click the title bar of a note and select **Keep Above Others**.

To print a note

- Right-click the title bar of an active note, select **Print**, select the printer from the drop-down list, and click **Print**. You can send it to a printer, print as a PDF file, print as a PostScript file, and send it as a fax.

To delete a note

1. Right-click the title bar of a note and select **Delete**.
2. Confirm the deletion.

Sending faxes

The Print a Fax accessory can be used to send a fax. See “Viewing and sending faxes” on page 361.

Managing print jobs

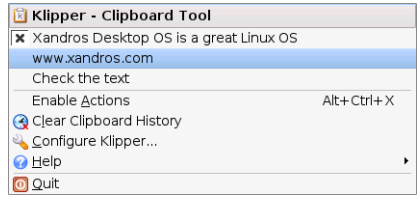
The Print Jobs accessory can be used to monitor and manage print jobs. See “Managing print jobs” on page 360.

Creating text files

The Text Editor lets you create text and HTML files. See “Using the Text Editor” on page 236.

Using the clipboard

The Cut and Paste Utility displays clipboard history, which lets you easily retrieve previous cut-and-paste content.



Cut and Paste utility with three entries shown

To access previous cut and paste text

1. Click **Launch ▶ Applications ▶ Utilities ▶ Cut and Paste Utility**. The clipboard tool icon appears on the Panel.
2. Click the icon on the Panel and select the item that you want to copy. You can only select an item when content has previously been copied.
3. In the target application, place the cursor where the text is to go.
4. Right-click and select **Paste**.

To exit the utility

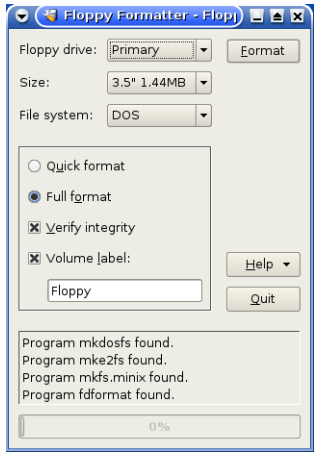
- Click its icon on the Panel and select **Quit**.

Using the Desktop Pager

The Panel shows the virtual desktops available and lets you switch among them. In addition, a Desktop Pager utility can be used to display a snapshot of all virtual desktops so that you have a visual display of what is open on each. You can then easily switch among desktops and easily drag and drop applications from one desktop to another. See “Viewing and switching among virtual desktops” on page 46.

Using the Floppy Disk Formatter

A floppy disk must be formatted so that a computer can read it and allow access to its contents. If your computer has a 3.5” or 5.25” disk drive, Floppy Disk Formatter lets you format, erase, and name a floppy disk.



Floppy Disk Formatter

To format a floppy disk

1. Insert a floppy disk into the floppy disk drive.
2. Click **Launch ▶ Applications ▶ Utilities ▶ Floppy Disk Formatter.**
3. If you have more than one floppy drive, select it from the **Floppy drive** drop-down list.
4. Select the **Size** from the drop-down list. (This size is often shown on the floppy disk.)
5. Select a file system from the **File system** drop-down list:
   - **DOS** — Associated with Windows, but selecting this option allows you to use the disk with Windows and Linux computers
   - **ext2** — Formatting for Linux, but the disk cannot be used with a Windows computer
   - **Minix** — Sometimes used for creating boot disks or storing data
6. Leave the **Full format** option enabled. (The **Quick format** option does not work at this time.)
7. Disable the **Verify integrity** check box.
8. If you want to name the disk, with the **Volume label** check box enabled, type a name. The name can be up to 11 characters long.
9. Click **Format**, and confirm the action.

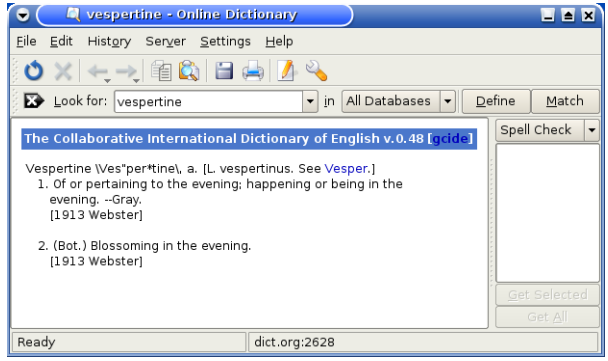
All data on the disk is erased when the disk is formatted.

You can also access the Floppy Disk Formatter in Xandros File Manager by right-clicking the **Floppy** icon in the left panel and selecting **Format**.

Using the Online Dictionary

There are two ways to access the Online Dictionary: as a stand-alone application and from the Panel. For information on using the Panel option, see "Using applets" on page 40.

When using the Online Dictionary, you type in a word or phrase, and several definitions are provided when available. Use of the dictionary requires an Internet connection.



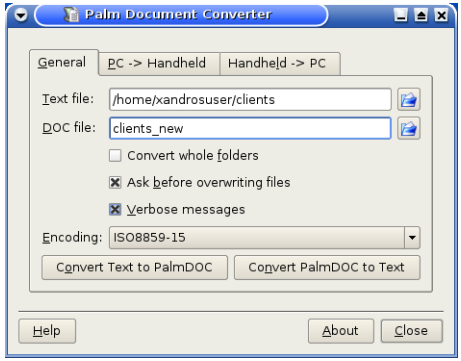
Online Dictionary showing entry retrieved over the Internet

To use the dictionary

1. Click **Launch** ▶ **Applications** ▶ **Utilities** ▶ **Online Dictionary**.
2. Type the word or phrase that you want to look up in the **Look for** box, and press **Enter**. Alternatively, you can click **Define** or **Match** to access information.

Converting Palm Pilot documents

With the Palm Document Converter, files can be converted when using a Palm Pilot or hand-held device, for example so that you can swap files between a desktop computer and the device. You can convert a text file to a PalmDoc, and you can convert a PalmDoc to a text file. The application converts any file, but the output may or may not be useable.



Palm Document Converter

To convert text documents for Palm Pilot use

1. Click **Launch ▶ Applications ▶ Utilities ▶ Palm Document Converter.**
2. To the right of the **Text file** box, click the **Open file dialog** button and select the document to convert.
3. Type a name for the new file in the **DOC file** box.
4. Click **Convert Text to PalmDOC**. The document is converted to the .pdb format and a confirmation message displayed.

To convert Palm Pilot documents to text documents

1. Click **Launch ▶ Applications ▶ Utilities ▶ Palm Document Converter.**
2. To the right of the **DOC file** box, click the **Open file dialog** button and select the .pdb document to convert.
3. Type a name for the new file in the **Text file** box. No extension is added, for example .txt, unless you add it.
4. Click **Convert PalmDOC to Text**. The document is converted and a confirmation message displayed.

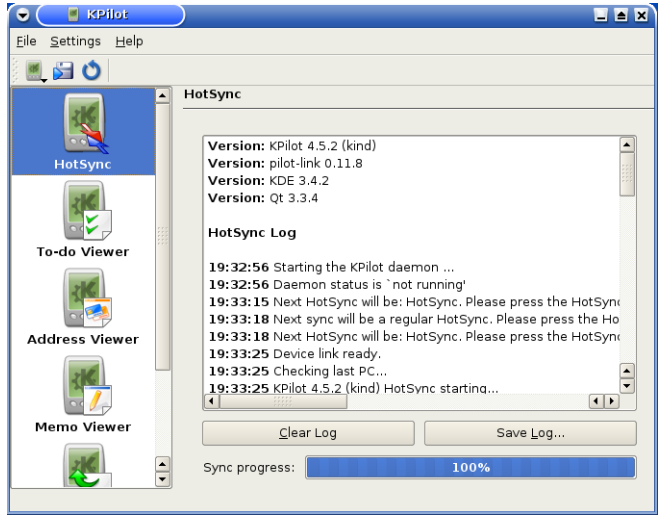
Using a Palm Pilot or hand-held device

You can use a Palm Pilot or similar hand-held device that has a Palm-compatible operating system. You can synchronize information between your computer and the device for some applications, including the address book and e-mail. You can view memos from your device within the Palm Pilot Tool and import them from the computer to your device. You can view address book contact information too. You can transfer and install files onto your device.

Serial and USB interfaces are supported for connection. When using the USB interface, devices supported include the following:

- Handspring TREO
- Handspring Visor
- Palm M series
- Palm I705
- Palm TUNGSTEN
- Palm Zire
- Sony CLIÉ
- Samsung SCH I300
- Garmin iQue 3600

The Palm Pilot Tool needs to be configured before first use with your device.



Palm Pilot Tool

To configure access to your Palm Pilot

1 Click **Launch** ▶ **Applications** ▶ **Utilities** ▶ **Palm Pilot Tool**. When accessed for the first time, you are given the option to use the configuration wizard or to go to the Palm Pilot tool. Select the wizard option. You can also access the wizard in the Palm Pilot Tool by selecting **Settings** ▶ **Configuration Wizard**.

2 With the Palm Pilot connected to the computer and turned on, in the wizard click **Automatically Detect Handheld & User Name**. You are prompted to press the **HotSync** button on the device for this purpose, so click that button then click **Continue** in Xandros. If the handheld device cannot be detected, enter the information manually as follows:

- **User name** — Type your user name. It should match the name on the Palm Pilot. You will be prompted to make a choice when synchronizing if the user names for the computer and the Palm Pilot do not match.
- **Device** — The default path is **/dev/pilot**. When your device is not detected automatically, try **/dev/ttys0** and **/dev/ttys1** for a serial interface and **/dev/ttyUSB0** and **/dev/ttyUSB1** for USB.

Click **Next** to continue in the wizard.

3 In the second wizard window, set the synchronization option:

- **KDE-PIM suite** — For use with Xandros Desktop when you use the Personal Information Manager
- **GNOME-PIM (Evolution)** — For use with Xandros Desktop when you use Evolution; the address book cannot be synchronized with this option
- **No sync, just backup** — If you do not intend to synchronize your handheld device with your computer

Click **Finish** to complete the setup wizard. The main window of the Palm Pilot Tool appears.

4 Check the default values by clicking **Settings** ▶ **Configure KPilot**. Some of the options are:

- **Speed** — Speed of the connection to the device; use 9600 for old models and otherwise try to use the maximum speed possible. If you select a speed that is too fast, the connection will not work. This option appears in the **Device** panel.
- **FastSync** — To use the fastest synchronization possible; FastSync synchronizes only those databases that have conduits. This option appears in the **HotSync** panel.
- **Do full backup when changing PCs** — Disable this option when you have more than one computer and you synchronize your device with each of them. This option appears in the **HotSync** panel.

- **Show KPilot in system tray** — To show a HotSync icon on the Panel when the utility is open; enabled by default. This option appears in the **Startup and Exit** panel.
- **Stop KPilot's system tray application on exit** — To exit the utility when you quit the Palm Pilot Tool, leaving the serial or USB port free; enabled by default. This option appears in the **Startup and Exit** panel.

Click **OK** to exit from the configuration window.

To configure conduits for synchronization

1. Click **Settings ▶ Configure KPilot**.
2. From the **Conduits** list, enable the check box of the function that you want to have synchronized between your device and your computer. The options include:
   - **KNotes / Memos** — To transfer Popup Notes to the hand-held device, where they may appear as Memo Pad items instead of Note Pad items
   - **Time Synchronization** — To synchronize the clock on the device with the computer
   - **Calendar (KOrganizer)** — To synchronize with the Organizer
   - **Palm DOC** — To use the Palm Document Converter (previous section)
   - **Addressbook** — To synchronize with the Address Book; does not work with Evolution so leave disabled when you use Evolution
   - **ToDos (KOrganizer)** — To synchronize with the to-do list of the Organizer
3. Similarly, to discontinue synchronization for a conduit, disable its check box.
4. Click **OK** to exit from the configuration window.

To synchronize with your Palm Pilot

1. Connect the device to the computer and turn it on.
2. If you are using Evolution, close it.
3. Click **File ▶ HotSync**, or click the **HotSync** icon. The computer and device will be updated. When instead you want to update the computer or device only, select **File ▶ Copy Handheld to PC** or **Copy PC to Handheld**.
4. Press the HotSync button on your device. When synchronization is successful, the Palm Pilot Tool displays a "HotSync Completed" message, and the device also indicates that the HotSync operation is complete.

   If the user names used on the Palm Pilot and computer do not match, you are prompted to indicate which one to use.

   When a synchronization occurs, for example address book entries, the data is merged and the most recent entries are used for both the Palm Pilot and the computer. For example, you can launch the Address Book, Organizer,

and Personal Information Manager to verify that contact information was transferred to the computer.

5 If there is a problem, ensure that Xandros Desktop is configured properly for your device (previous sections).

The easiest way to synchronize is to do so from the device.

Performance is inconsistent. Even with correct configuration, only some functions may not be synchronized. For example contacts in your address books may not be transferred, and Popup Notes will only be transferred from the device.

To back up your Palm Pilot

1 Connect the device to the computer and turn it on.

2 Click **Launch** ▶ **Applications** ▶ **Utilities** ▶ **Palm Pilot Tool**.

3 Click **File** ▶ **Backup**.

4 Press the HotSync button on your device. During the backup, progress is displayed in both the Palm Pilot Tool window and on the device. When backup is successful, the Palm Pilot Tool displays a "HotSync Completed" message, and the device also indicates that the HotSync operation is complete. The files are backed up to **/home/username/.kde/share/apps/kpilot/DBBackup/palmusername**, where username is the user account on the computer and palmusername is the name used on the device.

5 You can restore the files to the device using **File** ▶ **Restore**.

To access memos from your Palm Pilot

1 Connect the device to the computer.

2 Click **Launch** ▶ **Applications** ▶ **Utilities** ▶ **Palm Pilot Tool**.

3 Perform a synchronization. If you had Popup Notes open on the Panel, any new memos will automatically appear on the desktop.

4 Click the **Memo Viewer** icon. The memos, if any, are displayed in a list.

Do not add, modify, or delete entries in this window because the information will not be transferred to the device or computer.

If you cannot access memos using this procedure, check that the conduit is enabled. Click **Settings** ▶ **Configure KPilot**. You may not be able to transfer a memo from your computer to the device.

To access addresses from your Palm Pilot

1. Connect the device to the computer.
2. Click **Launch** ▶ **Applications** ▶ **Utilities** ▶ **Palm Pilot Tool**.
3. Perform a synchronization.
4. Click the **Address Viewer** icon. Any addresses are displayed in a list, for example those that were programmed into the device by the manufacturer. You may have to go to the Address Book or Personal Information Manager to view mailing addresses on the computer.

   Do not add, modify, or delete entries in this window because the information will not be transferred to the device or computer.

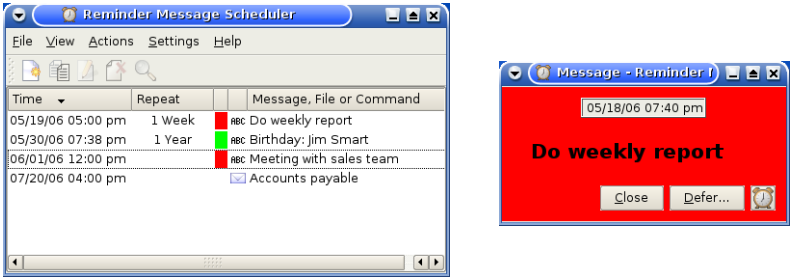
If you cannot access addresses using this procedure, check that the conduit is enabled. Click **Settings** ▶ **Configure KPilot**.

To install files onto your Palm Pilot

1. Connect the device to the computer.
2. Click **Launch** ▶ **Applications** ▶ **Utilities** ▶ **Palm Pilot Tool**.
3. Click the **File Installer** icon.
4. Click **Add File**, and select the file to install. It must be in the .pdb or .prc format.
5. Perform a synchronization. The files are transferred, but you may or may not have an application with which to access them.

Using the Reminder Message Scheduler

You can set reminder alarms for events. At the time of the reminder, a popup window appears, with or without sound. Events can be one-time or recurring, and you can change the appearance of the reminder. You can import birthdays from the Address Book. You can schedule commands to run, for example to launch an application, at a specified time. You can type an e-mail message and be prompted at a specified time to send it.



Reminder Message Scheduler with task, meeting, e-mail scheduled, and birthday reminder

To set an alarm

1. Click **Launch** ▶ **Applications** ▶ **Utilities** ▶ **Reminder Message Scheduler**.
2. Click **Actions** ▶ **New**.
3. Type the reminder message in the white box.

   If you want instead to schedule a command to run, enable the **Command** option and type the command, for example `firefox` to launch Firefox Web Browser.

   If you want instead to be prompted to send an e-mail, enable the **Email** option and add the address, subject, and message.
4. Enable the **Sound** check box if you want an audible reminder in addition to a visual reminder, then click the musical note icon, and select a sound file.
5. Set the **Time** for the reminder.
6. To repeat the reminder message, click the **Recurrence** tab.
7. Click **OK**.

You can also set an alarm by clicking the **New** button on the tool bar.

To import birthdays from Address Book and schedule an alarm

1. Click **File** ▶ **Import Birthdays**. Birthdays not already scheduled appear in the list.
2. Select the birthday that you want to schedule and click **OK**. A reminder is scheduled.

To change an alarm

1 Select the entry that you want to change.

2 Click **Actions** ▶ **Edit**.

3 Change the reminder. If you try to change the date of a recurring event, you need to change it in the **Recurrence** tab.

4 Click **OK**.

You can also change an alarm by double-clicking it or by clicking the **Edit** button on the tool bar.

To delete an alarm

1 Select the entry that you want to delete.

2 Click **Actions** ▶ **Delete**, and confirm the deletion.

You can also delete an alarm by clicking the **Delete** button on the tool bar.

To disable all alarms

- Click **Actions**, and disable the **Alarms Enabled** item. The **Reminder Message Scheduler** icon on the Panel is gray when alarms are disabled.

To change the default alarm color

1 Click **Settings** ▶ **Configure Reminder Message Scheduler**.

2 Click the **Font & Color** icon.

3 Change the **Background color**.

4 Click **OK**. The change applies to new reminders.

Scheduling tasks

Applications can be scheduled to run after a specified delay. If you schedule a job to recur, the maximum interval is 99,999 seconds, or just over a day, and the Task Scheduler must remain open or minimized on the desktop.

You can also use commands in a console window to schedule tasks. For example, open a console window as Administrator, enter `at 1830`, enter `halt`, and press **Ctrl+D**. These commands shut down the computer at 6:30 PM.

To schedule a task

1. Click **Launch** ▶ **Applications** ▶ **Utilities** ▶ **Task Scheduler**.
2. Click **New**.
3. In the **Command line** box, type the command to run. An example is `firefox` to run the Firefox Web Browser. You can click the icon to the right of the box to browse to the **/usr/bin** and **usr/games** folders, for example, to launch another application.
4. In the **Delay** box, set the amount of time to wait before the command is executed. The maximum is 99,999 seconds, or just over a day. You need to move the cursor out of the **Delay** box, for example by clicking in the **Command line** box, in order for the delay to take effect.
5. To have the command execute once, leave the **Start only one instance** check box enabled.

   To have the command recur, enable the **Loop** check box and disable the **Start only one instance** check box.

   If you have both check boxes enabled, the countdown loops but the command is executed only once.
6. Click the start button (▶) and leave the Task Scheduler open or minimized. The counter counts down from the delay specified, then the command is executed. If you set the application to loop, then the countdown repeats. The task is cancelled when the Task Scheduler is closed.

Additional accessories and utilities

The following applications can be downloaded from the Applications CD and/or Xandros Networks:

Imendio Planner — Project management tool

Archiving Tool (Ark) — Lets you archive files as tar, gzip, bzip2, zip, and lha files

Konserve — Lets you schedule back ups; available on the Debian unsupported site

Mobile Phone Tool — Mobile phone tool, including the ability to access the phone book of the mobile phone and to synchronize it with Address Book

Note Taker — Hyper cards

Tape Backup Tool — Archiving tool for backing up tar files to tapes

xTide — Tide information; download with xtide-data from the Debian unsupported site

GRAMPS — Family tree; available on the Debian unsupported site

Check Xandros Networks for additional applications.

Using the command line interface 16

You can perform tasks using the graphical user interface or a command line interface similar to UNIX. There are three ways to use the command line interface:

- **Login shell** — Non-windowed environment. Displays a blank screen with a command line prompt. You can open up to six login shells.
- **Run command** — You can use the Run Command window to execute shell commands. You can view the command results, or standard output, in a Console window when you run the command.
- **Console window** — Opens a shell session using your default shell. This is the method commonly used.

Common commands are also listed at the end of this chapter.

Using the login shell

The login shell is non-windowed environment in the sense that it displays a blank screen with a command line prompt, covering the entire monitor display. You can open up to six login shells. Each login shell is identified with a number, ranging from tty1 to tty6.

To start a login shell

- Press **Ctrl+Alt+F1**. You can toggle among multiple login shells by pressing **Ctrl+Alt+F2** through to **Ctrl+Alt+F6**.

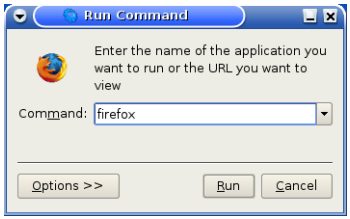
This feature does not work with all video cards. You get a blank screen without a prompt.

To return to the desktop

- Press **Ctrl+Alt+F7**.

Using the Run command

You can use the Run command to execute shell commands, launch applications, and access Web sites. You can view the command results (if any) in a Console window.



Launching Firefox Web Browser from the Run Command window

To use the Run command

1 Click **Launch ▶ Run Command**.

2 In the **Command** box, type the command you want to run. An example is `firefox` , which launches the Firefox Web Browser, or `xandros.com` to launch the Xandros Web site in the default Web Browser. You can look up a command in the Menu Editor under **Launch ▶ Applications ▶ System ▶ Menu Editor**. Previously run commands can also be selected from the drop-down list in the Run Command window.

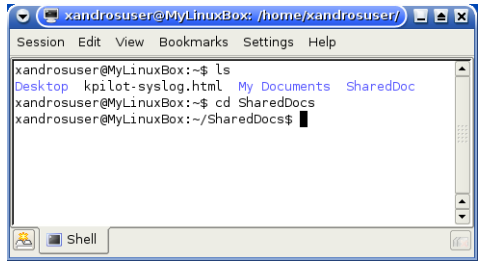
3 Click **Run**.

You can display standard output (if any) in a Console window by clicking **Options** and enabling the **Run in terminal window** check box.

You can also launch the Run Command window by pressing **Alt+F2**.

Using the Console window

The Console utility lets you work directly at the shell command line in a console window. The shell is an integral part of the Linux system. It interprets and communicates commands to the operating system, or kernel. At the command line, you enter instructions, or commands, that tell the kernel which programs to run or the information to display.



Console window

For information about commands, see the UNIX Manual (Man) pages. Man pages contain detailed information about specific Linux commands and topics. You can access the Man pages in the Help Center accessible from the desktop or by typing **man** [command] at the command line in the Console window. For example, typing **man ls** opens the Man page for the List Directory Contents command.

You can customize the Console window by changing its display, such as font size, window size, or window color.

You can access the command line window in various modes, such as Linux Console and Root Console. Xandros Desktop uses the Bourne Again Shell (bash) as the default. You can open multiple shell sessions in different command line modes.

You can multi-task by running more than one shell session simultaneously. For example, to write a computer program, you can open one shell session to write and edit code, a second session to compile the code, and a third session to view a Man page.

To start the Console utility

1. Click **Launch** ▶ **Applications** ▶ **System** ▶ **Console**.
2. You can launch a different shell environment by clicking **Session** and selecting one.

You can also launch a console window in Administrator mode. Click **Launch** ▶ **Applications** ▶ **System** ▶ **Administrator Tools** ▶ **Console**.

Common commands

See the Man page for each command for more information. To repeat a command already typed in a Console window, use the up arrow key on the keyboard.

Command	Function
`ls`	List contents of the current directory
`cd`	Change directory to the one specified by you, for example `cd SharedDocs` in the current directory
`cd ..`	Change directory to the one above the current one
`cp`	Copy file specified by you to another directory, for example `cp report.txt SharedDocs`, which copies the report.txt file to the SharedDocs directory
`mkdir`	Make the directory specified by you, for example `mkdir Test` in the current directory
`rm`	Remove the file specified by you, for example `rm report.txt` in the current directory
`rmdir`	Remove the directory specified by you, for example `rmdir Test` in the current directory
`pwd`	Display the complete current path, such as /home/xandrosuser
`dpkg`	Create a list of all packages installed on computer with `dpkg -l > ~/InstalledPackages` View the list in Xandros File Manager by opening the file called InstalledPackages.
`su`	Switch Console window user to Administrator (root) user
`chown`	Change file ownership, for example `chown jamesh report.txt` changes the ownership of a file called report.txt to user account jamesh. Requires Administrator access.

17 Printing

You can add and remove printers, share printers, manage print jobs, and customize printing. When you send a job to print, the job is stored in the print queue and prints in the background so that you can continue working. You can view and cancel jobs in the print queue. Faxes can be sent and received.

Setting up printers

Before you print to a printer for the first time, it must be configured with the Add Printer Wizard. You can add local and network printers. A local printer is connected directly to your computer. A network printer is accessed by your computer over a network and typically is shared by multiple users. A local printer can become a network printer if you share it over a network. You can also remove printers from your setup.

Adding and removing printers

The Add Printer Wizard helps you to add local and network printers. When you add a local printer, you specify a printer name and the computer port to which the printer is connected. Printers can connect through a serial, parallel, or Universal Serial Bus (USB) port.

The wizard automatically chooses the driver for your printer, but you can use a driver from the print driver disk supplied with your printer, Xandros Networks, or the manufacturer's web site. You may be required to install additional drivers from the Applications CD or Xandros Networks for your printer to work.

Information required for a network printer varies. When you add a Windows network printer you specify a name for the printer and the path to the shared printer. For a Linux or UNIX printer, you specify a name for the printer, host name, and a queue name. The host name is the name of the server that controls the printer, for example printer_server. The queue, for example local0 or lpr or p1, is required because the network printer can have multiple printers under its control and therefore multiple queues. In addition to setting up a Windows or Linux/UNIX printer, you can also set up Internet printing.

You can set a default printer, and when you no longer use a printer you can remove it from your system setup.

To add a local printer

1 Log in as Administrator (recommended but not necessary).

2 Connect the printer to the computer and turn it on.

3 The computer prompts you to launch the wizard. If it does not, click **Launch** ▶ **Control Center**, then **Peripheral Devices**, then **Printers**, and click **Add**. The Add Printer Wizard launches.

4 With the **Local printer** option enabled, click **Next**.

5 For the **Name** box, do not use spaces because they are not recognized in Linux. Select the parallel or USB port to which the printer is connected to the computer. Click **Next**.

6 Select the **Manufacturer** and **Model** of the printer from the drop-down lists. If your printer model is not listed, select a similar model, or choose **Generic** as the Manufacturer and choose **PostScript Printer** for the Model if your printer is a PostScript printer.

   If you do not know which **Driver** to use, use the default presented.

   If you want instead to use a driver on a disk, click **Have PPD** and click **My Linux**.

   Click **Next**. Take note of any suggestions to obtain other drivers.

7 Enable the **Yes** option to print a test page.

8 Click **Finish**. The printer is added to the printer list. If the test page does not print, you may need an additional driver, from the Applications CD, Xandros Networks, or the manufacturer's Web site. See the troubleshooting section later in this chapter if you have problems.

   To share a printer with Windows-based computers, see "To share a local printer with Windows computers" on page 358.

If you have a serial printer, add it using a Web-based tool. Open **localhost:631** in a Web browser.

To add a network printer

1 Click **Launch** ▶ **Control Center**, then **Peripheral Devices**, then **Printers**, and click **Add**. The Add Printer Wizard launches.

2 Enable the **Network printer** option, and click **Next**.

3 Enable the type of network: **Windows**, **Unix**, or **Other**. Select **Other** if the user will print over the Internet or you have an AppSocket/HP JetDirect printer.

For a Windows network, type the **Name** of the printer as it will appear on the user's computer. It does not need to match the name elsewhere. Type the **Path** to the printer or click **Browse** to locate the printer. For example, a printer connected through a user's computer is typically found in the Workgroup directory and that user account. The path is in the format \\usercomputer\printername

For a UNIX network, type the **Name** of the printer as it will appear on the user's computer. It does not need to match the name elsewhere. The **Host name** is the name of the server that controls the printer, for example printer_server. The **Queue**, for example local0 or lpr or p1, is required because the network printer can have multiple printers under its control and therefore multiple queues.

For **Other**, select the **Connection** type from the drop-down list:

- **AppSocket/HP JetDirect (socket)** — Provides bidirectional access to a printer using port 9100. An older connection type. Select this option if the network interface or print server supports HP JetDirect. Useful for older equipment. To determine if this type applies, check the printer documentation or try typing `printer` in a Web browser and pressing **Enter** to view printer capability (not all printers have this functionality). If you cannot get your networked printer to work, try this option anyway.
- **Internet Printing Protocol (http)** — To print over the Internet to an HTTP server, for example running Apache. The difference between this option and the next is the server used. Port 631 is used. When you select this option, all a user needs to do to print over the Internet is to select the appropriate printer, just like printing to a regular printer.
- **Internet Printing Protocol (ipp)** — To print over the Internet to an IPP server. The difference between this option and the previous one is the server used. Port 631 is used. When you select this option, all a user needs to do to print over the Internet is to select the appropriate printer, just like printing to a regular printer.

The **Host name** is the name of the server that controls the printer, for example printer_server. It can be a name or an IP address. You can click **Find** in order to scan the network for available printers.

Click **Next**.

4 Select the **Manufacturer** and **Model** of the printer from the drop-down lists. If the printer model is not listed, select a similar model, or choose **Generic** as the Manufacturer and choose **PostScript Printer** for the Model if your printer is a PostScript printer.

   If you do not know which **Driver** to use, use the default presented.

   Click **Next**. Take note of any suggestions to obtain other drivers.

5 Enable the **Yes** option to print a test page.

6 Click **Finish**. The printer is added to the printer list. If the test page does not print, you may need an additional driver, from the Applications CD, Xandros Networks, or the manufacturer's Web site. See the troubleshooting section later in this chapter if you have problems.

To set a default printer

1 Click **Launch** ▶ **Control Center**.

2 Click **Peripheral Devices**, then **Printers**.

3 Select a printer from the list.

4 Click **Set as Default**. There must be two or more devices in the list for this button to be active.

To remove a printer

1 Access the **Printers** panel in the Control Center.

2 Select a printer from the list.

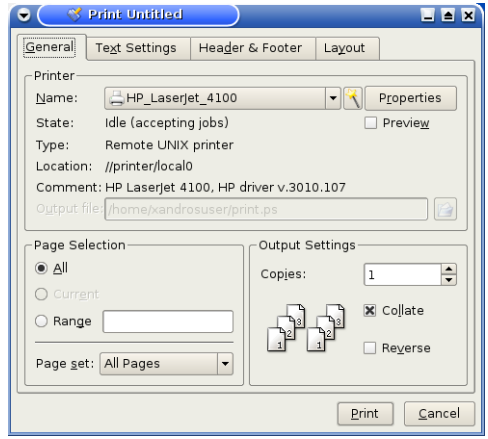
3 Click **Delete**, and confirm the deletion.

Printing

A common print window is used for several applications, including Text Editor, Popup Notes, DVI Viewer, PostScript Viewer, and Image Viewer. The print options available are: print to a printer; e-mail a PDF file; print to file (PDF); print to file (PostScript); and send to fax.

Printing files

If a printer is properly added to your computer setup, you can print a file without changing the default settings. For information about setting up a printing device, see “Setting up printers” on page 349.



Printing to an HP printer

To print to a printer

1 In the application from which you want to print, click **File** ▶ **Print**.

2 Select a printer from the **Name** drop-down list. The printer must have been added to the system for it to appear in the list.

3 Click **Print**.

You can view the page before printing by enabling the **Preview** check box.

If the file prints with a header or footer that you do not want, turn them off in the **Header & Footer** tab, which may or may not appear depending on the printer.

To create a PostScript file

1 In the application from which you want to print, click **File** ▶ **Print**.

2 Select **Print to File (PostScript)** from the **Name** drop-down list.

3 Note or change the **Output file** name and location.

4 Click **Print**.

If the file prints with a header or footer that you do not want, turn them off in the **Header & Footer** tab, which may or may not appear depending on the printer.

To create a PDF file

1 In the application from which you want to print, click **File ▶ Print**.

2 Select **Print to File (PDF)** from the **Name** drop-down list. You can change the compression and font defaults by clicking **Properties**, then the **Driver Settings** tab. You cannot change the security settings, for example printing is allowed and there is no password requirement.

3 Note or change the **Output file** name and location.

4 Click **Print**. A PDF file is created.

If the file prints with a header or footer that you do not want, turn them off in the **Header & Footer** tab, which may or may not appear depending on the printer.

Troubleshooting printing

Printer support is inconsistent in Linux. If you are having trouble printing to a printer, try the following.

To troubleshoot printing to a printer

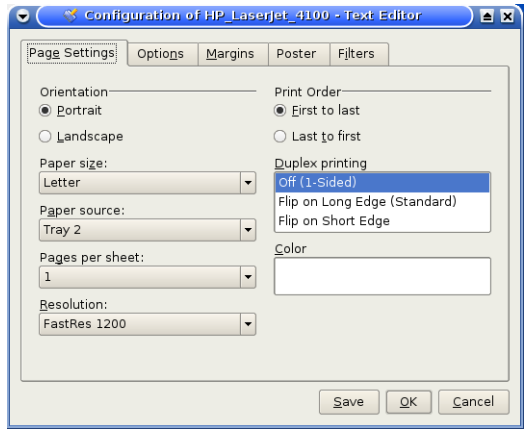
- Check if the printer is supported. See **http://support.xandros.com/hcl.php** and **www.linuxprinting.org**
- Check if instructions are available for your type of printing device in the FAQs at **http://support.xandros.com/**, for example searching on Scanjet, Officejet, Deskjet, or JetDirect.
- Check if a printer driver is available on Xandros Networks. For example, first look in the **Drivers** category, then search for **hpijs or hpoj** if you have an HP printer. You can also search on your printer name, such as LaserJet.
- Check if a printer driver is available on the manufacturer's Web site, for example **http://solutions.brother.com/linux/en_us/index.html**
- When adding the printer to Xandros Desktop using the Add Printer Wizard, from the **Driver** drop-down list, select another option. If the printer has already been added, click **Properties** and do so from the **Change Model** list.
- Try adding the printer to Xandros Desktop when logged in as Administrator.
- Delete and reinstall the printer on the same computer (Xandros Desktop or Windows), then restart the computer.
- Start the computer with the printer already turned on.
- If the printer is connected to your computer and a Windows computer cannot access it, check that printer sharing is enabled (**Control Center, Peripheral Devices, Printers, Properties, Windows Sharing**).

- For sharing in a Windows network, ensure that sharing is enabled in the **Windows Networking** panel of the Control Center in Xandros Desktop (enabled by default).
- If the printer is connected to a Windows computer, ensure that printer sharing is enabled on the Windows computer.
- If the printer is connected to a Windows computer and you can see it on your Xandros computer but not print, ensure that the printer name in Windows does not contain spaces.
- Try TurboPrint drivers at **www.turboprint.de/turboprint.html**, which provides drivers for Canon, Epson, HP, and Brother printers.
- Try the **AppSocket/HP JetDirect (socket)** option in the Add Printer Wizard.
- If the printer supports Windows printer sharing, install it as a Windows printer and browse the network for the printer.

Printer use is unaffected by the use of the Xandros Firewall.

Specifying the paper size and orientation

You can choose a page size for printing from the North American standards, including Letter and Legal, as well as from the European standards, including A4 and B5. Depending on your printer's capabilities, you can print envelopes and posters. You can also set the paper orientation to portrait or landscape.



Setting printing defaults

To specify a paper size, including envelopes

1. In the application from which you want to print, click **File** ▶ **Print**.
2. Select a printer from the **Name** drop-down list.
3. Click **Properties**.
4. Click the **Paper size** drop-down list and select a size.
5. Click **OK**.

This sets the page size for the current job. You can also set the default page size. See “To change default paper size” on page 359.

To specify a paper orientation

1 In the application from which you want to print, click **File** ▶ **Print**.
2 Select a printer from the **Name** drop-down list.
3 Click **Properties**.
4 Enable one of the following orientations:

Portrait — Lets you print a page with the short end at the top

Landscape — Lets you print a page with the long end at the top

5 Click **OK**.

To change this setting globally, see “To change default paper orientation” on page 359.

Specifying the pages to print

You can print all pages (default), the current page, or a range of pages in a file.

To print current page

1 Determine the page number to print.
2 In the application from which you want to print, click **File** ▶ **Print**.
3 Enable the **Range** option. (The **Current** option cannot be enabled at this time.)
4 Type the page number that you want to print.
5 Click **Print**.

To print a range of pages

1 In the application from which you want to print, click **File** ▶ **Print**.
2 Enable the **Range** option.
3 Type the page range you want to print, for example, `1-3` for pages 1 to 3. For discontinuous pages, separate the page numbers with commas, for example `2,4` for pages 2 and 4.
4 Click **Print**.

Printing multiple copies

You can print multiple copies of the same file.

To print multiple copies

1 In the application from which you want to print, click **File** ▶ **Print**.
2 Type the number of copies you want to print in the **Copies** box.
3 Click **Print**.

Printing in reverse order

You can choose the printing order, for example, print a file in reverse order, from the last page to the first page, so that you do not need to manually order the pages.

To print in reverse order

1 In the application from which you want to print, click **File** ▶ **Print**.
2 Enable the **Reverse** check box.
3 Click **Print**.

To change this setting globally, see "To change default page printing order" on page 358.

Customizing printer properties

You can customize printer properties, such as printer name and type, and user name and password for shared printers. You can set the following defaults: color settings, print resolution, print order, paper tray, duplex printing, paper orientation, paper size, number of pages to print per page, and page margin. Some printers let you set advanced printer properties to optimize printing. For example, you can turn End Of File notification on or off, and you can specify when to print a job.

To change the printer name for a local printer

1 Click **Launch** ▶ **Control Center**.
2 Click **Peripheral Devices**, then **Printers**.
3 Select a printer from the list.
4 Click **Properties**.
5 Type the new name for the printer in the **Name** box. Do not use spaces.
6 Click **OK**.

To change the printer type (make and model)

1 Follow steps 1 to 4 from the previous procedure.
2 Click **Change Model**.

3 Select a manufacturer and model from the list boxes. Use the printer driver disk supplied with the printer, if available.

4 Click **OK**.

To share a local printer with Windows computers

1 Access the **Printers** panel in the Control Center.

2 Select a printer from the list.

3 Click **Properties**.

4 Click the **Windows Sharing** tab (available only for local printers).

5 Enable the **Share this item and its contents** check box.

6 Ensure the **Share name** is 13 characters or less.

7 If required, specify the number of users and require a password, in the **Allow maximum** and **Permissions** areas.

8 Ensure that the **Share enabled** check box is enabled. This setting reflects the master setting for sharing printers. (See "To change your file and printer sharing for a Windows network" on page 169.)

9 Click **OK**. Individual printer sharing has now been set.

To change print resolution

1 Access the **Printers** panel in the Control Center.

2 Select a printer from the list.

3 Click **Properties**.

4 Click the **Output** tab.

5 Select a print resolution from the **Resolution** drop-down list. Resolution is not selectable for all printers.

6 Click **OK**.

Print resolution settings vary according to the printer type.

Print resolution is measured in dots per inch (dpi). For example, a print resolution of 600 dpi translates to 600 x 600, or 360,000 dots per square inch. The higher the resolution, the better the print quality.

To change default page printing order

1 Follow steps 1 to 4 from the previous procedure.

2 Select either **First to last** or **Last to first** orientation. For example, the **Last to first** option prints the pages in reverse order: last page first, then the following pages, and ending with the first page.

3 Click **OK**.

To select a paper tray or do manual feed

1. Access the **Printers** panel in the Control Center.
2. Select a printer from the list.
3. Click **Properties**.
4. Click the **Output** tab.
5. Select a page format from the **Paper source** list box. Your printer must have this capability for it to be available for selection.
6. Click **OK**.

To print two-sided

1. Follow steps 1 to 4 of the previous procedure.
2. Select a setting from the **Duplex printing** list box. Your printer must have this capability for it to work.
3. Click **OK**.

To change default paper orientation

1. Follow steps 1 to 4 of the "To select a paper tray or do manual feed" procedure.
2. Enable **Portrait** or **Landscape** orientation.
3. Click **OK**.

To change default paper size

1. Follow steps 1 to 4 of the "To select a paper tray or do manual feed" procedure.
2. Select a paper size from the **Paper size** drop-down list.
3. Click **OK**.

You can add custom paper sizes by modifying a printer's .ppd file. Search for the .ppd file on the computer.

You can also set the paper size globally to A4 in the **Regional Settings** panel of the Control Center.

To specify number of pages to print per page

1. Follow steps 1 to 4 of the "To select a paper tray or do manual feed" procedure.
2. Select a page format from the **Pages per sheet** drop-down list.
3. Click **OK**.

To set printing page margins

1 Access the **Printers** panel in the Control Center.

2 Select a printer from the list.

3 Click **Properties**.

4 Click the **Advanced** tab

5 Click the **Text Files** list to expand it.

6 Click a page margin from the list, and set the margin for the bottom, left, right, and top of page, as required.

7 Click **OK**.

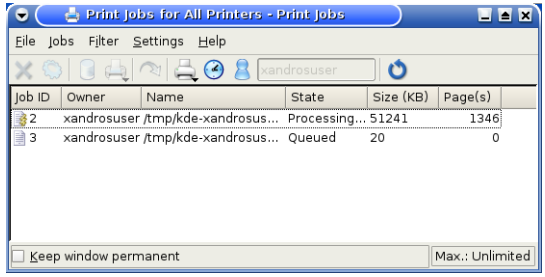
Changing the margins in the Control Center changes them for all applications. You can sometimes change margins for individual applications within an application.

To specify time to print

- In **Properties**, access the **Advanced** tab, and expand the **Job Flow** category.

Managing print jobs

When you print a file, the job is stored in the print queue until the printer can process it. The print queue displays print jobs in the order in which they are sent, and it displays information about each print job. Jobs can be cancelled. If you are logged in as the Administrator, you can cancel a print job belonging to another user.


Print Jobs for All Printers - Print Jobs
File Jobs Filter Settings Help
xandrosuser
Job ID Owner Name State Size (KB) Page(s)
2 xandrosuser /tmp/kde-xandrosus... Processing... 51241 1346
3 xandrosuser /tmp/kde-xandrosus... Queued 20 0
Keep window permanent
Max.: Unlimited

Monitoring the printer queue with Print Jobs

To access the print queue

1 Click **Launch** ▶ **Applications** ▶ **Accessories** ▶ **Print Jobs**. The application is also available from the Panel when a job is printing.

2 To view jobs specific to a printer, select it from **Filter** ▶ **Select Printer**.

3 To view jobs specific to a user, select **Filter** ▶ **Show Only User Jobs**, specify which user in the box on the tool bar, and press **Enter**.

To cancel a print job

1 Select a print job from the list.

2 Click **Jobs ▶ Remove**.

To view completed jobs

- Click **Filter ▶ Toggle Completed Jobs**. Select it again to view only current jobs.

Viewing and sending faxes

You can view and send faxes with Xandros Desktop.

Viewing a fax

Fax Viewer allows you to view, print, and save faxes you receive, specifically faxes sent to a fax server and distributed to you by e-mail. You cannot receive faxes directly to your computer.

To view a fax

1 Click **Launch ▶ Applications ▶ Accessories ▶ Viewers ▶ Fax Viewer**.

2 Click **File ▶ Open**, and select the file to open. You can also drag and drop a file into the Fax Viewer window.

Sending a fax

Several applications included with Xandros Desktop have an integrated print function to send a fax. Examples are the Text Editor, Popup Notes, DVI Viewer, PostScript Viewer, and Image Viewer. You can send a fax from such applications, or you can send a fax from the Print a Fax application.

You require a fax modem and telephone connection to send a fax.

The application is integrated with the Address Book and Personal Information Manager.

Configuration may be required to send a fax. If you have a Winmodem (a modem designed for Windows), you need to run the Connection Wizard to set up a connection. You run the Connection Wizard and load the Winmodem kernel driver. You do not need to set up an actual connection. You then configure Print a Fax. After that you can send a fax if your modem has fax sending capability.

To configure a computer that uses a Winmodem

1 Click **Launch ▶ Applications ▶ Internet ▶ Connection Wizard** and run the wizard to load the Winmodem driver.

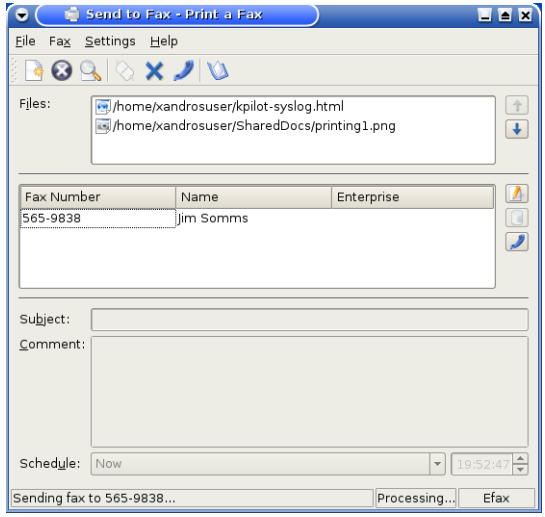
2 Configure Print a Fax for your modem device:

- Click **Launch ▶ Applications ▶ Accessories ▶ Print a Fax.**
- Click **Settings ▶ Configure Send to Fax.**
- Click the **System** icon.
- From the **Fax/Modem device** drop-down list, select **Other.**
- In the empty box that appears, type `/dev/tts/Winmodem0` If this path does not work when you try to fax, try another one, for example `/dev/ttyLT0` for a Lucent modem, `/dev/536ep` or `/dev/537ep` for an Intel 536 or 537 modem, or `/dev/ttySL0` for a Smart Link modem.
- Click **OK** to exit the configuration window.

To send a fax

1 If you want a cover page on the fax and you are sending it from within an application, add the cover page in the application. Alternatively, you can add a cover page file as a separate file later in this procedure.

2 Within an application, click **File ▶ Print.** (Or launch Print a Fax by clicking **Launch ▶ Applications ▶ Accessories ▶ Print a Fax.**)



Sending a fax

3 In the Print window, from the **Name** drop-down list, select **Send to Fax.**

4 Click **Print.**

5 In the Send to Fax window, click the **Add fax number** icon on the right side of the window and enter the fax **Number** of the recipient and their **Name**. You can also click the phone icon to select the contact from your Address Book or Personal Information Manager, in which case only those contacts with fax numbers are listed. Then click **OK**.

6 To add another file or cover page, click **File ▶ Add File**. You can order the documents using the up and down arrows in the application.

7 To specify your personal information that appears at the top of each fax page, click **Settings ▶ Configure Send to Fax**, enter the information in the **Name**, **Company**, and phone **Number** fields, then click **OK**.

8 Click **Fax ▶ Send Fax**.

If you cannot fax, check that the **Fax/Modem device** field in the configuration settings reflects your fax modem port. You can also view error information under **Fax ▶ View Log**.

If the file prints with a header or footer that you do not want, turn them off in the **Header & Footer** tab.

18 Managing software packages

You can list, update, install, and remove applications.

There are several ways to upgrade and install applications, including:

- From the Xandros Desktop Applications CD
- From Xandros Networks
- From third-party Web sites
- From application CDs

Please note that if you install from third-party Web sites or CDs, it can break other parts of Xandros Desktop and the software is not supported by Xandros

Xandros Networks contains a database of installable and previously installed applications specific to your computer. It allows you to search for, install, upgrade, and uninstall applications. You need an Internet connection to access the Xandros server, unless your computer is being managed by Xandros Deployment Management Server (xDMS), in which case you usually access your xDMS repository over a network.

There are several options for using Windows applications.

There are also ways to restore and uninstall Xandros Desktop.

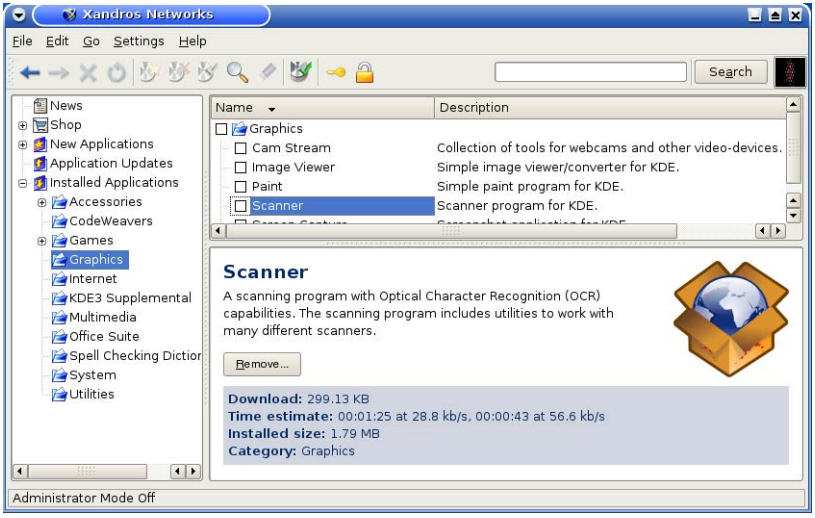
Listing software

You can view lists of applications installed. You can also determine version numbers of applications.

To view a list of installed applications

1 Click **Launch ▶ Xandros Networks**.

2 Click **Installed Applications** (expand the list by clicking the + sign).



Xandros Networks showing application installed

To print a list of applications installed on the computer

1 Click **Launch ▶ Applications ▶ System ▶ Console**.

2 Type the following command

```
dpkg -l > ~/InstalledPackages
```

and press **Enter**. A detailed list of applications installed, including version numbers, is saved to a file called **InstalledPackages** in your home folder.

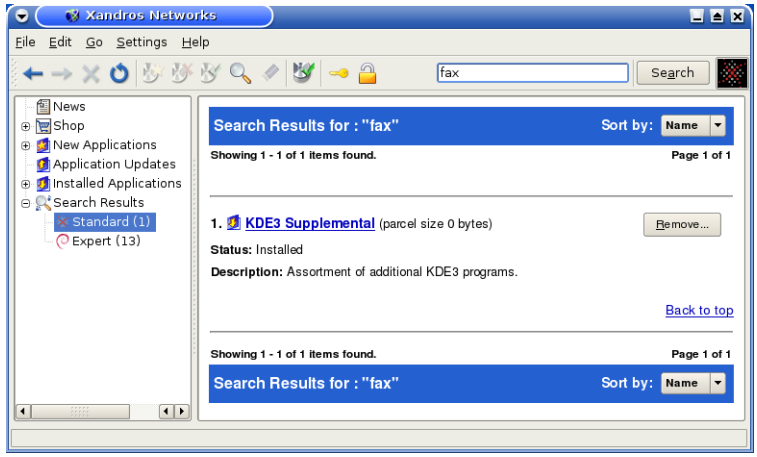
```
acl            2.2.23-1       Access control list utilities
acpi           0.09-1         displays information on ACPI devices
acpid          1.0.4-1        Utilities for using ACPI power management
adduser        3.63           Add and remove users and groups
akode          3.4.2.15-1     plugin for aRts
alien          8.52           install non-native packages with dpkg
alsa-base      1.0.11-2       ALSA driver configuration files
alsa-utils     1.0.11-3       ALSA utilities
amarok         1.4-beta3c-4   versatile and easy to use audio player for
```

Listing applications installed

For more information on version numbers of applications, see “Determining version numbers” on page 384.

Finding packages

You can locate packages that are currently installed on your computer and packages that are available to install or upgrade. You can use Xandros Networks to find them, install them, upgrade them, or remove them. You can customize the search criteria to broaden or narrow the search scope, by using Standard and Expert views.



Search results for “fax” in Xandros Networks

To find a package

1. Click **Launch ▶ Xandros Networks**.
2. Type the words to search in the **Search** box.
3. Click **Search**. Search results indicate applications installed and available for installation. Note that results vary by **Standard** and **Expert** view.

Installing, upgrading, and uninstalling packages

Xandros Networks allows you to install, upgrade, and uninstall packages. You can use it to access the Xandros server or to access Debian and other Web sites from which you can obtain packages. When your computer is being managed by xDMS, you usually access your xDMS repository instead.

Because Xandros Desktop is based on Debian GNU Linux, most of its packages conform to the Debian (DEB) package format and use the .deb file extension. When you install an application, you typically are installing a DEB package consisting of files to run the application, the documentation, libraries, and data files. Some applications consist of multiple packages. Xandros Networks identifies these dependencies and automatically includes any required packages as it installs the application. Use the Debian package format when possible in order to increase installation success.

Some packages use the RPM Package Manager (RPM) package format and can be installed with Xandros Networks.

Upgrades/updates for Xandros Desktop occur when new versions of applications become available, new features are added, bugs are fixed, or upgraded code is implemented. Xandros Networks easily identifies updates for you.

When a package is downloading, you can cancel the download, but when the system is subsequently being updated, you can **Close** the window to move it out of the way, but not cancel the installation process. When you press the **Close** button to move the window or exit from Xandros Networks, the process remains active. Double-click the spinning icon at the bottom right of the Xandros Networks window to return to the window.

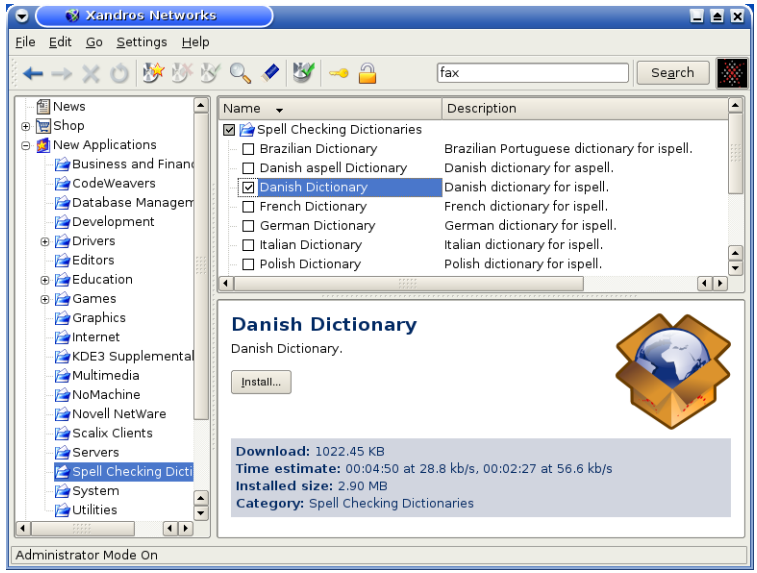
When installing a new package, Xandros recommends that you look first for it on Xandros Networks because Xandros may have modified the package to run with Xandros Desktop. When the package is not found, Xandros suggests using the **Debian unsupported site** option (see “Setting package sources” on page 373).

Uninstalling packages deletes all files in the package except files that are still required by the system. It does not remove configuration files.

If Xandros Networks does not work and you have a proxy server, see “Configuring proxy server settings for Xandros Networks and Internet” on page 71.

Registration of your Xandros Desktop product is required before you can update or install applications in Xandros Networks.

The following installation procedures are outlined: using Xandros Networks, Debian files, RPM files, apt-get command, and other methods.



Installing a spell checker dictionary using Xandros Networks

Installing packages using Xandros Networks

You can install packages from Xandros Networks.

To install packages using Xandros Networks

1. Click **Launch ▶ Xandros Networks**.
2. Click **New Applications** (expand the list by clicking the + sign).
3. Select the folder where the package is stored.
4. Enable the check boxes of the application(s) that you want to install.
5. Click **Install** for a single application, or click **File ▶ Install Selected Applications** for multiple applications. You can be required to activate the product using the serial number or an activation code.
6. If prompted, type the Administrator password and click **OK**.
7. Confirm the list of packages to be installed, and click **OK**. You can also review package names and dependencies by clicking **Details**.
8. Respond to any prompts and close the progress window when done.
9. Some applications work in the background and others are launched. To launch the application, select it from the **Launch** menu. You may be required to log in again to view the application in the menu or to add it to the menu with the Menu Editor (**Launch ▶ Applications ▶ System ▶ Menu Editor**). Some applications can be started by entering their name in a console window or using the **Run Command** accessible from the Launch menu.

You can move and rename entries in the Launch menu with the Menu Editor. See “Changing the Launch menu” on page 86.

Installing DEB packages

You can install Debian packages that you download from the Internet or obtain from other sources. Use this format when possible instead of the RPM format to increase installation success.

To install a downloaded DEB package

1 Click **Launch ▶ Xandros Networks**.

2 Click **File ▶ Install DEB File**.

3 Open the folder where the package is stored.

4 Double-click the package file name. If prompted, type the Administrator password and click **OK**. The application is installed.

5 Add it to the Launch menu with the Menu Editor (**Launch ▶ Applications ▶ System ▶ Menu Editor**). Some applications can be started by entering their name in a console window or using the **Run Command** accessible from the Launch menu.

Xandros Networks attempts to resolve dependencies for DEB packages downloaded from the Internet and does so when found. This means that additional packages required for the application will be automatically installed.

Installing RPM packages

Some Linux distributions use different package formats, for example, the RPM Package Manager (RPM) format. Xandros Networks lets you install RPM packages.

To install a downloaded RPM package

1 Click **Launch ▶ Xandros Networks**.

2 Click **File ▶ Install RPM File**.

3 Open the folder where the package is stored.

4 Double-click the package file name. If prompted, type the Administrator password and click **OK**. The application is installed.

Xandros Networks does not resolve dependencies for RPM packages downloaded from the Internet. This means that you may have to install additional packages for the application to function.

Installing packages using the apt-get command

Another way to install packages is using the apt-get command. You open a console window as Administrator, update your installation with the `apt-get update` command (optional), then install a particular application with the `apt-get install` command. In this example, the Tux Paint graphics application is installed after an update:

```
apt-get update
apt-get install tuxpaint
```

Follow the prompts. When the application source is set in Xandros Networks to the Xandros distribution site under **Edit ▶ Set Application Sources**, the application is installed from the Xandros Network server. Otherwise the application is installed from the application source set. It can be launched by entering `tuxpaint` in the console window or from the Launch menu under **Applications ▶ Graphics**.

Installing packages other ways

Xandros does not recommend installing packages from other sources because they can break the build. If you must install from other sources, first download a compiler from Xandros Networks (**C/C++ Development Tools**). For a few applications, installation is as easy as double-clicking a .exe file. Otherwise, the general procedure to install an application is: download the application package as a tar file (for example), open a console window as Administrator, and untar and install the application by entering the following commands, where package_name is the name of the application downloaded:

```
tar xvfpz package_name.tar.gz
./configure
make
make install
```

The exact procedure can vary and you may be required to install other applications before the required one will install; see the installation information included with the package.

Upgrading packages using Xandros Networks

In Xandros Networks, when you upgrade a package, you replace the current version on your system with the most recent version. You can easily identify packages for which an upgrade is available. With a single click, you can install all available updates.

To upgrade packages using Xandros Networks

1. Click **Launch** ▶ **Xandros Networks**.
2. Click **Application Updates** (expand the list by clicking the + sign).
3. Enable the check boxes of the package(s) that you want.
4. For a single application, click **Update** or **Install**. For multiple applications, click **File** ▶ **Apply Selected Updates**. You can be required to activate the product using the serial number or an activation code.
5. Confirm the list of packages to be installed, and click **OK**. You can also review dependencies by clicking **Details**.
6. If prompted, type the Administrator password and click **OK**.
7. Respond to any prompts and close the progress window when done.
8. To use the application, select it from the **Applications** menu.

You can get all available updates at once by clicking **File** ▶ **Install All Latest Updates from Xandros**.

Uninstalling packages

Packages are normally uninstalled using Xandros Networks. Windows applications are uninstalled using CrossOver Office. When you uninstall a package with Xandros Networks, Xandros Networks also deletes the files from your system and any other packages that depend on the package, meaning dependencies. It does not remove configuration files.

To uninstall packages using Xandros Networks

1. Click **Launch** ▶ **Xandros Networks**.
2. Click **Installed Applications**.
3. Select the folder where the package is stored.
4. Enable the check boxes of the application(s) that you want to remove.
5. For a single application, click **Remove**. For multiple applications, click **File** ▶ **Remove Selected Applications**.
6. Confirm the list of packages to be removed, and click **OK**. You can also review dependencies by clicking **Details**.
7. If prompted, type the Administrator password and click **OK**.
8. Follow any prompts given and close the progress window when done.

To uninstall Windows packages

1. Click **Launch ▶ Applications ▶ CrossOver ▶ Configuration**.
2. Select the application to remove.
3. Click **Repair/Remove**, and complete the wizard. The application is removed from the computer.
4. Log in again and check that the listing has been removed from the Launch menu. If not, click **Launch ▶ Applications ▶ System ▶ Menu Editor**, select the item to remove, and click **Edit ▶ Delete**. The application is removed from the Launch menu.

Uninstalling Xandros Desktop

See "Uninstalling Xandros Desktop" on page 378.

Setting package sources

Xandros Networks can be used for three types of package sources to install or upgrade packages: Xandros CDs, the Xandros Networks distribution site, and custom paths, including the Debian unsupported site. You can add new paths. This feature means that instead of the dozens of applications available through Xandros Desktop and Xandros Networks, hundreds of applications are available.

Setting a package source

By default, Xandros Networks accesses package information from a Xandros server unless the computer is being managed by xDMS, in which case the xDMS repository usually is accessed. You can also access applications from a CD, the Debian Web site, and other Web sites. For example, if you set the Debian site as the package source, then hundreds (if not thousands) of applications become available for downloading.

To set a package source

1. Click **Launch ▶ Xandros Networks**.
2. Click **Edit ▶ Set Application Sources**.
3. Enable one of the following check boxes:
   - **CD-ROM drive 1** or **2** — For a CD that contains new or updated Debian files and placed in CD-ROM drive 1 or 2 (the Xandros Applications CD, not the Xandros Desktop Installation CD)
   - **Xandros distribution site** — The Xandros Networks server (default)
   - **Debian unsupported site** — Gets packages from the Debian Web site
   - **Location + Custom path(s)** — Custom paths shown in the box; select the paths you want from the secondary list. To **Add** or edit a path, you

need the required folder structure for the path. The path can include the following information:

URL — The Internet location where the DEB packages are stored

Distribution — The parent folder of the **/dists** folder. The **/dists** folder is included automatically in the folder structure.

Version — Refers to the version of the DEB packages

Category — Lets you select DEB packages based on the copyright information, for example, main, contrib, non-free, and non-US

Switch to Expert view to see even more applications when using Xandros Networks.

When Xandros Networks stalls while switching between application sources, close it by pressing **Ctrl+Alt+Esc** and relaunch it.

Installing from the Applications CD

An Applications CD is included with several editions of Xandros Desktop. You can use it to install additional software on your computer. Most of the applications are also included in Xandros Networks, so you have a choice of installation method (CD or over the Internet).

Insert the CD and follow the prompts. Otherwise, manual instructions are provided here for reference.

To view and install packages from the Applications CD

1. Insert the CD in a CD-ROM drive. If an automatic installer window opens, close it.
2. Click **Launch ▶ Xandros Networks**. You do not need an Internet connection.
3. Click **Edit ▶ Set Application Sources**.
4. Note which boxes are enabled so that you can restore these later. The default is the Xandros distribution site.
5. Enable the **CD-ROM drive 1** or **CD-ROM drive 2** check box, depending on the drive in which you inserted the CD.
6. Disable all other check boxes (to view only the packages on the CD).
7. Click **OK** and provide the Administrator password if prompted. The applications database is compiled from the CD.
8. Click **New Applications**, clicking on the + to expand the list. View or select the packages for installation by enabling the check boxes. You can select multiple packages. If you perform a search for an application and do not

find it, try clicking **Expert** in the left pane. You can also change the mode of the window by clicking **Settings ▶ Expert View**.

9 Install a single package by clicking **Install** or multiple packages by clicking **File ▶ Install Selected Applications**, then click **OK** to install. Wait while the packages are being installed, respond to any prompts, then **Close** the installation window when done.

10 Click **Edit ▶ Set Application Sources** window and reset the source (for example, enable only the **Xandros distribution site** check box).

11 Applications installed from the CD normally appear in the appropriate area of the Launch menu. Some applications run in the background and are not launched.

Options for using Windows applications

If you need to run Windows applications, options include:

- **CrossOver Office** — Runs some Windows applications in Xandros Desktop without having Windows installed. You install the applications.
- **Win4Lin** — Runs Windows operating systems and applications in a window on the desktop. Almost any Windows application can be run. An evaluation version is available through Xandros Networks for Windows 95/98/ME. Windows 2000 and XP support is separate. You install Win4Lin, then the Windows, then the applications.
- **VMware** — Runs multiple operating systems and applications, not just Windows, in a window on the desktop. Almost any Windows application can be run. Good for developers who need to test on various operating systems. You install VMware, then the operating system, then the applications. Purchased separately.
- **Terminal Server Client** — Runs Windows applications on other computers from the desktop. Included with the Professional edition of Xandros Desktop and from Xandros Networks for other editions.
- **Citrix Linux ICA Client** — Runs Windows networks and applications on another server from the desktop. A client application and a separate Citrix server license are required.

Restoring Xandros Desktop

If you cannot log in to Xandros Management Console or there is a problem with the black Xandros startup screen, you can restore the installation.

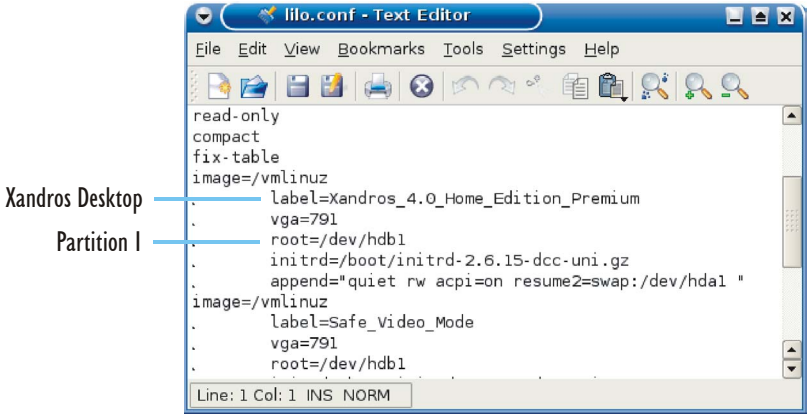
Xandros OS includes a troubleshooting menu that lets you restore Xandros Server, for example in the event of a crash or if you need to repair the Xandros installation after installing another operating system, for example to restore the black Xandros startup screen. User accounts and user folders are preserved. Restoration is performed at the partition level, meaning you select the partition to fix. For example, if you have Xandros Desktop installed on one partition and Xandros Server installed on another partition, you select the partition to restore. In such a scenario, you first need to determine the partition number.

The easiest way to determine the partition number is to start the installation wizard with the Xandros installation CD. Under **Custom install**, enable the **Replace existing Xandros OS** option, view the partition, then **Cancel** the installation. You can also use the restore procedure outlined here.

To determine the partition number

1. Click **Launch** ▶ **Find** ▶ **Files/Folders**.
2. In the **Named** field, type

   ```
   lilo.conf
   ```
3. Select the **file:/** directory from the **Look in** drop-down list.
4. Click **Find**.
5. Double-click a **lilo.conf** file. There can be more than one such file, and it does not matter which one you open.
6. Look for the "label" line for your Xandros installation.
7. Look for the "root" line associated with it. Note the partition number. In the example shown, hdb1 refers to partition 1 on the second hard disk ("b").



Determining partitions

To restore Xandros Desktop

1 Place the Xandros Desktop Installation CD in the CD drive.

2 Restart your computer.

3 During boot-up, when a "Press Space for Troubleshooting Menu" message appears, press the space bar key. Accessing the menu is successful when a Xandros selection screen appears that includes **Restore Xandros** as an option.

4 Using the down arrow, ↓, select **Restore Xandros**, and press **Enter**. Hardware is detected.

5 Viewing the left side of the list that appears, type the **Number** of the partition that you want to restore (use the previous procedure to determine the partition number), and press **Enter**. You are prompted to confirm the restoration. When prompted if you want to change the command line, indicate no. When prompted if you want to change the boot device, indicate no. The installation is restored.

Uninstalling Xandros Desktop

Xandros Desktop and all associated applications can be removed from the computer. Uninstalling it from a disk or partition also removes your files and data in that disk or partition, and if Xandros Desktop is the only operating system installed the computer will not start up after removal. Xandros Desktop is uninstalled using the Installation CD. It can also be uninstalled using the fdisk procedure in a console window (not documented here).

To uninstall Xandros Desktop using the Installation CD

1. Back up any files that you want to keep to another disk, partition, or external media, such as a CD.
2. Remove all media from drives, including floppy disks, CDs, and tapes.
3. If you have Xandros Desktop installed on a partitioned disk (meaning the entire disk is not used for Xandros Desktop or there is another operating system installed on the same disk), you need to determine which partition to erase. See "To determine the partition number" on page 376.
4. Insert the Xandros Desktop Installation CD into the CD-ROM drive.
5. Restart your computer, and wait for the Xandros Installation Wizard. See the "Installing Xandros Desktop" chapter if you need help reaching the Xandros Installation Wizard.
6. On the Xandros Installation Wizard welcome screen, click **Next**.
7. Enable the **I accept this agreement** option, and click **Next**.
8. Enable the **Custom install** option, and click **Next**.
9. In the Software Selection window, click **Next**.
10. Enable the **Manage disks and partitions** option, and click **Next**.
11. Select the disk or partition to erase. For example, hda5 refers to partition 5 on the first hard disk. Then click **Delete**, and confirm the deletion.
12. If the Xandros Desktop installation is the only operating system using the swap partition, you also need to uninstall the swap partition. Select the swap partition (indicated by **Linux - swap** in the **File System** column), and click **Delete**.
13. Save the changes by clicking **Write** and confirming the write. Wait for the partition table to be written.

Uninstalling Xandros Desktop deletes all files on the partition or disk where it resides. If the Xandros Desktop installation being deleted is the only operating system installed, the computer will not start up after uninstallation.

14. Click **Cancel** to exit the Xandros Installation Wizard. Xandros Desktop has been uninstalled.
15. Remove the Xandros startup screen using one of the following procedures.

To remove Xandros boot loader from a Windows XP computer

1. Insert the Windows XP CD into the CD-ROM drive.
2. Restart your computer.
3. Press **R** for Repair on the **Welcome to Setup** window.
4. Select the Windows installation you want to log in to.
5. Type the Administrator password, and press **Enter**.
6. Type `fixmbr` and press **Enter**.
7. Confirm that you want to write a new MBR.
8. Restart the computer.

To remove Xandros boot loader from a Windows 9x computer

1. Launch the MS-DOS prompt by clicking **Start** ▶ **Applications** ▶ **Accessories** and selecting this option.
2. At the command prompt, type `fdisk /mbr` and press **Enter**.
3. Restart the computer.

To remove Xandros boot loader using Xandros Desktop

1. Log in as Administrator.
2. In a console window, type

   ```
   etcdevset -S -c boot.main -t mbr -v no
   ```

   and press **Enter**. This command does not remove the Xandros boot loader if Xandros is the only operating system installed.

To remove Xandros boot loader from a Linux computer

1. Restart the computer.
2. When the Xandros startup screen appears, select the other Linux operating system.
3. Start up and log in to the desktop.
4. Open a console window as Administrator (root) and enter `grub` or `lilo` depending on which boot loader method the Linux operating system uses. With the grub command, for example, pressing **Tab** can bring up a list of commands that will allow the non-Xandros boot loader to be restored. If the command does not work, you may need to perform a repair or rescue using the Linux operating system installation CD.

Technical support

19 Getting technical support

The table lists resources available.

Help	Description
Online help	Included with all editions; excludes installation and configuration information but sometimes includes more how-to instruction than user guide
User forums	http://forums.xandros.com
Technical support	Xandros provides free installation support by e-mail to registered users: 60 days for Home, Premium, Education, and Small Business editions, and 90 days for Professional edition. Register at **www.xandros.com/support/register.html** Contact support at **support@xandros.com** See also **http://support.xandros.com** For assistance with Versora Progression Desktop for Xandros, contact Versora at **http://versora.com/support/contact_support.php**

The **/root/detect.txt** and **/etc/devices/devices.inf** files contain detailed system information for your computer.

Determining version numbers

You may need to know the version number for technical support or when downloading software.

To view the Xandros Desktop version number

1. Click **Launch** ▶ **Xandros File Manager**.
2. Click **Help** ▶ **About Xandros OS**.

To view the Linux kernel version number

1. Click **Launch** ▶ **Control Center**.
2. The Linux kernel version is displayed as the **Release**.

To view the software version number in an application

- In the application, click **Help** ▶ **About...**.

You can also view version numbers in Xandros Networks by clicking **Settings** and enabling the **Expert View** option. You can view a list of applications installed on the computer and version numbers by entering `dpkg -l` in a console window.

Index

A

A drive, floppy 36
AbiWord word processor 249
accents 320
Access, Microsoft 272
Accessibility panel in Control Center 82
accessibility, setting defaults for 82
accessing
  files from a CD 150
  files from a floppy disk 150
  Internet 57
  other computers with network share 183
  Windows computer remotely 189
  Windows networks using Xandros File Manager . .165
  Xandros Desktop 25
  your computer by VPN 191
  your desktop by remote user 185
accessories and utilities 311
accounts
  adding e-mail 66
  adding Internet 57
  adding newsgroup 212
  adding user 110
  Administrator, logging in 27
  deleting user 114
  editing user 110
  e-mail 66
  encryption 110
  expiry, setting 115
  Internet connection 57
  joining Windows domain 171
  newsgroup 212
  passwords 114
  switching user accounts 45
  user restrictions 115
  Windows domain 171
ACPI Setup option during installation 22
activating windows, setting options 89
Active Desktop Borders 46
Active Directory Server, adding user account 171
active windows 89
adding
  account for e-mail 66
  account for Internet 57
  account for newsgroups 212
  account for user 110
  applications 369
  dictionary 97
  e-mail account 66
  groups 116
  Internet connection account 57
  newsgroups 212
  partition 16
  printers 349
  special characters and symbols to files 320
  spell checkers 97
  user account 110
  users to groups 116
Address Book
  birthday reminders 340
  creating entry 315
  default content 316
  deleting entry 316
  editing entry 316
  exporting 317
  finding a contact 317
  importing 317
  LDAP, using 316
  saving 317
  sorting 317
  synchronization with Palm Pilot 335
  using with fax application 363
address book, Personal Information Manager 215
Address box, navigating in Xandros File Manager 149
address completion for e-mail 66, 67
Administrator, logging in 27
Adobe Photoshop 253
Adobe Reader
  install 3
  use 313
ADS, adding users 171
advertising, blocking pop-up 205
AIM 226
alarms
  reminder 340
  system sounds 99
algorithms, encryption 111
Amarok 298
anti-virus application 130
AOL Instant Messenger 226
Apache, Web server 231
APM Setup option during installation 22
Apple Macintosh computer 13

applets
Character Selector 40
Clock 40
Cut and Paste Utility 40
Dictionary 40
Lock/Logout 40
News Ticker 40
Performance Monitor 40
Quick Launcher 40
Runaway Process Catcher 41
Sound Mixer 41
Stock Ticker 229
Storage Media 41
System Tray 41
Taskbar 41
Trash 41
Weather 41
Weather Report 228
Xandros Update 41
application buttons on Panel
changing icons 38
customizing 38
moving 38
removing 38
application windows
arranging 44
cascading 44
closing 43
customization settings 88
default placement 88
description 42
desktop placement 88
exiting 43
focusing 89
making active 89
maximizing 44
minimizing 43
moving 43
moving among virtual desktops 47
resizing 43
sizing 43
uncluttering 43
windows 44
applications
accessing at startup 101
accessing remotely with NX Client 189
accessing with Launch menu 42
accessing with Quick Start menu 87
accessing with shortcuts 49
adding 369, 373
adding to Launch menu 86
applets on Panel 40
creating shortcuts 49
default 101, 103
deleting 372
finding in Xandros Networks 367
graphics 251
installing 369
kill with Ctrl+Alt+Esc 43
launching with Run Command window 346
list of software installed 366
moving among virtual desktops 47
not responding 43
opening 42
Quick Start menu 87
removing 372
running 42
schedule to run 342
starting 42, 101, 103
stopping with Ctrl+Alt+Esc 138
upgrading 372
version numbers 384
working with 42
Applications CD 3, 374
appointments
making in Organizer 323
making in Personal Information Manager 216
reminder with Reminder Message Scheduler . . . 340
apt-get installations 371
arcade games 309
Ark archiving tool 343
aRts 275
Asteroids game 309
Atomic game 310
Audacity sound recorder 308
Audio Builder 275
audio files
adjusting volume 295
copying to CD with DVD Writer 286
copying with DVD Writer 284
erasing from DVD with DVD Writer 287
listening to 273
sound wave visualization 297
Auto Brackets in Text Editor 239
autorun, launching applications 103
autorun, launching applications at startup 101
autostart folder 101
AVI files
Media Player 288

B

Backgammon game 309
background
  applying to all desktops 76
  color 76
  image 76
  photo 263
  screen saver 80
  theme 78
  window 77
  Xandros Photo Manager 263
Background panel in Control Center 76, 80
backup
  files 161
  files with Konserve 343
  how to, with rsync command 162
  Palm Pilot 338
  TGZ files 161
  to CD 283
  to DVD 283
  Xandros Server 161
  Zip files 161
balance
  adjusting speaker 303
  volume 303
banking with GnuCash 272
bell sound 82, 99
BitTorrent and firewall 200
board games 309
bookmarks
  Text Editor 238
  Web pages 203
boot loader
  removing 379
  restoring 376
boot manager during installation 16
Boot Manager panel in Control Center 54
boot manager to set default operating system 54
boot, with keyboard keys 94
border snap zones 88
borders
  printing, margins 360
  setting border snap zone 90
  setting window snap zone 90
Borland JBuilder 2
Borland Kylix 2
bounce keys 82, 83
browse buttons, in Xandros File Manager 149
browser
  Firefox 201
  Internet Explorer 202
  Xandros File Manager 202

C

C drive 36
cable modem for Internet connection 57
Cache panel in Control Center 205
cache, clearing 205
Calculator
  clear 318
  colors 319
  constants 319
  customizing 319
  decimal places 319
  font 319
  frequently used numbers 319
  setting modes 318
  setting the fixed precision 319
  starting 318
  statistical calculations 318
  statistical functions 318
  trigonometric calculations 318
  trigonometric functions 318
  using 318
calendar
  Organizer 321
  Personal Information Manager 216
calendar, on Panel 40, 83
camera, images from 256, 259, 264, 267
camera, Webcam 219
cancelling print jobs 360
card games 309
cascading windows 88
CD
  accessing files 150
  accessing files using Xandros File Manager 148
  adding music information over the Internet 101
  burning 287
  CD / DVD Writer 283
  CD Player 278
  copying 283
  creating 283
  MP3 Player 293
  Music Manager 299
  Video Player 305

CD Player 278
CDDB settings 279
CD-ROM driver 278
customizing 281
defaults 280
information on artist and songs 279, 280
no sound 282
playing 278
playlists 280
troubleshooting 282
CD playlists 280
CD Player 278
defaults 101
Media Player 288
MP3 Player 296
Music Manager 299
Video Player 306
CDDB 101, 279
CDDB Retrieval panel in Control Center 101
Celsius, for weather applet 229
Change Password panel in Control Center 52, 114
channels
hiding in Sound Mixer 303
splitting in Sound Mixer 303
Character Selector 320
Character Selector (on Panel) 40
characters, special 40, 320
chatting 199, 220, 226
Citrix Linux ICA client 375
clipboard 40, 331
clock
on Panel 40
setting 83
closing application windows 43
Color Setup option during installation, 256 22
colors
background / wallpaper 76
desktop fonts 80
schemes 77
syntax/code in Text Editor 239
Text Editor 240
window schemes 77
Colors panel in Control Center 77
command line interfaces 345
commands
running in Console window 347
running in Run Command window 346
scheduling to run 340
computer requirements 9
configuring
desktop 75
e-mail account 66
fax application 362
Internet connection 57
log in 35
log out 35
News Ticker 217
newsgroup account 212
NX Client 189
Organizer 324
Palm Pilot 335
printers 349
proxy settings 71
screen saver 80
Skype Internet Calling 220
Stock Ticker applet 229
user account passwords 114
Weather applet 228
connecting
desktop with remote user 185
to an ISP 196
to Microsoft Windows computers 189
to printer 349
to the Internet 57, 195
to World Wide Web 57
to your computer by VPN 191
using DSL 57
using modems 195
using telephone or cable modems 57
connection account, create using Connection Wizard 57
Connection Wizard 57
Console
commands 348
opening 347
starting 347
console window 345
Console, Rescue 29
Control Center
Accessibility panel 82
applying desktop themes 78
Background panel 76, 80
Boot Manager panel 54
Cache panel 205
CDDB panel 101
Change Password panel 52, 114
Colors panel 77
Cookies panel 206
customizing desktop settings 75
Date & Time panel 83

Desktop panel 85
desktop styles 79
Font Installer panel 246
Fonts panel 79
Hardware Information panel 109
Icons panel 80
Keyboard Layout panel 93, 96
Keyboard panel 93
Keyboard Shortcuts panel 94
Login Manager panel 53
mouse button action for desktop 85
Mouse panel 83, 92
Multiple Desktops panel 48
Network Connections panel 164
Panel panel 37
password changing 52
password setting 80
Printers panel 349, 357
Remote Desktop Sharing panel 185
Screen Saver panel 80
setting magic borders 90
Settings panel 98
Sound System panel 99, 292
Spell Checking panel 97
Style panel 78, 79
System Bell panel 100
System Notifications panel 100
Taskbar panel 37
time settings 83
User Manager panel 110, 115
Window Behavior panel 88
window color schemes 77
Window Decorations panel 78
Windows Networking panel 167, 171
Control Panel. See Control Center
cookies 206
Cookies panel in Control Center 206
copying
CD 284
data to CD 286
data to DVD 286
DVD 284
files and folders 154
Corel LINUX OS 1
CPU
requirement for Xandros Desktop 9
viewing information on 109
creating
CD 286
desktop shortcuts 49
DVD 286
e-mail account 66
folders 156
log view filters 140
shortcut to Web site 49
Skype Internet Calling account 220
user accounts 110
user groups 116
Web pages 207
cropping images with Image Viewer 258
CrossOver Office
Access documents 272
Excel documents 272
Internet Explorer 202
Intuit Quicken files 33
iPod and iTunes 274
Lotus Notes 33
Photoshop images 253
PowerPoint presentations 253
uninstalling Windows applications 373
Visio diagrams 253
Word documents 235
customizing 75
accessibility 82
desktop 25, 75
icons 86
keyboard language maps 93
keyboard settings 82, 93
keyboard shortcuts 93
Launch menu 86
magic borders 90
mouse buttons action for desktop 85
multimedia settings 101
notes 329
Panel 37
printer 357
printer defaults 349
Quick Start menu 87
shortcut icons 49
snap zones on window borders 90
Sound Mixer 303
taskbar 37
window themes 78
windows 88
Cut and Paste Utility 40, 331

D

database
- Access . . . 272
- more applications . . . 272
- OpenOffice.org database . . . 270

Date & Time panel in Control Center . . . 83
date, setting . . . 83
dBase . . . 271
DEB . . . 368, 370, 373
Debian
- installing DEB packages . . . 370
- packages . . . 368
- paths for installing packages . . . 373

default applications launched . . . 101, 103
default operating system, setting . . . 54
deleting
- DVD . . . 287
- files . . . 155
- files infected with virus . . . 132
- folders . . . 155
- packages . . . 372
- printer . . . 349
- shortcuts from desktop . . . 50
- software . . . 372
- user accounts . . . 114

deployment . . . 25
Deskjet . . . 354
desktop
- accessibility . . . 82
- adding . . . 48
- appearance . . . 75
- arranging windows . . . 44
- background color or image . . . 76
- color . . . 76
- color schemes . . . 77
- font color . . . 80
- font type and size . . . 79
- icons, creating shortcuts . . . 49
- icons, sizing . . . 50
- locking screen . . . 51
- magic borders . . . 90
- Microsoft Windows differences . . . 36
- mouse button action . . . 85
- moving application to another . . . 47
- multiple . . . 46
- naming . . . 48
- Panel, hiding . . . 38
- Panel, moving . . . 37
- Panel, sizing . . . 37
- Panel, using . . . 37
- password, changing . . . 52
- refreshing . . . 48
- scheme . . . 78
- screen and border snap zones . . . 90
- sharing . . . 45
- sharing yours with remote user . . . 185
- shortcuts on . . . 49
- shortcuts, removing . . . 50
- theme . . . 78
- time on Panel . . . 83
- virtual . . . 46
- virtual desktop number and name . . . 48
- wallpaper image . . . 76
- windows, moving . . . 43
- windows, sizing . . . 44

Desktop panel in Control Center . . . 85
desktop shortcuts
- arranging . . . 50
- creating . . . 49
- customizing . . . 49
- removing . . . 50
- size of icons . . . 50
- to Web site . . . 49

desktop styles
- Macintosh . . . 79
- Windows . . . 79

desktop themes
- adding . . . 78
- applying . . . 78
- previewing preset themes . . . 78

development tools . . . 2, 3
devices
- sound . . . 302
- storage devices, viewing information on . . . 109
- viewing information on . . . 109

DHCP . . . 57
dial-up
- connecting to the Internet . . . 195
- dialing an ISP . . . 196

dictionary
- applet on Panel . . . 40
- installing more . . . 3, 97
- Online Dictionary . . . 333
- using . . . 97

Digikam . . . 267
digital camera
- Digikam . . . 267
- Gwenview . . . 267
- Image Viewer . . . 256

Xandros File Manager 264
Xandros Photo Manager 259
directory system 148
disabling
desktop by locking it 51
login window 53
user accounts 110
disk partitions 11, 376, 378
disk size, Xandros Storage Manager 124
disk space, Xandros Storage Manager 124
display interruptions 203
display settings 75
displaying
applets on Panel 40
application buttons on Panel 38
Panel 38
sound mixer channels 303
system information 109
system processes 137
windows 43
DMA channels 109
DNS 73
domain search order 74
domain, joining Windows 171
double-click mouse action 91
downloading
applications 368
files using FTP 203
updates from Xandros Networks 69
Draw, OpenOffice.org 252
driver loading at startup 30
drivers, printer 354
drivers, printer and video 3
DSL 57
duplex printing 359
DVD
burning 287
copying 283
creating 283
DVD Writer 283
view with TV Time 3
view with Video Player 305
DVD Writer
copying CD 284
copying DVD 284
copying music to your computer 284
creating CD 286
creating DVD 286
erasing DVD 287
ISO file, burn to CD 287
set up 283
DVI files, viewing 242
DVI Viewer 242

E

editing
Bash language 236
C and C++ languages 236
HTML language 236
JavaScript language 236
MySQL 236
Perl language 236
programming code 236
Python language 236
text files 238
user accounts 110
XML language 236
e-mail
account 66
filtering 209
KDE Mail 211
KDE Mail in Personal Information Manager 214
KMail 211
Personal Information Manager 214
receiving 208, 211
sending 208, 211
set up 66
spam 209
Thunderbird Mail 208
encryption, user folders 110
end-user agreement 13
energy, saving 36, 136
equalizer
Media Player 289
MP3 Player 293
equations, creating 241
error
2000 22
4000 22
5005 22
Event Viewer
log files, clearing 142
log files, overwriting 143
log files, saving 143
log files, sorting 142
log files, viewing 141
refresh 142
viewing options 142
Evolution and Palm Pilot 336

Excel, Microsoft 272
Exchange, Microsoft 324
exiting
    applications 43
    Xandros Desktop 35
Explorer, Windows 146
Ext file systems 123
Ext2, Ext3 file systems 16
extensions in Firefox Web Browser 202
extensions, file 103

F

Fahrenheit, for weather applet 229
FAT and FAT32 11
FAT file system 124
Fax Viewer 361
faxes
    sending 361
    viewing 361
file extensions 103
File Manager
    see Xandros File Manager
file ownerships 118
file permissions 118
file properties, viewing permissions 152
file system
    connecting to Linux NFS 145
    connecting to Windows file systems 145
    navigating local files 148
    ReiserFS, Ext2, Ext3 16
file systems 123
file transfer protocol 49, 203
files 145
    back up 161
    copying 154
    deleting 155
    encrypting 110
    finding 158
    finding by date 159
    finding by name and location 159
    hidden 151
    image 256
    inverting file selection 153
    locating 158
    log files 140
    managing 145
    moving 154
    moving to Trash 155
    naming 156
    performing file operations 152
    removing 155
    renaming 156
    saving log files 143
    searching for 159
    selecting 153
    setting ownerships 117, 118
    setting permissions 117, 118
    setting user limits on shared files 181
    sharing for Windows networks 168
    sharing with users 181
    sorting log file lists 142
    transferring using FTP 203
    viewing 148
filtering, system processes 138
filters, creating log view 140
filters, e-mail 209
finance application GnuCash 272
finance application KMyMoney 272
Find Computers
    creating a link to network computer 166
    searching for network computers 166
    viewing network computer files 166
finding
    computers on a network 166
    files 158
    folders 158
    images and photos 263
    packages 367
    using the Find Files/Folders utility 158
Firefox Web Browser
    block advertising and images 205
    cache 205
    cookies 206
    extensions 202
    view Web pages 201
firewall
    change settings 200
    setting up 197
    start after setup 200
    stop 200
    use and remote desktop sharing 185
First Run Wizard 32
flash memory key, accessing 151
flat view in Xandros File Manager 148
Floppy Disk Formatter
    formatting floppy disks 332
    labelling floppy disks 332
    naming floppy disks 332
floppy disk, accessing files on 148

flow chart 3
folders 145
copying 154
creating 156
deleting 155
encrypting 110
finding 158
home 147
moving 154
moving to Trash 155
navigating 145
removing 155
setting ownerships 117, 118
setting permissions 117
setting permissions for groups 118
setting permissions for others 118
setting permissions for users 118
sharing with remote users 181
Font Installer panel in Control Center 246
Font Viewer 247
fonts
changing Calculator 319
changing Popup Notes 329
changing Text Editor 239
changing weather monitor 228
changing Xandros Desktop 79
color on desktop 80
install in Xandros Networks 247
installing 246
msttcorefonts file 247
type and size on desktop 79
viewing/installing with Font Installer panel 246
viewing/installing with Font Viewer 247
Windows 247
Fonts panel in Control Center 79
form, create in OpenOffice 270
formatting floppy disks 332
formulas, creating 241
Frozen-Bubble 3
FTP 49, 198, 203
FTP server, ProFTPD 204
FTP, gFTP file transfer 204

G

Gadu-Gadu instant messaging 226
Gaim instant messaging 231
Galaga game 309
games
Applications CD 3
list of 309
watching with TV Time 3
gaming over the Internet 200
gateway 17, 73
gFTP for FTP file transfer 204
GIMP graphics application 3
global shortcut keys 93
Gnomad music player 308
GnuCash personal finance 272
Gnumeric spreadsheet application 272
GRAMPS family tree 343
graphics
applications 251
Digikam 267
flow charts 267
GIMP 3
Gwenview 267
Image Viewer 256
ImageMagick 267
OpenOffice.org Draw 252
Paint 254
printing 352
scan 265
screen captures 266
Scribus 267
special characters and symbols 320
Tux Paint 267
Xandros Photo Manager 259
groups
adding user 116
managing 110
printer sharing 358
setting file permissions 118
setting folder permissions for 118
GroupWise, Novell 226
Gwenview 267

H

handle on windows 42
hardware compatibility 10
Hardware Information panel in Control Center 109
help
online 6
technical support 383
hidden files 151
hiding
desktop with screen saver 80
Panel 38
sound mixer channels 303

home Web page 203
HP printer driver 3, 354

I

icons
application buttons on Panel 38
customizing 86
properties for Xandros Desktop 80
shortcut 50
size on desktop 50
Icons panel in Control Center 80
ICQ instant messaging 226
Image Viewer
cropping images 258
flipping images 258
opening files 257
rotating images 258
slide show 257
zooming images 258
ImageMagick 267
images 251
blocking from Web sites 205
creating with OpenOffice.org Draw 252
creating with Paint 254
cropping in Image Viewer 258
Digikam 267
file formats in Image Viewer 257
flipping in Image Viewer 258
flow charts 267
GIMP 3
Gwenview 267
Image Viewer 257
opening 257
OpenOffice.org Draw 252
Paint program 254
PowerPoint, Visio, Photoshop 253
printing 352
rotating in Image Viewer 258
scan 265
screen captures 266
slide show 255, 257, 264
viewing in Image Viewer 256
Xandros Photo Manager 259
installing
applications 368
boot manager 16
Complete 12
computer requirements 9
Custom 15
error 2000 22
error 4000 22
error 5005 22
Express 13
fonts 246
options 12, 15
partitions 11
printer 349
SATA RAID issue 22
software 368
system requirements 9
troubleshooting 22
updates with Xandros Networks 69
with Windows 19, 21
Xandros Desktop 12
instant messaging
firewall 199
Gaim 231
Instant Messaging 226
Skype Internet Calling 222
Intel video driver 3
Interactive window placement 88
international keyboard language maps 93
Internet connection
account creation 57
cell phone and laptop 196
initiating 196
phone calls 220
sharing 197
Internet Explorer 202
interrupts 109
Intuit Quicken 33
IO ports 109
IP address 73
iPod
Gnomad 308
iTunes 274
Music Manager 298
IRC instant messaging 226
ISO file, burn to CD or DVD 287
iTunes 33, 274

J

Jabber instant messaging 226
JetDirect 354
joining Windows domain 171

K

karaoke 290
Kate text editor 249
KDE Mail
  account setup 68
  and Address Book 314
  error messages 69
  receive e-mail 211
  send e-mail 211
  troubleshooting 69
KDevelop 2
kernel
  arguments at startup 30
  messages 29
  version number 384
Keyboard Layout panel in Control Center 93, 96
Keyboard panel in Control Center 93
keyboard settings
  keyboard repeat 93
  language maps 93, 96
  Num Lock 93
  setting key click feedback volume 93
  sticky, slow, bounce keys 82
keyboard shortcuts 93
  application keys 95
  desktop switching keys 95
keys
  bounce 83
  slow 83
  sticky 83
kivio 267
KMail
  account setup 68
  error messages 69
  troubleshooting 69
  using 211
KMyMoney personal finance 272
Konqueror Web browser 202, 247
Konserve backup utility 343
Kontact 214
Kscd CD player 278
KSpread spreadsheet application 272
KWord word processor 249

L

labelling floppy disks 332
landscape printing 356
languages
  Firefox Web Browser 202
  international keyboard language maps 96
  OpenOffice.org 235
  setting in First Run Wizard 32
  Skype Internet Calling 220
  spell checkers 97
  Thunderbird Mail 67
laptop power management 136
LaTeX, viewing DVI files 242
Launch button 36
Launch menu, customizing 86, 373
LDAP for e-mail 66, 67, 316
LDAP, using in Address Book 316
license, software 13
LILO for default operating system 54
Linux
  kernel version number 384
  loader (LILO) for default operating system 54
  network 163
  system administration 107
Linux Standard Base compliance 4
load driver at startup 30
lock icon on Panel 40
lock user account 115
locking the screen 51
log files
  changing viewing options 142
  clearing 142
  messages 142
  preventing overwrites 143
  saving 143
  setting log overwrites 143
  sorting lists 142
  viewing 140
logging in 25, 27
  as a regular user 27
  as root 27
  as system administrator 27
  automatically at start up 53
  default action 35
  troubleshooting 28
  using debugger 28
  using the console 28
  using VGA mode 28
  without password 53
logging out 35
  default action 35
logical partition, Xandros Storage Manager 122
logical volume management (LVM) 12

logical volumes, Xandros Storage Manager 123, 127
Login Manager panel in Control Center 53
lost+found folder 112
Lotus Notes 33
LSB compliance 4
LVM 12

M

Macintosh desktop style 79
Macintosh OS 13
Mahjongg game 309
managing
    access with firewall 197
    groups 110
    multi-user systems 107
    network systems 107
    printer 349
    stand-alone systems 107
    system users 109
    user accounts 109
    user groups 109
    users 110
margins
    on print jobs 360
    Text Editor 239
marking
    pages in PostScript Viewer 244
    pages using toggle in PostScript Viewer 244
Math 241
mathematical formulas 241
mathematical functions using calculator 318
mathematical symbols 320
Media Player 288
    customizing 289
    equalizer 289
    looping 289
    playing 288
    playlist 288
    random play 289
    turn off track announcement 289
    volume 289
meetings
    arranging in Organizer 321
    arranging in Personal Information Manager . . . 216
memory 109
memory key or card, using 151
menu bar on windows 42
Menu Editor
    adding applications to Launch menu 86
    moving applications in Launch menu 86
    removing applications from Launch menu 373
    renaming applications in Launch menu 86
messages
    e-mail 208, 211
    instant 199, 222, 226, 231
Microsoft Access 272
Microsoft Excel 271, 272
Microsoft Exchange 324
Microsoft Internet Explorer 202
Microsoft PowerPoint 253, 255
Microsoft Visio 253
Microsoft Windows
    desktop style 79
    moving to Xandros Desktop 36
    using applications 375
Microsoft Word 234, 235
MIDI files, playing in MIDI Player 290
MIDI Player 290
migrate Windows computer 34
Minesweeper game 310
Miniature Golf game 309
minimizing windows 43
mixer applet 41
mixer channels
    displaying 303
    hiding 303
    merging sliders 303
    splitting sliders 303
Mixer, Sound 302
monitoring
    CPU load 139
    laptop battery 136
    memory usage 139
    system performance 137, 139
    system processes 137
monitors
    power management 136
    splitting display between two monitors 88
    type and resolution 98
mount point, Xandros Storage Manager 124, 130
mounting
    floppy and CD 150
    network share 179, 183
Mouse panel in Control Center 83, 92
mouse settings
    acceleration 91
    button mapping 91
    desktop 85
    double click 91

single click 91
threshold 91
moving
application between desktops 47
application buttons on Panel 38
files 154
folders 154
pages in PostScript Viewer 244
Panel 37
windows 43
MP3 files
Music Manager 298
RealPlayer 10 301
MP3 Player
CD playing 294
controlling volume 295
customizing options and preferences 297
playing audio files 294
playlist 296
skins 297
using 293
Visualization window 297
MPEG
playing in Media Player 288
playing in MP3 Player 293
MSN Messenger 226
Multiple Desktops panel in Control Center 48
multi-user 25
music
adding CD information from Internet 101
CD Player 278
copying to your computer from CD or DVD 284
encoding 101
Gnomad 308
iPod 274, 308
iTunes 274
Media Player 288
MIDI Player 290
MP3 Player 293
Music Manager 298
RealPlayer 10 301
Video Player 305
Music Manager 298
play CD 299
radio, listen to 300
My Computer 36
MySQL 272

N

naming
computer on network 169
drives, conventions 145
files 156
files, conventions 145
floppy disks 332
folders 156
folders, conventions 145
groups 116
printers 355, 357
user account 110
virtual desktops 48
navigating
documents in PostScript Viewer 244
local file system 148
using Address box in Xandros File Manager 149
using browse buttons in Xandros File Manager . . . 149
NEC printer driver 3
network 163
authentication with WINS server 169
computers, finding 166
connection account, creating 57
file sharing 167, 170
files, accessing 165
folder sharing 181
folders, accessing 165
join domain 171
links, creating 183
printer sharing 167
printers, adding 349
security 170
VPN 191
workgroup 169
Network Connections panel in Control Center 164
network share, assigning for Windows domain users . . . 179
news
accessing newsgroups 212
connecting news servers 212
News Ticker 217
adding news source 217
removing news source 218
scroll speed 219
update interval 218
view news 217
newsgroups
connecting to 212
filtering messages from 209
NFS, accessing from File Manager 165

no sound 99
not responding, application 43
notes, popup
background color 329
copying text 329
creating notes 328
customizing 329
cutting text 329
date, adding 330
displaying on all virtual desktops 330
editing 329
font properties 329
moving 330
opening notes 328
Palm Pilot 337, 338
pasting text 329
printing 330
resizing 329
sending to virtual desktop 330
text color 329
Novell GroupWise 226
NTFS 4, 11, 19
NTFS file system 124
Num Lock 93
numerical lock key default setting 93
Nvu Web page authoring 231
NX Client 189

O

Officejet 354
Ogg files
create in DVD Writer 285
Media Player 288
MP3 Player 293
Music Manager 298
Online Dictionary 333
Online Dictionary, from Panel 40
Open Circulation Edition 2
opening
applications 42
files 150
files in PostScript Viewer 243
folders 150
image files in Image Viewer 257
multiple image files 257
text files 237
Windows network folder 165
windows, setting placement 88
OpenOffice.org
database 270
Draw 252
forms 270
Impress 255
install 3
Math 241
slides 255
spreadsheet 271
Web pages 207
Writer 234
operating systems
default, setting 54
installing Xandros Desktop 13, 15
starting 26
operational modes 25, 26
Organizer
appointment, making 323
journal 324
Microsoft Exchange 324
saving schedule 323
task list 323
to-do list 323
to-do list and Palm Pilot 321
orientation
image, in Image Viewer 258
page, in PostScript Viewer 243
page, when printing 356, 359
overwrites
preventing log file 143
setting log file 143
ownerships 117

P

packages 369
adding 369, 370
DEB 370
deleting 372
finding 367
installing 369, 370
listing 366
RPM 370
uninstalling 372
version numbers 384
page marks, PostScript Viewer 244
page orientation
Image Viewer 258
PostScript Viewer 243
printing 356, 359

page setup, PostScript Viewer 243
Paint graphics application 254
Palm Document Converter 334
Palm Pilot
addresses, accessing 339
backup 338
configuration, general 335
configuration, synchronization 337
converting documents 334
installing files 339
memo and Popup Note transfer 338
synchronization 337
Panel 37
animating 38
applets 40
changing 40
clock 83
customizing application buttons 38
date, setting 83
displaying 38
hiding 38
moving 37
placement 37
sizing 37
time, setting 83
virtual desktops 46
Panel panel in Control Center 37
paper orientation
Image Viewer 258
landscape 356
portrait 356
PostScript Viewer 243
printing 356, 359
paper size
PostScript Viewer 243
printing 355, 359
paper tray selection when printing 359
partitions
adding 16, 125
automatic 11
disk 11
explained in Xandros Storage Manager 122
files in, Xandros Storage Manager 124
format in Xandros Storage Manager 129
identifying 376
mounting in Xandros Storage Manager 130
sizing 11
viewing information on 109
passwords
avoiding for Xandros Networks with proxy server . .71
changing 52
not requiring for login 53
securing system 52
setting for screen saver 80
setting for user account 114
turning off requests for 52
unlock screen 51
userid 52
patches, adding to MIDI Player 290
patience games 310
PDA 334, 335
PDC 170
PDF
creating 354
viewing in Web browser 201
viewing with Adobe Reader 313
viewing with PostScript Viewer 243
peer-to-peer file sharing and firewall 200
Performance Monitor 137
performance monitor (on Panel) 40
permissions
file 167
firewall 197
printer 167
remote access to others 185
setting file 117
setting folder 117
setting user limits on shared files 181
Personal Information Manager
address book 215
birthdays 215
contacts 215
e-mail 214
schedule meeting 216
task/to-do list 215
view attendee schedules 216
Personal Time Tracker
editing time 326
idle period detection 327
saving files 327
set up 326
track time 326
phone calls, making 220
phone numbers, Address Book 314
photographs
create slide show in Image Viewer 257
create slide show in Xandros File Manager 264
Digikam 267

GIMP 3
Gwenview 267
viewing from digital camera 256
Xandros File Manager 264
Xandros Photo Manager 259
Photoshop 253
playing
audio files 273
CDs 273
DVDs 273
games 309
tapes 273
video 273
plug-ins, list of installed 366
poker game 310
pop-up advertising, blocking 205
Popup Notes
colors 329
creating notes 328
customizing notes 329
date, inserting 330
editing notes 329
fonts, changing 329
making notes 328
opening notes 328
Palm Pilot 337, 338
printing 330
sending notes 330
portrait printing 356
ports 109
PostScript file
printing / creating 353
viewing 243
PostScript Viewer
Go To command 244
locating pages 244
marking pages 244
moving to document beginning 244
moving to document end 244
moving to next page 244
moving to previous page 244
navigating documents 244
opening files 243
page marks 244
page marks, toggling 244
page orientation 243
page setup 243
paper size 243
printing documents 245
reading documents 244
removing page marks 244
viewing files 243
Power Control panel in Control Center 136
power management 136
power off 36
PowerPoint 253, 255
presentation, creating 255
Primary Domain Controller 170
Print a Fax 361
print preview 353
printer drivers for HP and NEC 3
printers
adding 349
default 349
deleting 349
Deskjet 354
JetDirect 354
LAN 349
local 349
network 349
Officejet 354
removing 349
restricting access 358
Scanjet 354
sharing 167, 358
troubleshooting 354
UNIX 349
Printers panel in Control Center 349, 357
printing 352
cancelling print jobs 360
customizing 357
duplex 359
fax, sending 361
landscape 356
managing print jobs 360
manual feed 359
multiple copies 357
notes 330
number of pages to print per page 359
page margin 360
page order 357, 358
page range 356
paper orientation 356, 359
paper size 355, 359
paper tray 359
PDF file 354
portrait 356
PostScript file 353
preview 353
queue 360

requesting print notification 360
resolution 358
reverse order 357, 358
specifying pages 356
troubleshooting 354
two-sided 359
privacy, cookies 206
processes
displaying 137
filtering 138
killing 138
list refreshing 138
listing 137
sorting 137
stopping 138
viewing 137
processor, viewing information on 109
Professional edition of Xandros Desktop
joining Windows domain 171
network share, setting for user 179
scripts, adding 179
StarOffice 234, 252, 256, 271
StarOffice installation 33
Terminal Server Client for remote access 188
ProFTPD 204
projectors, using with TV Time 3
properties, viewing for files, folders in Xandros File Manager . 157
proxy server settings 71

Q

Quick Launcher applet 40
Quick Start Guide 6
Quick Start menu
customizing 87
starting applications 87
Quicken 33
QuickTime
Media Player 288
quitting applications 43

R

radio, listening to 300
random window placement 88
Reader, Adobe 3, 313
RealPlayer 10 301
reboot 35
Recycle Bin 36
red-eye, Xandros Photo Manager 262
refreshing
desktops 48
log file list 142
network connections 164
process list 138
Xandros File Manager 156
Xandros File Manager when Web surfing 203
ReiserFS 123
ReiserFS file system 16
Reminder Message Scheduler
alarm 340
alarm, changing 341
alarm, deleting 341
customizing 341
disabling 341
turning off 341
Remote Desktop Sharing panel in Control Center 185
Remote Desktop Sharing, with remote user 185
remote file systems, accessing using File Manager 165
remote users
desktop sharing 185
mounting shared folders 179, 183
sharing files 181
VPN 191
Remote Windows Connection 188
removing
application shortcut keys 95
applications 372
files 155
folders 155
global shortcut keys 94
log files 142
packages 372
printers 349
shortcuts from desktop 50
user accounts 114
users from groups 116
Xandros Desktop 378
renaming
files 156
floppy disks 332
folders 156
groups 116
user account 110
virtual desktops 48
repair Xandros Desktop after installing another OS 376
Rescue Console, logging in using 29

resizing
Panel 37
windows 43
resolution
monitor 98
print 358
restart 35
restart with keyboard keys (shortcut) 94
Restore installed boot, troubleshooting menu 376
Restore Xandros, logging in using 29
restoring Xandros Desktop 376
restricting printer access 358
restricting user access 115
Reversi game 309
root
acting as system administrator 107
logging in as 27
managing files 145
RPM Package Manager 370
RPM, installing packages 370
rsync command for backing up files 162
Run command
executing commands 346
starting applications 158
Runaway Process Catcher 41
running applications 42

S

Samba domain, adding users 171
SATA RAID 22
saving
desktop view 35
log files 143
searches 160
text files 237
Scanjet 354
scanner
Scanner 265
XSane 267
schedule commands to run 340
scheduler 216, 321
scheduling, integration with Windows 216
screen captures
creating in Screen Capture 266
setting timer in Screen Capture 266
screen locking 51
screen resolution 98
screen saver
changing 80
priority level 81
setting password 80
Screen Saver panel in Control Center 80
screen size 98
screen size, adjusting for visibility 82
Scribus 267
scripts, adding for login, logout, and network share . . . 179
searching 158
applications on Xandros Networks 367
computers 166
files and folders 159
images and photos 263
viruses 130
Xandros Networks for applications 367
security
backing up files 161
cache, clearing 205
cookies 206
encryption of user folders 110
files and folders 117
firewall 197
level 170
locking screen 51
passwords 52
patches 69
restricting user access 115
screen saver 80
security level 170
setting options for Windows networks 170
spyware 135
updates using Xandros Networks 69
virus removal 130
Webcam monitoring 219
Xandros Security Suite 135
server, Apache 231
server, using your computer as 198, 204, 231
server, Xandros Server 192
setting 340
Settings panel in Control Center 82, 98
setup log 109
sharing
desktop with remote user 185
files from local file system 181
files with Microsoft Windows computers 167
folders 181
Internet connection 197
mounting remote folders 183
printer 167, 358
shell 345
Shisen-Sho game 310

shortcut keys
adding application shortcut keys 95
adding desktop switching shortcut keys 95
adding global shortcut keys 94
changing default application shortcut keys 95
changing default desktop switching shortcut keys . 95
changing default global shortcut keys 94
removing application shortcut keys 95
removing global shortcut keys 94
shortcuts
creating on desktop 49
deleting from desktop 50
icons 50
shutdown
power off 36
sound, disabling 99
Xandros Desktop 35
single-click mouse action 91
sizing
application windows 43
fonts 79
Panel 37
windows 43
Skype Internet Calling 220
slide show
Image Viewer 256
OpenOffice.org Impress 255
Xandros File Manager 264
sliders
adjusting volume in Sound Mixer 303
merging in Sound Mixer 303
slow keys 82, 83
Smart window placement 88
SMS instant messaging 226
snap zones
setting for desktop borders 90
setting for window borders 90
software compatibility 33
software license 13
Solitaire game 310
sorting
log file list messages 142
log file lists 142
system processes 137
Xandros File Manager view 156
sound
accessibility options 82
adjusting balance 303
adjusting volume 303
Audio Builder 275
disabling at startup 99
mono device 302
record with Audacity 308
record with Kwave 308
record with Sound Recorder 304
stereo device 302
synthesizing using Audio Builder 275
system sounds 99
troubleshooting 99
troubleshooting CD Player 282
sound cards 109, 302
Sound Mixer
adjusting balance 303
adjusting volume 303
customizing 303
splitting sliders 303
sound mixer (on Panel) 41
Sound Recorder
playing sound 304
recording sound 304
Sound Server Control 277
Sound System panel in Control Center 99
spam 209
speakers
distributing volume 303
no sound 99
splitting sound channels 303
special characters and symbols 320
special characters applet on Panel 40
spell checkers
adding 97
default 97
Online Dictionary 333
Spell Checking panel in Control Center 97
spreadsheet
Excel 272
Gnumeric 272
KSpread 272
OpenOffice.org spreadsheet 271
spyware 135, 201
SQL 272
standard shortcut keys 93
standby, powering down monitor 136
StarOffice 234
installation 33
Start button 36
starting
applications 42
applications automatically 103
applications automatically at startup 101

applications from Xandros File Manager 157
applications using the Run command 158
Xandros Desktop 25, 26, 27
startup operating system 54
startup options 25, 26, 27, 53, 101
startup sound, disabling 99
stereo devices
merging sliders 303
splitting sliders 303
sticky files 119
sticky keys 82, 83
Stock Ticker 229
stop watch 325
stopping
system processes 138
Web page transmissions 203
Storage Media applet 41
strategy games 309
Style panel in Control Center 78, 79
subnet mask 73
Sun JDK 2
support for Xandros Desktop 383
suspend, powering down monitor 136
swap partition 123
switching user sessions 45
symbols and special characters 320
symbols applet on Panel 40
synchronize Palm Pilot with computer 337
synchronize with local Windows network password 52
system administrator
different roles of 107
logging in as 27
System Bell panel in Control Center 100
system files, viewing 151
System Notifications panel in Control Center 100
system processes
aborting 138
displaying 137
filtering 138
killing 138
monitoring 137
sorting 137
system requirements 9
system sounds
accessibility 82
applying to desktop actions 99
disabling and enabling 99
setting pitch 99
setting volume 99
testing 99
System Tray on Panel 41
system users
accounts, adding 110
accounts, deleting 114
accounts, editing 110
managing 109
passwords 114
remote user access 185
systems
managing multi-user 107
managing network 107
managing stand-alone 107

T

tactical games 309
tags, Xandros Photo Manager 261
task manager, Performance Monitor 137
Task Scheduler
back up files with 162
use 342
taskbar
customizing 37
moving applications 47
on Panel using applet 41
Taskbar panel in Control Center 37
technical support 383
television, watching
TV Time 3
xine Video Player 305
temperature monitoring 228
Terminal Server Client 188
TeX, viewing DVI files 242
text
background color in Text Editor 240
colors in Text Editor 239
creating text files 236
editing in Text Editor 238
editing text files 236
fonts in Text Editor 239
opening text files 237
printing files 352
Text Editor
automatic brackets 239
background color 240
bookmarks 238
closing text files 237
colors for programming code 240
creating text files 236
customizing 239

editing margins 239
finding text 238
fonts 239
formatting text 239
moving to a specific line 238
navigating text files 238
new view 237
new window 237
opening a new view 237
opening a new window 237
opening text files 237
printing files 240
replacing text 238
saving text files 237
setting margins 239
special characters and symbols 320
text colors 240
text editors
AbiWord 249
Kate 249
KWord 249
Text Editor 236
text messages, instant 226
TGZ files, creating 161
themes 75
adding 78
applying to desktop 78
thesaurus with KWord 249
thin client 188
Thunderbird Mail
account setup 66
receive e-mail 208
send e-mail 209
set up e-mail account 66
use Address Book contacts 317
tide conditions, xTide 343
time on Panel 83
time servers 84
time servers, synchronizing system clock 83
time tracking 325
time zone, setting 83
Timeout, in Control Center 52
title bar on windows 42, 44
tool bar 42, 44
moving 44
on windows 42
transferring files using FTP 203
transmissions
interrupting 203
stopping 203
Trash 155
Trash applet 41
tray selection when printing 359
tree view in Xandros File Manager 148
trojan removal 130
troubleshooting
application not responding 43
installation 22
login 28, 376
menu 22
printing 354
repair Xandros after installing another OS 376
Skype Internet Calling 225
sound 99
sound in CD Player 282
startup failure 376
technical support, getting 383
troubleshooting menu, restore Xandros Desktop 376
turn off computer 36
Tux Paint 267
Tux Racer game 310
Tux Typing 249
TV Time 3
two-sided printing 359

U

uninstalling
applications 372
packages 372
printer 349
Xandros Desktop 378
units of measurement 229
unlocking the screen 51
updates with Xandros update icon 71
updating after installation 23
upgrading
installed applications 71, 372
packages 71, 372
system components 372
uploading files using FTP 203
USB devices 109
user accounts
adding 110
configuring 53, 114
creating 110
deleting 114
editing name 110
encrypting 110
managing 109

removing 114
restricting access 115
setting passwords for 114
user forums 383
user groups
adding 116
adding users 116
creating 116
managing 109
removing users 116
User Manager panel in Control Center 110, 115
user sessions
multiple 45
switching 45
users
account expiry 115
adding 110
adding to groups 116
deleting 114
editing 110
managing 109
remote access by another user 185
removing from groups 116
restricting access 115
setting file permissions 118
setting folder permissions for 118
utilities
system administration 107
user 311

V

VCI 63
version numbers
applications 384
detailed list 366
Linux kernel 384
Xandros Desktop 384
Versora 34
VESA Mode Setup option during installation 22
VGA mode, logging in using 28
video
cards, information on 109
conferencing 219
Media Player 288
RealPlayer 10 301
TV Time 3
xine Video Player 305
video drivers 3
Video Player
configuration 306
mute 306
Navigator 308
playing 305
playlist 306
volume 306
Video Poker game 310
viewers
Adobe Reader 313
DVI Viewer 242
Fax Viewer 361
Font Viewer 247
PostScript Viewer 243
viewing
CPU 109
device information 109
devices 109
DMA channels 109
faxes 361
files 243
folder and file properties 157
hardware 109
hidden files 151
interrupts 109
IO ports 109
local folders and files 148
log files 140
memory 109
partitions 109
PCI 109
PDF files 243
PostScript files 243
processor 109
properties of file and folders 157
SCSI 109
sound 109
storage 109
system devices 109
system files 151
system information 140
USB devices 109
Web pages 201
Windows file and folders 165
X-Server 109
virtual desktops 46
adding 48
customizing 48
Desktop Pager 46
moving applications 47

naming 48
refreshing 48
setting number 48
switching among with shortcut keys 95
viewing with Desktop Pager 46
virtual network computing, sharing control of desktop . . 185
virtual private network 65, 191
virus removal 130
Visio 253
VMware for Windows compatibility 375
VNC, sharing control of your desktop 185, 199
voice over IP (VoIP) 220
volume
adjusting 302
adjusting balance 302
decreasing 303
distributing 302, 303
increasing 303
key click feedback 93
MP3 Player 295
sliders 302
Sound Mixer 302
splitting mixer channels 303
system bell 99
volume groups, Xandros Storage Manager 123, 127
Voodoo video driver 3
VPI 63
VPN 65, 191

W

wallpaper 78, 263
WAV files
Media Player 288
MP3 Player 293
RealPlayer 10 301
weather monitor 215, 228
Web browser
cache 205
cookies 206
default, setting 203
extensions 202
Firefox 201
Konqueror 202, 247
using Xandros File Manager as 201
Web pages
blocking pop-up windows and images 205
bookmarks 203
browsing 201
creating 207, 231
editing 207
home page default 203
interrupting transmissions 203
locating 201
viewing 201
Webcam use 219
wildcards, for searches 158
Win4Lin
upgrading/preserving 12
using with Windows applications 375
Window Behavior panel in Control Center 46, 88
Window Decorations panel in Control Center 78
Windows
2000 and 2003 . . . . . 170, 171, 179
98 188
accessing applications 189
accessing computers 188
accessing file systems with File Manager 165
applications 375
assign default network share 179
Control Panel 36
installing after Xandros 21
joining domain 171
migrate from with Versora 34
My Computer 36
network 163
NT 170, 171, 179
PDC 170
setting styles 79
sharing files 167
Start button 36
synchronize password with 52
uninstalling applications 373
WINS server 169
XP Home edition 188
windows
arranging 43
cascading 43
customizing 44
displaying applications 43
exiting 43
iconifying 43
maximizing 43
minimizing 43
moving 43
moving tool bar 44
placement options 88
resizing 43
setting color schemes 77
sharing display between two monitors 88

uncluttering 43
Windows Explorer, moving to Xandros File Manager . . . 146
Windows Networking panel in Control Center 167, 171
WINS server, configuring 169
Word 234, 235
word processor 234
worm removal 130

X

X Multimedia System 293
Xandros Anti-Virus 130
Xandros Deployment Management Server 4, 69, 71
Xandros Desktop
deployment 25
features 2, 36
installing 12, 13, 15, 25
introduction 1
learning 6
restoring 376
settings 75
support 383
uninstalling 378
updating 69
user guide 5
version 384
Xandros Desktop 3.x, preserve files during installation . . . 12
Xandros Desktop User Guide 6
Xandros File Manager
accessing files on CD 148
accessing files on floppy disks 148
accessing NFS 165
accessing Windows networks 165
Administrator access 108
cache, clear 205
cookies 206
creating folders 156
creating links 184
find computer 166
finding files and folders 159
links, creating 184
mount network share 184
moving and copying 154
navigating using browse buttons 149
refreshing view 156
renaming files and folders 156
root access 108
selecting files 153
sorting view 156
starting applications 157
using Address Box 149
using the flat view 148
using the tree view 148
view images and photos 264
viewing file properties 152
viewing local file system 148
viewing remote Linux file systems 165
viewing Windows network 165
Xandros Management Console 192
Xandros Networks
finding applications 367
installing applications 369
installing DEB packages 370
installing RPM packages 370
listing software 366
package sources 373
passwords, bypassing 71
proxy server 71
searching applications 367
troubleshooting when using proxy server 71
uninstalling applications 372
upgrading applications 372
Xandros Open Circulation Edition 2
Xandros Photo Manager 259
CD, copy photos to 262
crop image 261
photographs, view 260
red-eye 262
resize image 261
search 263
tags 261
Xandros Security Suite 135
Xandros Server 161, 192
Xandros Storage Manager
browse files in partition 124
disks and partitions, managing 125
file systems explained 123
format partition 129
logical partition explained 122
logical volumes explained 123
mount partition 130
mount point explained 124
partitions explained 122
unmount partition 130
volume groups and logical volumes, managing . . .127
volume groups explained 123
Xandros update icon on Panel 41, 71
xDMS 4, 69, 71
XGalaga game 309
xine Video Player 305

XMMS MP3 Player 293
XSane scanner 267
X-Server 109
xTide 343

Y

Yahoo Messenger 226

Z

zero-cornered windows 88
Zip files, creating 161